



**DES-6300**

**Modular L3 Ethernet Switch**

**User's Guide**

Third Edition (February 2004)  
6DES-6300.01  
Printed In Taiwan



RECYCLABLE

## Wichtige Sicherheitshinweise

1. Bitte lesen Sie sich diese Hinweise sorgfältig durch.
2. Heben Sie diese Anleitung für den spätern Gebrauch auf.
3. Vor jedem Reinigen ist das Gerät vom Stromnetz zu trennen. Verwenden Sie keine Flüssig- oder Aerosolreiniger. Am besten dient ein angefeuchtetes Tuch zur Reinigung.
4. Um eine Beschädigung des Gerätes zu vermeiden sollten Sie nur Zubehörteile verwenden, die vom Hersteller zugelassen sind.
5. Das Gerät ist vor Feuchtigkeit zu schützen.
6. Bei der Aufstellung des Gerätes ist auf sichern Stand zu achten. Ein Kippen oder Fallen könnte Verletzungen hervorrufen. Verwenden Sie nur sichere Standorte und beachten Sie die Aufstellhinweise des Herstellers.
7. Die Belüftungsöffnungen dienen zur Luftzirkulation die das Gerät vor Überhitzung schützt. Sorgen Sie dafür, daß diese Öffnungen nicht abgedeckt werden.
8. Beachten Sie beim Anschluß an das Stromnetz die Anschlußwerte.
9. Die Netzanschlußsteckdose muß aus Gründen der elektrischen Sicherheit einen Schutzleiterkontakt haben.
10. Verlegen Sie die Netzanschlußleitung so, daß niemand darüber fallen kann. Es sollte auch nichts auf der Leitung abgestellt werden.
11. Alle Hinweise und Warnungen die sich am Geräten befinden sind zu beachten.
12. Wird das Gerät über einen längeren Zeitraum nicht benutzt, sollten Sie es vom Stromnetz trennen. Somit wird im Falle einer Überspannung eine Beschädigung vermieden.
13. Durch die Lüftungsöffnungen dürfen niemals Gegenstände oder Flüssigkeiten in das Gerät gelangen. Dies könnte einen Brand bzw. Elektrischen Schlag auslösen.
14. Öffnen Sie niemals das Gerät. Das Gerät darf aus Gründen der elektrischen Sicherheit nur von autorisiertem Servicepersonal geöffnet werden.
15. Wenn folgende Situationen auftreten ist das Gerät vom Stromnetz zu trennen und von einer qualifizierten Servicestelle zu überprüfen:
  - a – Netzkabel oder Netzstecker sind beschädigt.
  - b – Flüssigkeit ist in das Gerät eingedrungen.
  - c – Das Gerät war Feuchtigkeit ausgesetzt.
  - d – Wenn das Gerät nicht der Bedienungsanleitung entsprechend funktioniert oder Sie mit Hilfe dieser Anleitung keine Verbesserung erzielen.
  - e – Das Gerät ist gefallen und/oder das Gehäuse ist beschädigt.
  - f – Wenn das Gerät deutliche Anzeichen eines Defektes aufweist.
16. Bei Reparaturen dürfen nur Originalersatzteile bzw. den Originalteilen entsprechende Teile verwendet werden. Der Einsatz von ungeeigneten Ersatzteilen kann eine weitere Beschädigung hervorrufen.
17. Wenden Sie sich mit allen Fragen die Service und Reparatur betreffen an Ihren Servicepartner. Somit stellen Sie die Betriebssicherheit des Gerätes sicher.
18. Zum Netzanschluß dieses Gerätes ist eine geprüfte Leitung zu verwenden, Für einen Nennstrom bis 6A und einem Gerätegewicht größer 3kg ist eine Leitung nicht leichter als H05VV-F, 3G, 0.75mm<sup>2</sup> einzusetzen.

## Trademarks

Copyright D-Link Corporation ©2003. Contents subject to change without prior notice. D-Link is a registered trademark of D-Link Corporation/D-Link Systems, Inc. All other trademarks belong to their respective proprietors.

## Copyright Statement

No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form or by any means or used to make any derivative such as translation, transformation, or adaptation without permission from D-Link Corporation/D-Link Systems Inc., as stipulated by the United States Copyright Act of 1976.

## FCC Warning

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with this user's guide, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## CE Mark Warning

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

### Warnung!

Dies ist ein Produkt der Klasse A. Im Wohnbereich kann dieses Produkt Funkstörungen verursachen. In diesem Fall kann vom Benutzer verlangt werden, angemessene Massnahmen zu ergreifen.

### Precaución!

Este es un producto de Clase A. En un entorno doméstico, puede causar interferencias de radio, en cuyo caso, puede requerirse al usuario para que adopte las medidas adecuadas.

### Attention!

Ceci est un produit de classe A. Dans un environnement domestique, ce produit pourrait causer des interférences radio, auquel cas l'utilisateur devrait prendre les mesures adéquates.

### Attenzione!

Il presente prodotto appartiene alla classe A. Se utilizzato in ambiente domestico il prodotto può causare interferenze radio, nel cui caso è possibile che l'utente debba assumere provvedimenti adeguati.

## VCCI Warning

### 注意

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会(VCCI)の基準に基づく第一種情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。

## BSMI Warning

### 警告使用者

這是甲類的資訊產品,在居住的環境中使用時,可能會造成射頻干擾,在這種情況下使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

---

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Trademarks.....                               | 3  |
| Copyright Statement .....                     | 3  |
| FCC Warning.....                              | 3  |
| About This Guide .....                        | 1  |
| Conventions .....                             | 1  |
| Overview of this User's Guide .....           | 1  |
| Introduction .....                            | 2  |
| Fast Ethernet Technology .....                | 2  |
| Gigabit Ethernet Technology .....             | 2  |
| Switching Technology .....                    | 3  |
| Features .....                                | 3  |
| Chassis .....                                 | 3  |
| Switch Modules .....                          | 4  |
| CPU Module .....                              | 4  |
| Optional Modules .....                        | 5  |
| Power Supply Modules.....                     | 6  |
| Unpacking and Setup .....                     | 7  |
| Unpacking .....                               | 7  |
| Setup .....                                   | 7  |
| Desktop or Shelf Installation .....           | 7  |
| Rack Installation .....                       | 8  |
| Installing Modules .....                      | 9  |
| Connecting a Terminal.....                    | 10 |
| Power on .....                                | 10 |
| Power Failure.....                            | 11 |
| Identifying External Components .....         | 12 |
| Front Panel .....                             | 12 |
| Side Panels .....                             | 12 |
| Optional Plug-In Modules.....                 | 13 |
| DES-6303 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX Module .....     | 13 |
| DES-6304 100BASE-FX (MT-RJ) Module .....      | 13 |
| DES-6305 100BASE-FX (SC) Gigabit Module ..... | 14 |



|  |    |
|--|----|
| DES-6306 1000BASE-SX (SC) Gigabit Module ..... | 14 |
| DES-6307 1000BASE-LX (SC) Gigabit Module ..... | 15 |
| DES-6308 1000BASE-T (RJ-45) Module .....       | 15 |
| DES-6309 GBIC Module.....                      | 16 |
| Power Supply Modules .....                     | 16 |
| Led Indicators .....                           | 16 |
| Connecting The Switch .....                    | 18 |
| Switch To End Node.....                        | 18 |
| Switch To Hub or Switch.....                   | 18 |
| Cable Lengths .....                            | 19 |
| Switch Management Concepts.....                | 21 |
| IP Addresses and SNMP Community Names.....     | 21 |
| Traps .....                                    | 21 |
| MIBs .....                                     | 22 |
| Packet Forwarding .....                        | 23 |
| Aging Time .....                               | 23 |
| Filtering Database .....                       | 23 |
| Spanning Tree Algorithm .....                  | 24 |
| STA Operation Levels .....                     | 24 |
| On Bridge Level.....                           | 24 |
| On The Port Level.....                         | 25 |
| User-Changeable STA Parameters .....           | 25 |
| Illustration of STA .....                      | 26 |
| Port Trunking.....                             | 27 |
| VLAN Structure.....                            | 27 |
| VLAN Features.....                             | 28 |
| Bridging Between Network LANs .....            | 28 |
| VLAN AutoConfig .....                          | 28 |
| Scalability.....                               | 28 |
| Broadcast Storms .....                         | 29 |
| Segmenting Broadcast Domains .....             | 29 |
| Eliminating Broadcast Storms .....             | 30 |
| Configuring the Switch .....                   | 32 |
| Installation.....                              | 33 |
| General System Requirements.....               | 33 |

|  |    |
|--|----|
| Hardware Requirements .....                        | 33 |
| Software Requirements.....                         | 33 |
| Web-Based Installations Requirements .....         | 34 |
| Embedded Web Server (EWS) .....                    | 34 |
| Getting Started .....                              | 34 |
| Using ConfigMaster Windows .....                   | 37 |
| Standard Layout.....                               | 37 |
| Menu Bar.....                                      | 37 |
| Toolbar .....                                      | 38 |
| Error Bar .....                                    | 38 |
| Status Bar .....                                   | 38 |
| The Front Panel Display .....                      | 39 |
| Front Panel Display Toolbar.....                   | 39 |
| Understanding The Front Panel Display Colors ..... | 40 |
| Understanding The Front Panel Display LEDs.....    | 40 |
| Front Panel Display Mode LEDs .....                | 40 |
| Device Front Panel Display Power LEDs .....        | 41 |
| Front Panel Display Card LEDs .....                | 41 |
| View Port Status .....                             | 41 |
| Refreshing The Front Panel Display .....           | 42 |
| ConfigMaster Shortcuts .....                       | 42 |
| Using Tables .....                                 | 44 |
| Editing Table Rows .....                           | 44 |
| Inserting Table Rows.....                          | 44 |
| Deleting Table Rows .....                          | 45 |
| Erasing Tables.....                                | 45 |
| Saving Table Information.....                      | 45 |
| Working With Configuration Files .....             | 46 |
| Send Configuration To Device .....                 | 46 |
| Get Configuration From Device.....                 | 47 |
| Configuration File-Conversion.....                 | 48 |
| Update Device Firmware.....                        | 49 |
| Update Embedded Web Server .....                   | 51 |
| Exit .....   | 53 |
| Managing The Device.....                           | 53 |
| Resetting The Device.....                          | 53 |
| Device Global Parameters.....                      | 54 |
| Device Features.....                               | 57 |
| Configuring VLANs .....                            | 58 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Introduction To VLANs.....                           | 58  |
| Working with VLANs .....                             | 59  |
| VLAN Parameters.....                                 | 59  |
| VLAN Table Per Port .....                            | 60  |
| VLAN Table Per Port and Protocol .....               | 63  |
| Ethernet User-Defined Protocols.....                 | 66  |
| Default VLANs.....                                   | 68  |
| Aggregate VLANs .....                                | 69  |
| Aggregate VLAN Parameters.....                       | 69  |
| Aggregate VLAN Table .....                           | 70  |
| Aggregate Sub VLAN Table .....                       | 72  |
| Configuring Ports.....                               | 75  |
| Port Properties.....                                 | 75  |
| Port Mirroring .....                                 | 81  |
| Storm Control .....                                  | 83  |
| Configure GVRP and Trunking.....                     | 85  |
| Consideration Concerning STP And GVRP Operation..... | 86  |
| GARP Timers Control .....                            | 86  |
| GVRP Parameters .....                                | 88  |
| GVRP Timers Control .....                            | 90  |
| GVRP Information.....                                | 92  |
| Clear Port Statistics.....                           | 93  |
| Clear Port Error Statistics .....                    | 94  |
| Applicant Status and Registration Mode.....          | 95  |
| Trunk.....   | 97  |
| Trunk Parameters .....                               | 97  |
| Trunk Table.....                                     | 98  |
| Trunking Port Table.....                             | 101 |
| Trunk Balance Table.....                             | 102 |
| Configuring Bridging.....                            | 103 |
| Operating Parameters.....                            | 103 |
| Unicast .....  | 104 |
| Unicast Global Forwarding Table .....                | 104 |
| Unicast Forward Table Size .....                     | 107 |
| Spanning Tree .....                                  | 108 |
| STP per Device .....                                 | 108 |
| Parameters .....                                     | 108 |
| Spanning Tree Port Table .....                       | 112 |
| Spanning Tree Extended Port Table.....               | 114 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Rapid Spanning Tree .....                 | 115 |
| Rapid STP Port Table .....                | 115 |
| Rapid STP Force Version Table .....       | 117 |
| Traffic Control .....                     | 118 |
| Traffic Control Port Priority Table ..... | 118 |
| Traffic Class Table .....                 | 120 |
| Priority Groups Table .....               | 122 |
| Configuring Routing .....                 | 122 |
| IP .....                                  | 123 |
| Operating Parameters .....                | 123 |
| Interface Parameters .....                | 124 |
| RIP .....                                 | 131 |
| OSPF II .....                             | 140 |
| Routing Table .....                       | 150 |
| ARP Table .....                           | 153 |
| IP Redundancy .....                       | 156 |
| DHCP .....                                | 158 |
| VRRP .....                                | 168 |
| UDP Relay .....                           | 173 |
| TCP General Parameters .....              | 175 |
| TCP Connections Table .....               | 176 |
| IPM .....                                 | 178 |
| IPM Operating Parameters .....            | 178 |
| IGMP .....                                | 179 |
| Filter .....                              | 184 |
| PIM .....                                 | 187 |
| IPM Routing .....                         | 195 |
| IPX .....                                 | 198 |
| Interface Parameters .....                | 198 |
| RIP/SAP Filter .....                      | 203 |
| IPX Routing Table .....                   | 215 |
| IPX SAP Table .....                       | 218 |
| Configuring Security Options .....        | 222 |
| Community Table .....                     | 222 |
| Web User Authorization Table .....        | 224 |
| Configuring Quality of Service .....      | 227 |
| Global Parameters .....                   | 227 |
| Profile Table .....                       | 228 |
| Routed IP .....                           | 232 |

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| IP Classification Fields .....    | 232 |
| IP Rules Table.....               | 234 |
| Working With Statistics .....     | 240 |
| Element Statistics.....           | 240 |
| Interface Statistics.....         | 246 |
| IP Statistics.....                | 246 |
| IPX Statistics.....               | 248 |
| Port Statistics .....             | 249 |
| History .....                     | 250 |
| History Control Table.....        | 251 |
| Ether History Table.....          | 253 |
| Alarm Table .....                 | 254 |
| Statistics Table.....             | 258 |
| Traps Table .....                 | 259 |
| Configuring Trap Parameters ..... | 262 |
| Log Table.....                    | 262 |
| Working With Services.....        | 263 |
| Device Tuning.....                | 263 |
| Event Log.....                    | 268 |
| Refresh.....                      | 269 |
| Polling Configuration .....       | 269 |
| Community Change .....            | 270 |
| Ping .....                        | 270 |
| Refresh The Device .....          | 274 |
| Technical Specifications .....    | 275 |
| RJ-45 Pin Specification.....      | 277 |
| Index.....                        | 279 |

---

# ABOUT THIS GUIDE

This User's Guide tells you how to install your Modular Layer 3 Ethernet Switch, how to connect it to your Ethernet network, and how to set its configuration using either the built-in console interface or Web-based management.

---

## Conventions

---

References in this manual to the DES-6300 are frequently written simply as “Switch” or “Switches” where the text applies to both models. Model numbers are normally used only to differentiate between specific Switches where necessary. Unless differentiated by model number, all information applies to both models.

---

## Overview of this User's Guide

---

- Chapter 1, “*Introduction.*” Describes the Switch and its features.
- Chapter 2, “*Unpacking and Setup.*” Helps you get started with the basic installation of the Switch.
- Chapter 3, “*Identifying External Components.*” Describes the front panel, side panels, optional plug-in modules, and LED indicators of the Switch.
- Chapter 4, “*Connecting the Switch.*” Tells how you can connect the Switch to your Ethernet network as well as providing an informational cable length table.
- Chapter 5, “*Switch Management Concepts.*” Talks about how to manage the Switch.
- Chapter 6, “*Using ConfigMaster.*” Tells how to use the built-in configuration software to change, set, and monitor Switch performance and security.
- Appendix A, “*Technical Specifications.*” Lists the technical specifications of the Switch.
- Appendix B, “*RJ-45 Pin Specifications.*” Shows the details and pin assignments for the RJ-45 receptacle/connector.
- Appendix C, “*Sample Configuration File.*”

---

# ***INTRODUCTION***

This section describes the features of the Switch, as well as giving some background information about Ethernet/Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, and switching technology.

---

## **Fast Ethernet Technology**

---

The growing importance of LANs and the increasing complexity of desktop computing applications are fueling the need for high performance networks. A number of high-speed LAN technologies are proposed to provide greater bandwidth and improve client/server response times. Among them, Fast Ethernet, or 100BASE-T, provides a non-disruptive, smooth evolution from the current 10BASE-T technology. The dominating market position virtually guarantees cost effective and high performance Fast Ethernet solutions in the years to come.

100Mbps Fast Ethernet is a standard specified by the IEEE 802.3 LAN committee. It is an extension of the 10Mbps Ethernet standard with the ability to transmit and receive data at 100Mbps, while maintaining the Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) Ethernet protocol.

---

## **Gigabit Ethernet Technology**

---

Gigabit Ethernet is an extension of IEEE 802.3 Ethernet utilizing the same packet structure, format, and support for CSMA/CD protocol, full duplex, flow control, and management objects, but with a tenfold increase in theoretical throughput over 100Mbps Fast Ethernet and a one hundred-fold increase over 10Mbps Ethernet. Since it is compatible with all 10Mbps and 100Mbps Ethernet environments, Gigabit Ethernet provides a straightforward upgrade without wasting a company's existing investment in hardware, software, and trained personnel.

The increased speed and extra bandwidth offered by Gigabit Ethernet is essential to coping with the network bottlenecks that frequently develop as computers and their busses get faster and more users use applications that generate more traffic. Upgrading key components, such as your backbone and servers to Gigabit Ethernet can greatly improve network response times as well as significantly speed up the traffic between your subnets.

Gigabit Ethernet enables fast optical fiber connections to support video conferencing, complex imaging, and similar data-intensive applications. Likewise, since data transfers occur 10 times faster than Fast Ethernet, servers outfitted with Gigabit Ethernet NIC's are able to perform 10 times the number of operations in the same amount of time.

In addition, the phenomenal bandwidth delivered by Gigabit Ethernet is the most cost-effective method to take advantage of today and tomorrow's rapidly improving switching and routing

internetworking technologies. And with expected advances in the coming years in silicon technology and digital signal processing that will enable Gigabit Ethernet to eventually operate over unshielded twisted-pair (UTP) cabling, outfitting your network with a powerful 1000Mbps-capable backbone/server connection creates a flexible foundation for the next generation of network technology products.

---

## Switching Technology

---

Another key development pushing the limits of Ethernet technology is in the field of switching technology. A switch bridges Ethernet packets at the MAC address level of the Ethernet protocol transmitting among connected Ethernet, Fast Ethernet, or Gigabit Ethernet LAN segments.

Switching is a cost-effective way of increasing the total network capacity available to users on a local area network. A switch increases capacity and decreases network loading by making it possible for a local area network to be divided into different *segments* which don't compete with each other for network transmission capacity, giving a decreased load on each.

The switch acts as a high-speed selective bridge between the individual segments. Traffic that needs to go from one segment to another (from one port to another) is automatically forwarded by the switch, without interfering with any other segments (ports). This allows the total network capacity to be multiplied, while still maintaining the same network cabling and adapter cards.

For Fast Ethernet or Gigabit Ethernet networks, a switch is an effective way of eliminating problems of chaining hubs beyond the "two-repeater limit." A switch can be used to split parts of the network into different collision domains, for example, making it possible to expand your Fast Ethernet network beyond the 205-meter network diameter limit for 100BASE-TX networks. Switches supporting both traditional 10Mbps Ethernet and 100Mbps Fast Ethernet are also ideal for bridging between existing 10Mbps networks and new 100Mbps networks.

Switching LAN technology is a marked improvement over the previous generation of network bridges, which were characterized by higher latencies. Routers have also been used to segment local area networks, but the cost of a router and the setup and maintenance required make routers relatively impractical. Today's switches are an ideal solution to most kinds of local area network congestion problems.

---

## Features

---

The DES-6300 is a high performance modular switch platform that allows a customized array of Layer 2 and Layer 3 functions to be easily installed and managed in a single device. The Switch is ideal for expanding enterprise networks and environments where traffic volume and needs fluctuate.

**Switch features include:**

### ***Chassis***

The chassis is the main unit that modules and power supplies are installed into. A CPU module and a power supply module come preinstalled in the chassis.



**Chassis features include:**

- Six slots for installing networking modules (plus one slot reserved for the CPU)
- Two slots for installing redundant power supply modules
- 31.99 Gigabit/sec. (Gbps) backplane switching fabric
- Hot-swappable design for power supply modules
- Networking modules warm-swappable (except CPU module)
- Ears and screws for rack mounting

## ***Switch Modules***

The plug-in modules available for the switch are optional except for the CPU module. These modules are described below:

### **CPU Module**

A single CPU module must be present and must be installed in first (uppermost) slot.

### ***Layer 2 Support Includes:***

- Layer 2 switching based on MAC address & VLAN ID
- Store and Forward packet switching
- Broadcast Storm rate filtering
- Supports static filtering (based on MAC address)
- Supports IEEE 802.1Q VLAN
- Proprietary simplified Port-based VLANs
- IEEE 802.1d Spanning Tree support
- Address table: 64K MAC address per switch
- Supports 802.1p priority queuing
- Port Aggregation (Port-Trunking) Capability
- Port Mirroring
- IGMP snooping
- RS-232 port for out-of-band management and system configuration
- Telnet Remote Configuration
- TFTP software upgrades, settings file and switch log uploads
- NMS (Net Management System)
- CLI (Command Line Interface)
- SNMP Agents:
  - MIB-II (RFC 1213)
  - RMON MIB (RFC 1757)
  - Bridge MIB (RFC 1493)
  - Supports four RMON (1, 2, 3, 9) groups
- BootP support

### ***Layer 3 Support Includes:***

- Support RIP1 and RIP2 routing protocol
- Support OSPF routing protocol
- Support IGMP, IP Multicast packet filtering, support QoS (Quality of Service)
- Support Multicast Routing protocol: PIM DM
- Support Layer 3 Access Control List, (ACL)

## Optional Modules

### ***DES-6303 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX Module***

- Sixteen 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX ports
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3 10BASE-T, IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-TX
- All 10/100Mbps ports support NWay auto-negotiation
- Back pressure Flow Control support for half-duplex mode
- IEEE 802.3x-compliant Flow Control support for full duplex

### ***DES-6304 100BASE-FX (MT-RJ) Module***

- Twelve 100BASE-FX (MT-RJ) Fast Ethernet ports
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-FX
- IEEE 802.3x compliant Flow Control support for full duplex

### ***DES-6305 100BASE-FX (SC) Module***

- Eight 100BASE-FX (SC) Fast Ethernet ports
- Connects to a 100BASE-FX device at full duplex.
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-FX
- Supports Full-duplex operation only
- IEEE 802.3x-compliant Flow Control support

### ***DES-6306 1000BASE-SX (SC) Module***

- Two 1000BASE-SX (SC) Gigabit Ethernet ports
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3z
- Support full-duplex operation only
- IEEE 802.3x-compliant Flow Control support

### ***DES-6307 1000BASE-LX (SC) Module***

- Two 1000BASE-LX (SC) Gigabit Ethernet ports
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3z
- Support full-duplex operation only
- IEEE 802.3x-compliant Flow Control support

### ***DES-6308 1000BASE-T (RJ-45) Module***

- Two 1000BASE-T Gigabit Ethernet ports
- Connects to 1000BASE-T devices only at full duplex and auto-negotiating 10/100/1000 Mbps ports
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3ab
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.1Q/P
- Back pressure Flow Control support for half-duplex mode
- IEEE 802.3x compliant Flow Control support for full duplex

### ***DES-6309 GBIC Module***

- Two GBIC Ethernet ports
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3z
- Support full-duplex operation only
- IEEE 802.3x-compliant Flow Control support

## Power Supply Modules

- Dual power modules design
- Current sharing design
- Full redundant feature design to ensure continuous operation
- If one power module fails, the other will take over all current supply automatically
- Hot-swappable/Hot-pluggable
- Power management functions enabled
- Revolving handle design
- Input: 90 ~ 264 VAC, 47 ~ 63Hz
- Output: 3.3V 80A maximum, 12V 2A maximum

# 2

---

## ***UNPACKING AND SETUP***

This chapter provides unpacking and setup information for the Switch.

---

### **Unpacking**

Open the shipping carton of the Switch and carefully unpack its contents. The carton should contain the following items:

- One switch chassis
- One management module (pre-installed in uppermost slot)
- One power supply module (pre-installed)
- One mounting kit: four mounting brackets and screws
- Four rubber feet with adhesive backing
- One AC power cord
- One console cable
- One printed copy of the Quickstart Guide
- One CD-ROM containing this User's Guide

If any item is found missing or damaged, please contact your local reseller for replacement.

---

### **Setup**

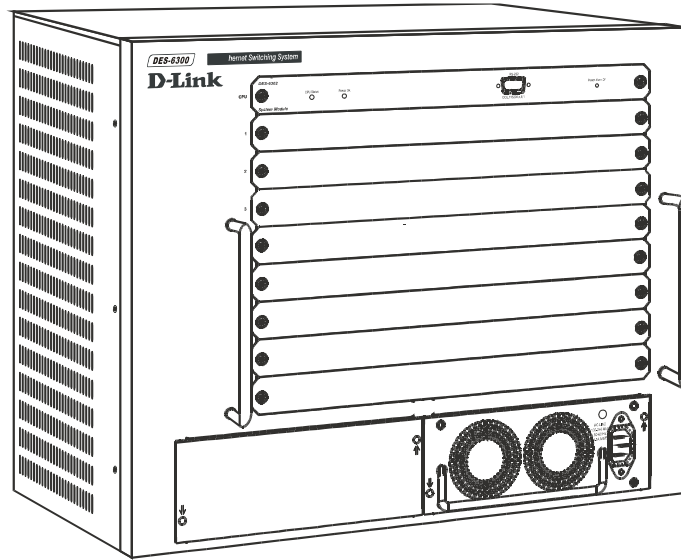
The setup of the Switch can be performed using the following steps:

- The surface must support at least 5 kg.
- The power outlet should be within 1.82 meters (6 feet) of the device.
- Visually inspect the power cord and see that it is secured fully to the AC power connector.
- Make sure that there is proper heat dissipation from and adequate ventilation around the Switch. Do not place heavy objects on the Switch.

---

### **Desktop or Shelf Installation**

When installing the Switch on a desktop or shelf, the rubber feet included with the device must be first attached. Attach these cushioning feet on the bottom at each corner of the device. Allow enough ventilation space between the device and the objects around it.



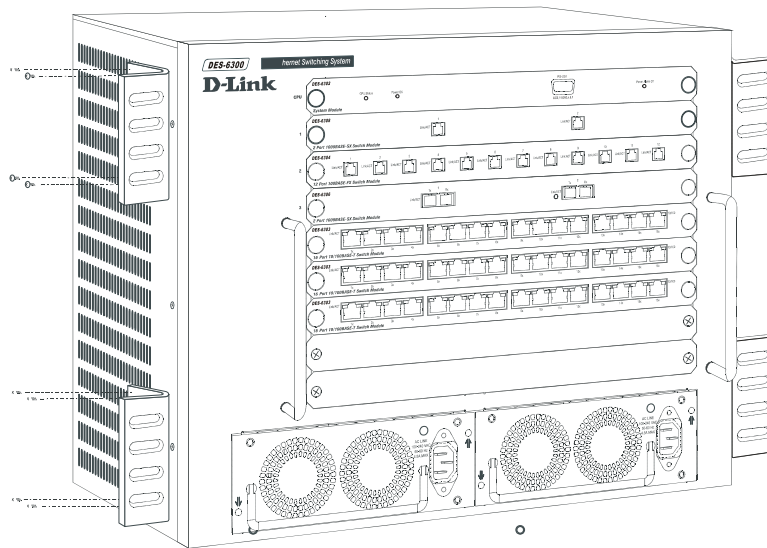
**Figure 2- 1. Switch installed on a Desktop or Shelf**

---

## Rack Installation

---

The Switch can be mounted in an EIA standard size, 19-inch rack, which can be placed in a wiring closet with other equipment. To install, attach the mounting brackets on the Switch's front panel (one on each side) and secure them with the screws provided.



**Figure 2- 2. Attaching the mounting brackets to the Switch**

Then, use the screws provided with the equipment rack to mount the Switch in the rack.

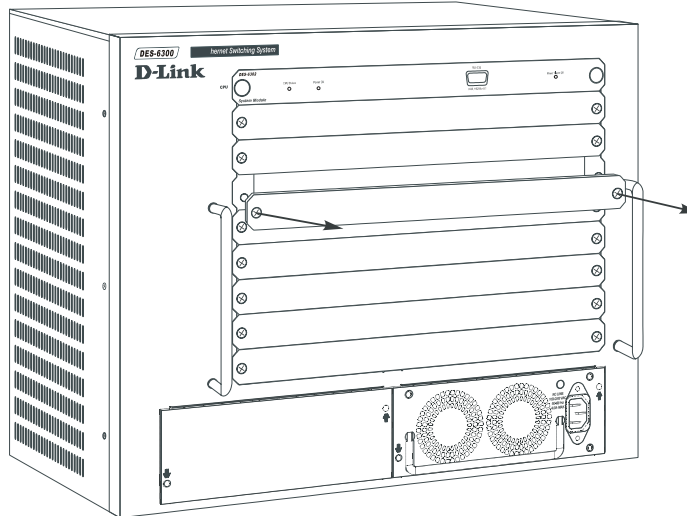
---

## Installing Modules

---

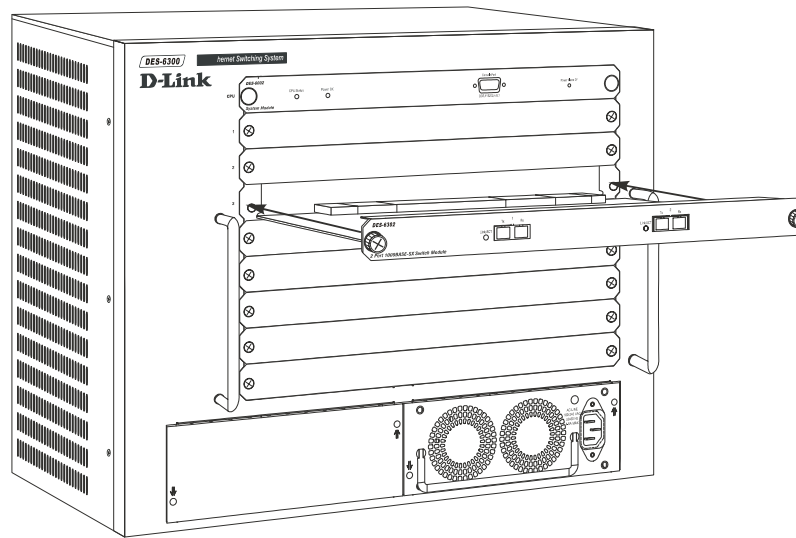
The DES-6300 supports up to 6 modules that can be installed into the module bays. Networking modules are warm-swappable, meaning they can be added and removed while power to the switch is ON. After warm-swapping a networking module, the switch will automatically be rebooted. Make sure to use the Save Changes command to save the current configuration to NV-RAM before warm-swapping modules. The CPU module, however, is NOT hot-swappable. Removing or inserting the CPU module while the power is on may cause irreparable damage to the module and/or to the Switch itself. Further, make sure you have unplugged the power cord from the removable power supply module before inserting or removing it from the Switch.

**CAUTION:** Due to the high energy present in this system, extreme caution should be exercised whenever adding or removing system components. No element of this system may be installed or removed except by an authorized technician.



**Figure 2- 3. Removing a Blank Slot Cover**

Modules can be installed into any free slot, except the CPU module. The CPU module must be installed in the uppermost (top) slot. To install a module, simply remove a blank slot cover and slide the module along the guide rails until it snaps firmly in place.



**Figure 2- 4. Installing a Module**

---

## Connecting a Terminal

---

The DES-6300 can perform basic switching functions without special configuration, but to use the Switch's advanced features you must first configure the unit through a terminal (a VT-100 serial data terminal or a computer running a VT-100 emulator). The connection is made through the Switch's Diagnostic RS-232 port, which is configured at the factory as follows:

- |                 |        |
|-----------------|--------|
| ▪ Baud Rate:    | 115200 |
| ▪ Data Bits:    | 8      |
| ▪ Parity:       | none   |
| ▪ Stop Bits:    | 1      |
| ▪ Flow Control: | none   |

The RS-232 port has a nine-socket D-shell connector with IBM-type DCE wiring, and can be connected to the terminal using an off-the-shelf RS-232 cable with the proper connectors for the terminal and the DES-6300.

---

## Power on

---

Power up the DES-6300 as follows:

- Make sure the power module is properly installed in the device.
- Plug the device end of the supplied power cord firmly into the power inlet on the DES-6300's front panel of the redundant power supply.
- Plug the outlet end of the power cord firmly into a suitable AC outlet.
- Observe the DES-6300's LED indicators to make sure the Switch is operating correctly.

The DES-6300's LED indicators operate as follows during a normal power-up:

- All indicators blink momentarily to indicate a system reset.
- The Power indicator flashes for about 20 seconds while the switch prepares its run-time software and performs a self-test.
- The Power indicator begins shining steadily, and the remaining indicators begin reflecting port and system status.

## ***Power Failure***

As a precaution, the Switch should be unplugged in case of an impending power failure. When power is resumed, plug the Switch back in.



---

## ***IDENTIFYING EXTERNAL COMPONENTS***

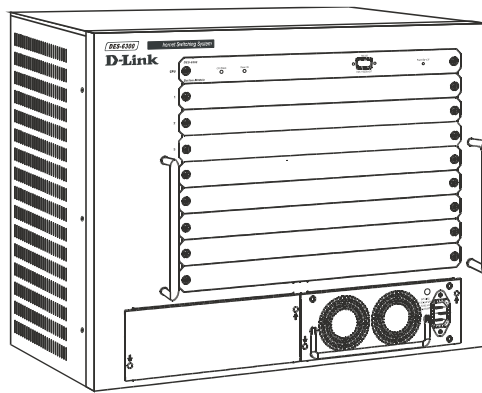
This chapter describes the front panel, side panels, optional plug-in modules, and LED indicators of the Switch.

---

### **Front Panel**

---

The front panel of the Switch consists nine slide-in module slots for networking modules, two slide-in module slots for power supply modules, an RS-232 communication port, and LED indicators.



**Figure 3- 1. Front panel view of the Switch**

The front panel features:

- Comprehensive LED indicators display the conditions of the Switch and status of the network. A description of these LED indicators follows (see *LED Indicators*).
- An RS-232 DCE console port is used to diagnose the Switch via a connection to a terminal (or PC) and Local Console Management.
- Seven slide-in module slots installing networking modules and the CPU module.
- Two slide-in module slots for installing power supply modules.

---

### **Side Panels**

---

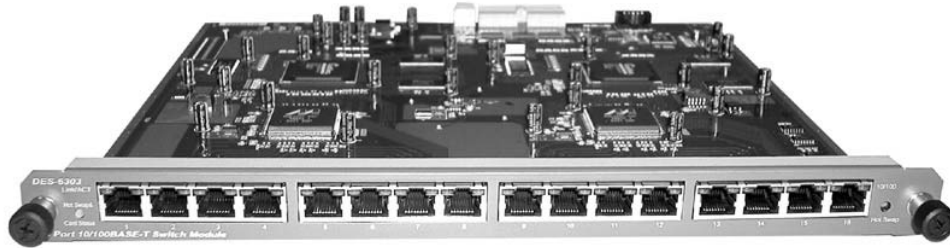
The left side panel of the Switch contains four system fans. The right side panel contains heat vents. The system fans are used to dissipate heat. The sides of the system also provide heat vents to serve the same purpose. Do not block these openings, and leave adequate space at the rear and sides of the Switch for proper ventilation. Be reminded that without proper heat dissipation and air circulation, system components might overheat, which could lead to system failure.

---

## Optional Plug-In Modules

---

### ***DES-6303 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX Module***



**Figure 3- 2. Sixteen-port, 10/100BASE-TX module**

- Sixteen-port, front-panel module
- Connects to 10BASE-T and 100BASE-TX devices at full- or half-duplex
- Supports Category 3, 4, 5 or better UTP or STP connections of up to 100 meters each

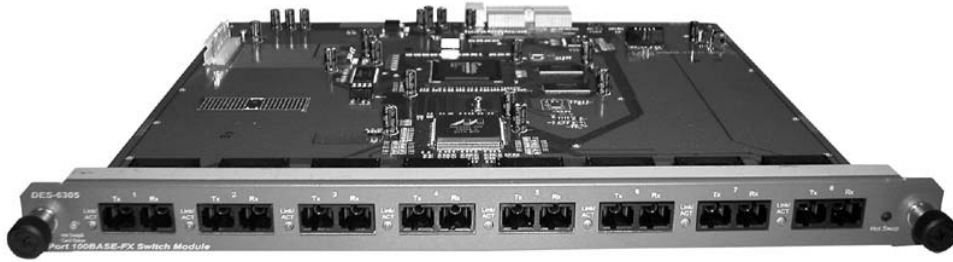
### ***DES-6304 100BASE-FX (MT-RJ) Module***



**Figure 3- 3. 12-port, 100BASE-FX (MT-RJ) module**

- Twelve-port, front-panel module
- Connects to 100BASE-FX devices at full- or half-duplex
- Twelve 100BASE-FX (MT-RJ) Fast Ethernet ports
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-FX
- IEEE 802.3x compliant Flow Control support for full duplex

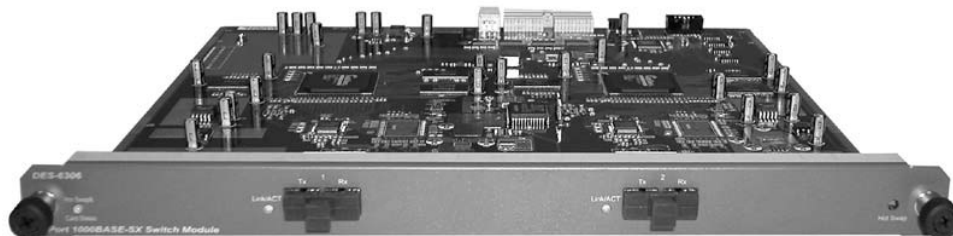
## ***DES-6305 100BASE-FX (SC) Gigabit Module***



**Figure 3- 4. Eight-port, 100BASE-FX (SC) module**

- Eight-port, front panel module.
- Connects to a 100BASE-FX device at full duplex.
- 8 100BASE-FX (SC) ports
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3u
- Supports Full-duplex operation only
- IEEE 802.3x-compliant Flow Control support

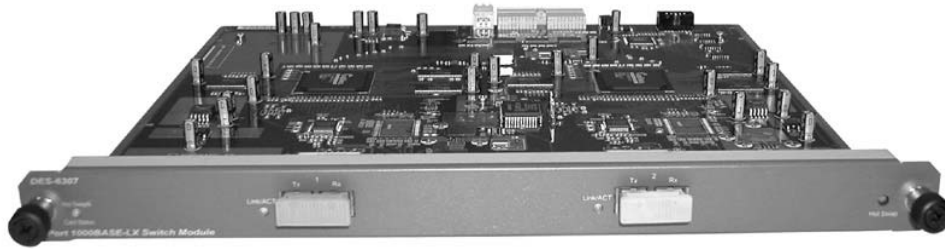
## ***DES-6306 1000BASE-SX (SC) Gigabit Module***



**Figure 3- 5. Two-port, 1000BASE-SX gigabit module**

- Two-port, front-panel module
- Connects to 1000BASE-SX devices at full duplex.
- 1000BASE-SX (SC) Gigabit Ethernet ports
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3z
- Support Full-duplex operation only
- IEEE 802.3x-compliant Flow Control support

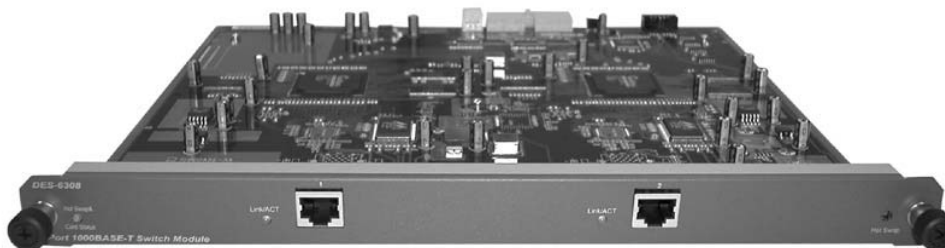
## ***DES-6307 1000BASE-LX (SC) Gigabit Module***



**Figure 3- 6. Two-port, 1000BASE-LX gigabit module**

- Two-port, front-panel module
- Connects to 1000BASE-LX devices at full duplex
- 1000BASE-LX (SC) Gigabit Ethernet ports
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3z
- Supports full-duplex operation only
- IEEE 802.3x-compliant Flow Control support

## ***DES-6308 1000BASE-T (RJ-45) Module***



**Figure 3- 7. Two-port, 1000BASE-T (RJ-45) module**

- 2-port, front-panel module
- Connects to 1000BASE-T devices only at full-duplex and auto-negotiating.
- Auto-sensing 10/100/1000 Mbps Port
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3ab
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.1Q/P
- Back pressure Flow Control support for Half-duplex mode
- IEEE 802.3x compliant Flow Control support for Full-duplex

## ***DES-6309 GBIC Module***



**Figure 3- 8. Two-port GBIC Module**

- Two-port, front-panel module
- Connects to GBIC devices at full duplex
- GBIC Ethernet ports
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3z
- Supports full-duplex operation only
- IEEE 802.3x-compliant Flow Control support

## ***Power Supply Modules***

- Dual power modules design with current sharing design
- Full redundant feature design to ensure continuous operation
- If one power module failed, the other will take over all current supply automatically.
- Hot-swappable/Hot-pluggable capability
- Power management functions
- Input: 90 ~ 264 VAC, 47 ~ 63Hz
- Output: 3.3V: 80A Max
- 12V: 2A Max

---

## **Led Indicators**

---

The LED indicators of the Switch include CPU Status and Power OK. The following shows the LED indicators for the Switch along with an explanation of each indicator.



**Figure 3- 9. CPU Front Panel LED Indicators**

- **CPU Status** – This center indicator on the front panel displays the current status of the switch. The LED will blink while the Power-On Self-Test (POST) is running during startup. It will light a steady green after the POST test to indicate the switch is powered on and operating properly. It will light amber when an error occurs during startup and the switch is therefore not functioning.

- **Power OK** – This indicator lights green when the CPU module of the switch is receiving power and functioning properly.

# 4

---

## CONNECTING THE SWITCH

This chapter describes how to connect the Switch to your Ethernet network as well as providing an informational cable length table.

---

### Switch To End Node

---

End nodes include PCs outfitted with a Network Interface Card (NIC) and most routers. For twisted-pair (copper) connections, the RJ-45 UTP ports on NICs and most routers are MDI-II. When using a normal straight-through cable, an MDI-II port must connect to an MDI-X port. An end node can be connected to the Switch via a two-pair Category 3, 4, 5 UTP/STP straight cable (be sure to use Category 5 UTP or STP cabling for 100BASE-TX Fast Ethernet connections). The end node should be connected to any of the sixteen ports (1x - 16x) on the 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX module. The LED indicators for the port the end node is connected to are lit according to the capabilities of the NIC. If LED indicators are not illuminated after making a proper connection, check the PC's LAN card, the cable, switch conditions, and connections.

The DES Supports auto-MDI and therefore the user may connect a straight or crossover cable to the switch and therefore the port will automatically configure itself to achieve a valid link to the network.

The following LED indicator states are possible for an end node to switch connection:

1. The 100M indicators come *ON* for a 100 Mbps and stays *OFF* for 10 Mbps.
2. The Link/Act indicator lights up upon hooking up a PC that is powered on.

---

### Switch To Hub or Switch

---

These connections can be accomplished at any port in either straight-through cable or a crossover cable because the switch supports the Auto-MDI function.

- A 10BASE-T hub or switch can be connected to the Switch via a two-pair Category 3, 4 or 5 UTP/STP cable.
- A 100BASE-TX hub or switch can be connected to the Switch via a two-pair Category 5e UTP/STP cable.

#### **10BASE-T Device**

For a 10BASE-T device, the Switch's LED indicators should display the following:

- 100M speed indicator is *OFF*.

- Link/Act indicator is *ON*.

**100BASE-TX Device**

For a 100BASE-TX device, the Switch's LED indicators should display the following:

- 100M speed indicator is *ON*.
- Link/Act indicator is *ON*.

**1000Base-T Device**

For a 1000BASE-T device, the Switch's LED indicators should display the following:

- Link/Act indicator is *ON*.

**100Base-FX Device**

For a 100BASE-FX device, the Switch's LED indicators should display the following:

- Link/Act indicator is *ON*.

**1000BASE-SX Device**

For a 1000BASE-SX device, the Switch's LED indicators should display the following:

- Link/Act indicator is *ON*.

**1000BASE-LX Device**

For a 1000BASE-LX device, the Switch's LED indicators should display the following:

- Link/Act indicator is *ON*.

---

## Cable Lengths

---

| Standard           | Media Type                                       | MHz/km Rating | Maximum Distance |
|--------------------|--|---------------|------------------|
| <b>1000BASE-SX</b> | 50/125µm Multimode Fiber                         | 400           | 500 Meters       |
|                    | 50/125µm Multimode Fiber                         | 500           | 550 Meters       |
|                    | 62.5/125µm Multimode Fiber                       | 160           | 220 Meters       |
|                    | 62.5/125µm Multimode Fiber                       | 200           | 275 Meters       |
|                    |  |               |                  |
| <b>1000BASE-LX</b> | 50/125µm Multimode Fiber                         | 400           | 500 Meters       |
|                    | 50/125µm Multimode Fiber                         | 500           | 550 Meters       |
|                    | 62.5/125µm Multimode Fiber                       | 500           | 550 Meters       |
|                    | 10µ Single-mode Fiber                            |               | 5000 Meters      |
|                    |  |               |                  |
| <b>1000BASE-T</b>  | Category 5e UTP Cable (1000Mbps)                 |               | 100 Meters       |
|                    |  |               |                  |
| <b>100BASE-FX</b>  | 50/125µm Multimode Fiber (half-duplex operation) |               | 400 Meters       |
|                    | 50/125µm Multimode Fiber                         |               | 2000 Meters      |



|                   |  |  |             |
|-------------------|--|--|-------------|
|                   | (full-duplex operation)                                  |  |             |
|                   | 62.5/125µm Multimode<br>Fiber<br>(half-duplex operation) |  | 400 Meters  |
|                   | 52.5/125µm Multimode<br>Fiber<br>(full-duplex operation) |  | 2000 Meters |
|                   |  |  |             |
| <b>100BASE-TX</b> | Category 5 UTP Cable<br>(100Mbps)                        |  | 100 Meters  |
|                   |  |  |             |
| <b>10BASE-T</b>   | Category 3 UTP Cable<br>(10Mbps)                         |  | 100 Meters  |

**Table 4- 1. Cable Lengths**

---

# ***SWITCH MANAGEMENT CONCEPTS***

This chapter discusses many of the features used to manage the switch, and explains many concepts and important points regarding these features. Configuring the Switch to implement these concepts is discussed in detail in the next chapters.

---

## **IP Addresses and SNMP Community Names**

---

Each Switch has its own IP Address, which is used for communication with an SNMP network manager or other TCP/IP application (for example BOOTP, TFTP, etc.). You must provide the switch with an IP Address to meet the specification of your networking address scheme.

In addition, you can also set an IP Address for a gateway router. This becomes necessary when the network management station is located on a different IP network as the Switch, making it necessary for management packets to go through a router to reach the network manager, and vice-versa.

For security, you can set in the Switch a list of IP Addresses of the network managers that you allow to manage the Switch. You can also change the default Community Name in the Switch and set access rights of these Community Names.

---

## **Traps**

---

Traps are messages that alert you of events that occur on the Switch. The events can be as serious as a reboot (someone accidentally turned *OFF* the Switch), or less serious like a port status change. The Switch generates traps and sends them to the network manager (trap managers). The following lists the types of events that can take place on the Switch.

- System resets
- Errors
- Status changes
- Topology changes
- Operation

You can also specify which network managers may receive traps from the Switch by setting a list of IP Addresses of the authorized network managers.

Trap managers are special users of the network who are given certain rights and access in overseeing the maintenance of the network. Trap managers will receive traps sent from the Switch; they must immediately take certain actions to avoid future failure or breakdown of the network.

The following are trap types a trap manager will receive:

- **Cold Start** – This trap signifies that the Switch has been powered up and initialized such that software settings are reconfigured and hardware systems are rebooted. A cold start is different from a factory reset.
- **Authentication Failure** – This trap signifies that someone has tried to logon to the switch using an invalid SNMP community name. The switch automatically stores the source IP address of the unauthorized user.
- **Link Change Event** – This trap is sent whenever the link of a port changes from link up to link down or from link down to link up.
- **Power Fan1 Failure** – This trap is sent whenever one of the two fans on a redundant power supply module fails.
- **Power Fan2 Failure** – This trap is sent whenever one of the two fans on a redundant power supply module fails.
- **End TFTP** – This trap is sent when TFTP service ends.
- **Abort TFTP** – This trap is sent when TFTP service aborts.
- **Start TFTP** – This trap is sent when TFTP service starts.
- **VLAN Dynamic Port Added** – This trap is sent when a VLAN dynamic port is added.
- **VLAN Dynamic Port Removed** – This trap is sent when a VLAN dynamic port is removed.

---

## MIBs

---

Management information and counters are stored in the Switch in the Management Information Base (MIB). The Switch uses the standard MIB-II Management Information Base module. Consequently, values for MIB objects can be retrieved from any SNMP-based network manager software. In addition to the standard MIB-II, the Switch also supports its own proprietary enterprise MIB as an extended Management Information Base. These MIBs may also be retrieved by specifying the MIB's Object-Identity (OID) at the network manager. MIB values can be either read-only or read-write.

Read-only MIBs variables can be either constants that are programmed into the Switch, or variables that change while the Switch is in operation. Examples of read-only constants are the number of ports and types of ports. Examples of read-only variables are the statistics counters such as the number of errors that have occurred, or how many kilobytes of data have been received and forwarded through a port.

Read-write MIBs are variables usually related to user-customized configurations. Examples of these are the Switch's IP Address, Spanning Tree Algorithm parameters, and port status.

If you use a third-party vendors' SNMP software to manage the Switch, a diskette listing the Switch's propriety enterprise MIBs can be obtained by request. If your software provides functions to browse or modify MIBs, you can also get the MIB values and change them (if the MIBs' attributes permit the write operation). This process however can be quite involved, since you must know the MIB OIDs and retrieve them one by one.

---

## Packet Forwarding

---

The Switch learns the network configuration and uses this information to forward packets. This reduces the traffic congestion on the network, because packets, instead of being transmitted to all segments, are transmitted to the destination only. Example: if Port 1 receives a packet destined for a station on Port 2, the Switch transmits that packet through Port 2 only, and transmits nothing through the other ports.

### ***Aging Time***

The Aging Time is a parameter that affects the auto-learn process of the Switch in terms of the network configuration. Dynamic Entries, which make up the auto-learned-node address, are aged out of the address table according to the Aging Time that you set.

The Aging Time can be from 10 seconds to 9999 seconds. A very long Aging Time can result with the out-of-date Dynamic Entries that may cause incorrect packet filtering/forwarding decisions.

On the other hand, if the Aging Time is too short, many entries may be aged out soon, resulting in a high percentage of received packets whose source addresses cannot be found in the address table, in which case the Switch will broadcast the packet to all ports, negating many of the benefits of having a switch.

### ***Filtering Database***

A switch uses a filtering database to segment the network and control communications between segments. It also filters packets off the network for intrusion control (MAC Address filtering).

For port filtering, each port on the switch is a unique collision domain and the switch filters (discards) packets whose destination lies on the same port as where it originated. This keeps local packets from disrupting communications on other parts of the network.

For intrusion control, whenever a switch encounters a packet originating from or destined to a MAC address defined by the user, the switch will discard the packet.

Filtering includes:

**Dynamic filtering** – Automatic learning and aging of MAC addresses and their location on the network. Filtering occurs to keep local traffic confined to its segment.

**MAC address filtering** – The manual entry of specific MAC addresses to be filtered from the network.

**Filtering done by the Spanning Tree Protocol** – Able to filter packets based on topology, making sure that signal loops don't occur.

**Filtering done for VLAN integrity** – Packets from a member of a VLAN (VLAN 2, for example) destined for a device on another VLAN (VLAN 3) will be filtered.

---

## Spanning Tree Algorithm

---

The Spanning Tree Algorithm (STA) in the Switch allows you to create alternative paths (with multiple switches or other types of bridges) in your network. These backup paths are idle until the Switch determines that a problem has developed in the primary paths. When a primary path is lost, the switch providing the alternative path will automatically go into service with no operator intervention. This automatic network reconfiguration provides maximum uptime to network users. The concept of the Spanning Tree Algorithm is a complicated and complex subject and must be fully researched and understood. Please read the following before making any changes.

**Network loop detection and prevention** – With STA, there will be only one path between any two LANs. If there is more than one path, forwarded packets will loop indefinitely. STA detects any looped path and selects the path with the lowest path cost as the active path, while blocking the other path and using it as the backup path.

**Automatic topology re-configuration** – When the path for which there is a backup path fails, the backup path will be automatically activated, and STA will automatically re-configure the network topology.

### ***STA Operation Levels***

STA operates on two levels: the bridge level and the port level. On the bridge level, STA calculates the Bridge Identifier for each Switch, then sets the Root Bridge and the Designated Bridges. On the port level, STA sets the Root Port and Designated Ports. Details are as follows:

#### **On Bridge Level**

**Root Bridge** – The switch with the lowest Bridge Identifier is the Root Bridge. Naturally, you will want the Root Bridge to be the best switch among the switches in the loop to ensure the highest network performance and reliability.

**Bridge Identifier** – This is the combination of the Bridge Priority (a parameter that you can set) and the MAC address of the switch. Example: 4 00 80 c8 00 01 00, where 4 is the Bridge Priority. A lower Bridge Identifier results in a higher priority for the switch, and thus increases its probability of being selected as the Root Bridge.

**Designated Bridge** – From each LAN segment, the attached Bridge that has the lowest Root Path Cost to the Root Bridge is the Designated Bridge. It forwards data packets for that LAN segment. In cases where all Switches have the same Root Path Cost, the switch with the lowest Bridge Identifier becomes the Designated Bridge.

**Root Path Cost** – The Root Path Cost of a switch is the sum of the Path Cost of the Root Port and the Root Path Costs of all the switches that the packet goes through. The Root Path Cost of the Root Bridge is zero.

**Bridge Priority** – This is a parameter that users can set. The smaller the number you set, the higher the Bridge Priority is. The higher the Bridge Priority, the better the chance the Switch will be selected as the Root Bridge.

## On The Port Level

**Root Port** – Each switch has a Root Port. This is the port that has the lowest Path Cost to the Root Bridge. In case there are several such ports, then the one with the lowest Port Identifier is the Root Port.

**Designated Port** – This is the port on each Designated Bridge that is attached to the LAN segment for which the switch is the Designated Bridge.

**Port Priority** – The smaller this number, the higher the Port Priority is. With higher Port Priority, the higher the probability that the port will be selected as the Root Port.

**Path Cost** – This is a changeable parameter and may be modified according to the STA specification. The 1000Mbps segment has an assigned Path Cost of 4, the 100Mbps segment has an assigned Path Cost of 19, and each 10Mbps segment has an assigned Path Cost of 100, based on the STA specifications.

## User-Changeable STA Parameters

The factory default setting should cover the majority of installations. However, it is advisable to keep the default settings as set at the factory, unless it is absolutely necessary. The user changeable parameters in the Switch are as follows:

**Bridge Priority** – A Bridge Priority can be from 0 to 65535. 0 is equal to the highest Bridge Priority.

**Bridge Hello Time** – The Hello Time can be from 1 to 10 seconds. This is the interval between two transmissions of BPDU packets sent by the Root Bridge to tell all other Switches that it is indeed the Root Bridge. If you set a Hello Time for your Switch, and it is not the Root Bridge, the set Hello Time will be used if and when your Switch becomes the Root Bridge.

**Note:** The Hello Time cannot be longer than the Max. Age. Otherwise, a configuration error will occur.

**Bridge Max. Age** – The Max. Age can be from 6 to 40 seconds. At the end of the Max. Age, if a BPDU has still not been received from the Root Bridge, your Switch will start sending its own BPDU to all other Switches for permission to become the Root Bridge. If it turns out that your Switch has the lowest Bridge Identifier, it will become the Root Bridge.

**Bridge Forward Delay** – The Forward Delay can be from 4 to 30 seconds. This is the time any port on the Switch spends in the listening state while moving from the blocking state to the forwarding state.

Observe the following formulas when you set the above parameters:

$$\text{Max. Age} \leq 2 \times (\text{Forward Delay} - 1 \text{ second})$$

$$\text{Max. Age} \geq 2 \times (\text{Hello Time} + 1 \text{ second})$$

**Port Priority** – A Port Priority can be from 0 to 255. The lower the number, the greater the probability the port will be chosen as the Root Port.

## Illustration of STA

A simple illustration of three Bridges (or the Switch) connected in a loop is depicted in *Figure 5-1*. In this example, you can anticipate some major network problems if the STA assistance is not applied. For instance, if Bridge 1 broadcasts a packet to Bridge 2, Bridge 2 will broadcast it to Bridge 3, and Bridge 3 will broadcast it to Bridge 1 and so on. The broadcast packet will be passed indefinitely in a loop, causing a serious network failure.

To alleviate network loop problems, STA can be applied as shown in *Figure 5-2*. In this example, STA breaks the loop by blocking the connection between Bridge 1 and 2. The decision to block a particular connection is based on the STA calculation of the most current Bridge and Port settings. Now, if Bridge 1 broadcasts a packet to Bridge 3, then Bridge 3 will broadcast it to Bridge 2 and the broadcast will end there.

STA setup can be somewhat complex. Therefore, you are advised to keep the default factory settings and STA will automatically assign root bridges/ports and block loop connections. However, if you need to customize the STA parameters, refer to *Table 5-1*.

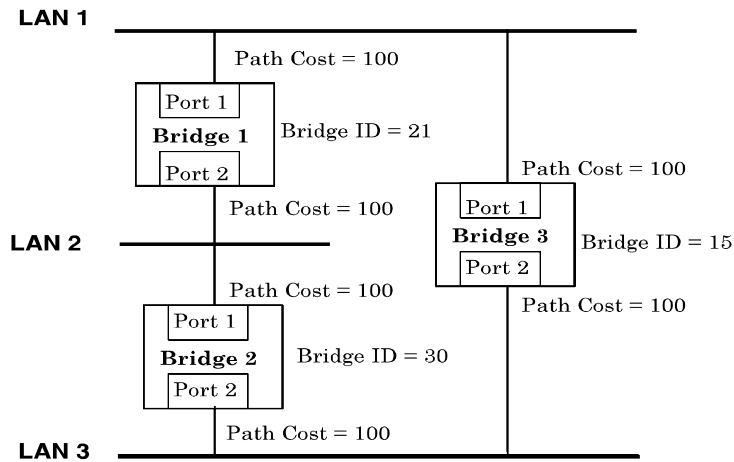


Figure 5- 1. Before Applying the STA Rules

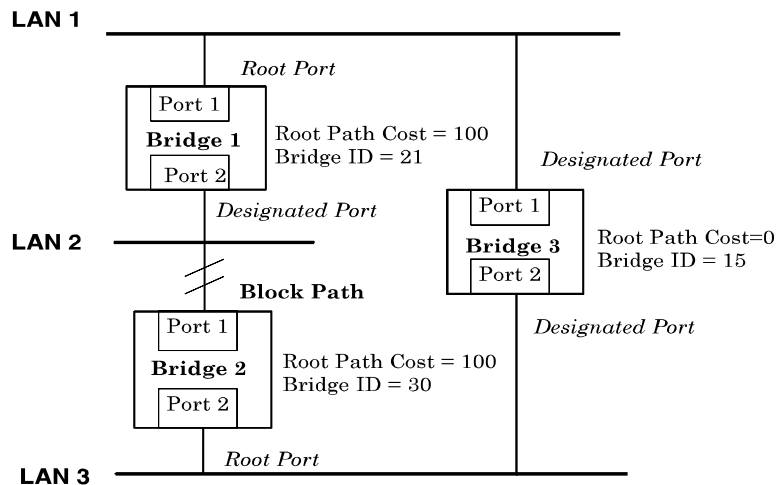


Figure 5- 2. After Applying the STA Rules

| STA parameters                   | Settings                               | Effects  | Comment   |
|----------------------------------|--|--|---|
| <b>Bridge Priority</b>           | lower the #,<br>higher the<br>priority | Increases chance of<br>becoming the Root<br>Bridge     | Avoid, if the switch is<br>used in workgroup level<br>of a large network                        |
| <b>Hello Time</b>                | 1 - 10 sec.                            | No effect, if not<br>Root Bridge                       | Never set greater than<br>Max. Age Time   |
| <b>Max. Age Time</b>             | 6 - 40 sec.                            | Compete for Root<br>Bridge, if BPDU is<br>not received | Avoid low number for<br>unnecessary reset of<br>Root Bridge                                     |
| <b>Forward Delay</b>             | 4 - 30 sec.                            | High # delays the<br>change in state                   | Max. Age $\leq 2 \times$<br>(Forward Delay - 1)<br>Max. Age $\geq 2 \times$ (Hello<br>Time + 1) |
| <b>Port Level STA parameters</b> |  |  |   |
| <b>Enable/Disable</b>            | Enable/<br>Disable                     | Enable or disable<br>this LAN segment                  | Disable a port for<br>security or problem<br>isolation  |
| <b>Port Priority</b>             | lower the #,<br>higher the<br>priority | Increases chance of<br>become Root Port                |   |

**Table 5- 1. User-selective STA parameters**

---

## Port Trunking

---

Port Trunking is used to combine a number of ports together to make a single high-bandwidth data pipeline. The participating parts are called members of a trunk group, with one port designated as the *anchor* of the group. Since all members of the trunk group must be configured to operate in the same manner, all settings changes made to the anchor port are applied to all members of the trunk group. Thus, when configuring the ports in a trunk group, you only need to configure the anchor port.

The Switch supports up to 16 trunk groups. Each module on the switch supports up to two trunk groups except gigabit modules, which support a single trunk group. The Switch treats all ports in a trunk group as a single port. As such, trunk ports will not be blocked by Spanning Tree.

Data transmitted to a specific host (destination address) will always be transmitted over the same port in a trunk group. This allows packets in a data stream to arrive in the same order they were sent. A trunk connection can be made with any other switch that maintains host-to-host data streams over a single trunk port. Switches that use a load-balancing scheme that sends the packets of a host-to-host data stream over multiple trunk ports cannot have a trunk connection with the Switch.

---

## VLAN Structure

---

VLANs can be defined based on port and IP or IPX protocols and subnets, or various protocols such as DECnet, NetBios, and AppleTalk. The device can simultaneously support several VLANs for each protocol.



The device VLANs are defined as groups of physical interfaces or ports that share the same network protocols. Once a VLAN is defined, bridging is performed within the VLAN. For example, if a DECnet VLAN is defined on ports 2 and 3, all DEC traffic between these ports are bridged.

For IP and IPX VLANs, usually every VLAN is one IP subnet or IPX network. Bridging is performed between interfaces that belong to the same VLAN. Routing can be activated between the VLANs.

The following VLAN types can be created:

- IP.
- IPX (four encapsulation types).
- DECnet.
- DEC LAT.
- XNS.
- SNA.
- AppleTalk.
- NetBios.
- Other (a super-VLAN that includes all protocols for which VLANs have not been defined, except IP and IPX), and "User-defined" (for defining an unlisted protocol or a subnet).

Ports groups associated with a VLAN are user-assigned. For IP protocol VLANs, the *AutoConfig* feature can be invoked to cause the device to automatically detect the port configurations.

## VLAN Features

The following sections describe the features that are provided with the use of VLANs. This section includes:

- Bridging Between Network LANs.
- VLAN AutoConfig.
- Scalability.

### Bridging Between Network LANs

VLANs effectively performs bridging for non-routable protocols (non-router IP or IPX networks), such as DECnet, DEClat, AppleTalk, and others.

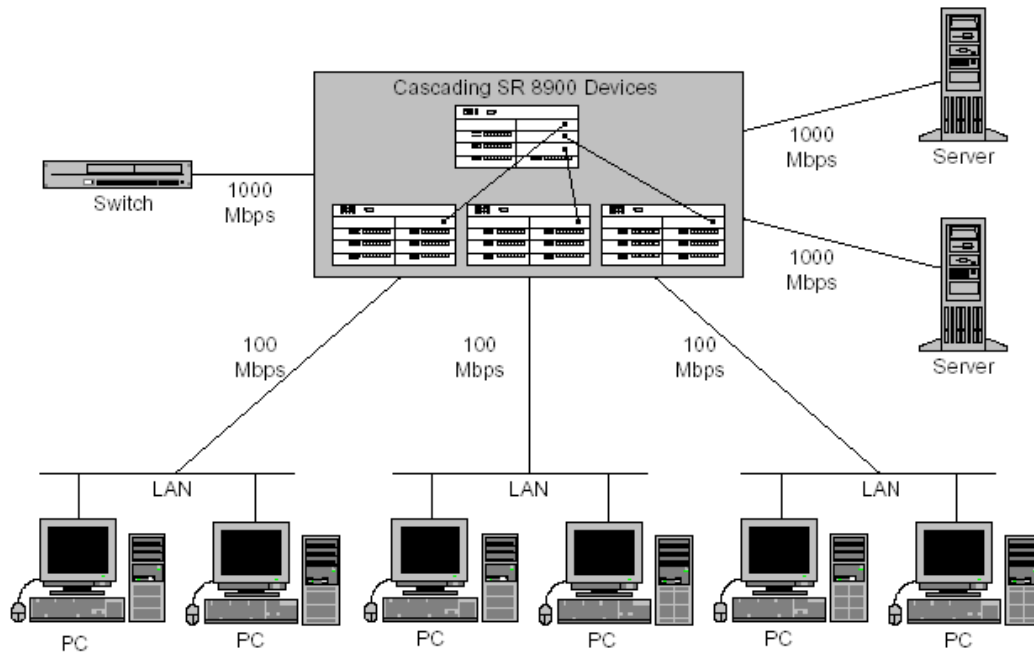
### VLAN AutoConfig

IP VLANs can be location independent. When moving stations to other ports that are not members of the original VLAN, configuration changes are necessary to inform the router that the VLAN has been extended to the new destination port. For example, a laptop or PC can be connected to any network port, even across a WAN connection, and remain a member of the same VLAN.

With VLAN AutoConfig enabled, changing the system in real-time is automatically detected. When a change is detected and signaled, the VLAN configuration must be entered into the system to activate it. The AutoDiscover feature controls the VLAN change detection procedure.

### Scalability

Device units can grow with your network, providing all routing services wherever needed. The following figure illustrates some various connection configuration options.



**Figure 5- 3: Network LAN Connectivity**

---

## Broadcast Storms

---

Broadcast storms are a common problem on today's networks. Basically, they consist of broadcast packets that flood and/or are looped on a network causing noticeable performance degradation and, in extreme cases, network failure. Broadcast storms can be caused by network loops, malfunctioning NICs, bad cable connections, and applications or protocols that generate broadcast traffic, among others.

In effect, broadcast storms can originate from any number of sources, and once they are started, they can be self-perpetuating, and can even multiply the number of broadcast packets on the network over time. In the best case, network utilization will be high and bandwidth limited until the hop counts for all broadcast packets have expired, whereupon the packets will be discarded and the network will return to normal. In the worst case, they will multiply, eventually using up all the network bandwidth (although network applications will usually crash long before this happens), and cause a network meltdown.

Broadcast storms have long been a concern for network administrators with routers traditionally being used to prevent their occurrence, and if that failed, to at least limit their scope. However, with the advent of VLANs, switches are now able to limit broadcast domains better and cheaper than routers. Also, many switches, including the DES-6300 series, have broadcast sensors and filters built into each port to further control broadcast storms.

### ***Segmenting Broadcast Domains***

VLANs can be used to segment broadcast domains. They do this by forwarding packets only to ports in the same VLAN. Thus, broadcast packets will only be forwarded to ports that are members of the same VLAN. Other parts of the network are effectively shielded. As a result, the

smaller the broadcast domain, the less effect a broadcast storm will have. Because VLANs are implemented at each switch port, they can be quite effective in limiting the scope of broadcast storms.

## ***Eliminating Broadcast Storms***

SNMP agents can be programmed to monitor the number of broadcast packets on switch ports and act on the data. When the number of broadcast packets on a given port rise past an assigned threshold, an action can be triggered. When enabled, the usual action is to block the port to broadcast frames, which discards all broadcast frames arriving at the port from the attached segment. Not only does this isolate the broadcast domain, but it actually starts removing broadcast packets from the affected segment. When the number of broadcast packets falls to an acceptable level (below a *falling threshold*), the SNMP agent can remove the blocking condition, returning the port to its normal operational state.

In the DES-6300 switch, the default rising threshold is met when more than 500 broadcast packets per second are being detected on a specified port. Once the rising threshold is surpassed for a duration of more than 5 seconds, it will trigger the broadcast storm rising action configured by the user. The default falling threshold is met if there are less than 250 broadcast packets per second. It is triggered once the duration is at least 30 seconds. The actions can easily be defined by using a normal SNMP management program or through the console interface.



## CONFIGURING THE SWITCH

This section will help configure the Switch user by describing the ConfigMaster program.

ConfigMaster is an intricate SNMP-based network management system that operates as an applet and as an application. ConfigMaster configures, monitors, and troubleshoots networking devices both locally at the management console, or remotely using a standard Web browser.

ConfigMaster provides real-time graphs from a wide selection of MIB variables that help monitor device performance.

ConfigMaster is accessed through a Graphic User Interface (GUI) that displays the actual device front panel. The panel indicators, such as the LEDs, are mirrored to the front panel display and are viewed by the network manager.



Figure 6- 1. ConfigMaster Main Screen

The main window displayed above is used for managing ConfigMaster. It also contains general information about other ConfigMaster windows and buttons, and describes how to add optional features to devices.

---

## Installation

---

This section contains the system requirements and installation instructions for the ConfigMaster, and includes the following topics:

- **General System Requirements** - Describes the general system requirements for hardware, software and web based installations.
- **Installing ConfigMaster** - Describes the procedure for installing ConfigMaster.

### *General System Requirements*

#### **Hardware Requirements**

The hardware requirements are as follows:

- Pentium-Based Machine.
- Windows NT 4.0, Windows 95 or Windows 98.
- 32Mb RAM (64Mb RAM or More Is Recommended).
- 50 Mb Hard Disk Space.
- CD-ROM Drive.
- 800 x 600 (Minimum Recommended) Screen Resolution.

#### **Software Requirements**

The software requirements are as follows:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer Version 4.01 or Above.
- OR
- Netscape Communicator Version 4.5 or Above.
- Java Virtual Machine supporting Java version 1.1.4 and Above.

In addition, ConfigMaster runs with:

- Sun JVM (JRE).
- Microsoft JVM (Wjview).

The DES-6300 has been verified to run with Microsoft's JVM (Wjview) and Sun's JVM (jREw). In case of JRE, we recommend not to use version 1.1.7A because of a known bug. If you decide to use SUN's JVM, it is included on the CD-ROM- "Util\Tools\jre117Bi-win32.exe".

If you don't have a JVM, you can download one of the following:

Sun's JVM (JRE) – <http://java.sun.com/products/jdk/1.1/jre/index.html>

Microsoft JVM (Jview) (comes with Microsoft Internet Explorer version 4.01 or above) – <http://www.microsoft.com/windows/ie/download>

To download just the Java Virtual Machine from Microsoft download the latest Microsoft VM from [http://www.microsoft.com/java/vm/dl\\_vm40.htm](http://www.microsoft.com/java/vm/dl_vm40.htm)

**Note for Windows 2000 users only:** *The Microsoft VM is included with the Windows 2000 operating system and can only be updated with a Windows 2000 hotfix or service pack release. A description of the Windows 2000 Windows File Protection (WFP) feature can be found in Microsoft Knowledge Base (KB) article number Q222193.*

## Web-Based Installations Requirements

In addition to the hardware and software listed above, a ConfigMaster Web-based installation requires a web server. Compatible web servers are as follows:

- Microsoft IIS Web server version 3.0 and Above.
- Netscape Enterprise Web server version 3.0 and Above.
- Netscape Fast Track Web Server.
- Microsoft Personal Web Server (for a single client only).

---

## Embedded Web Server (EWS)

---

The DES-6300 offers an embedded Web-based (HTML) interface allowing users to manage the Switch from anywhere on the network through a standard browser, such as Opera, Netscape Navigator/Communicator, or Microsoft Internet Explorer. The Web browser acts as a universal access tool and can communicate directly with the Switch using the HTTP protocol. Your browser window may vary with the screen shots (pictures) in this guide.

The Web-based management module and the Console program (and Telnet) are different ways to access the same internal switching software and configure it. Thus, all settings encountered in Web-based management are the same as those found in the console program.

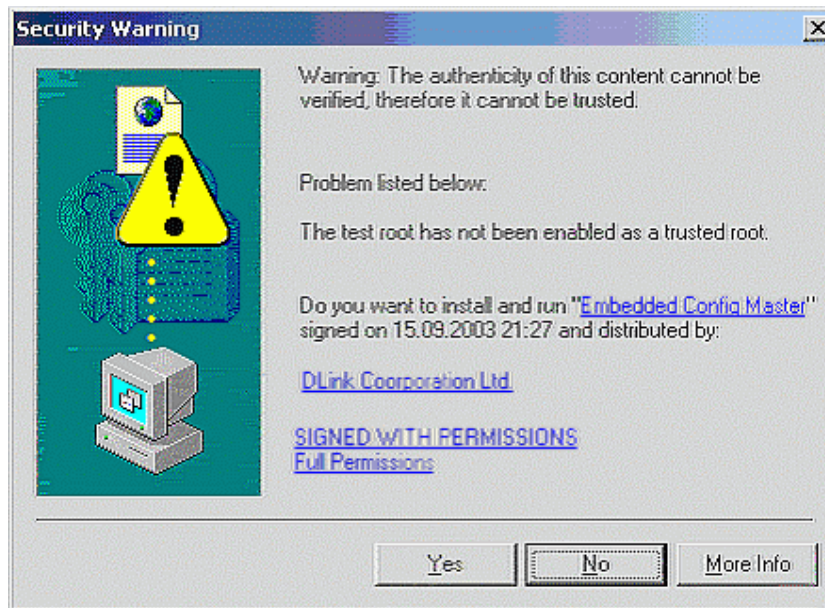
## Getting Started

The first step in getting started in using Web-based management for your Switch is to secure a browser. A Web browser is a program that allows a person to read hypertext, for example, Opera, Netscape Navigator, or Microsoft Internet Explorer. Follow the installation instructions for the browser.

The second and last step is to configure the IP interface of the Switch. This should be done manually through a console (see the *Configure IP Address* section in the “*Using The Console Interface*” chapter).

You are now ready to begin managing your switch by simply running the browser installed on your computer and pointing it to the IP address you have defined for the device. The URL in the address bar should read something like: `http://123.123.123.123`, where the numbers 123 represent the IP address of the switch. Please note that the proxy fro this session should be turned off.

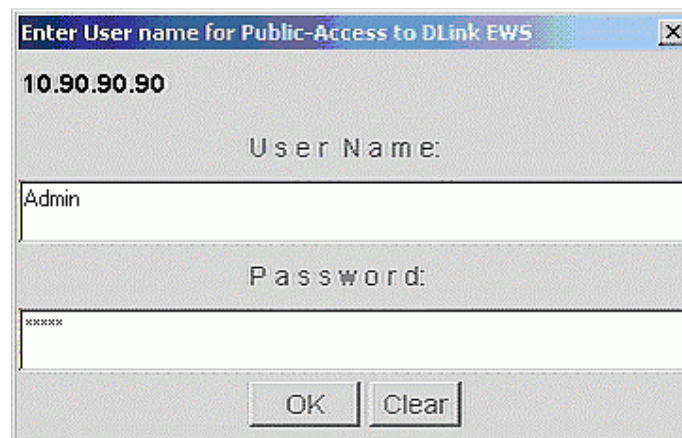
After initially entering the IP address into the URL of the browser, the following screen may appear:



**Figure 6- 2. Security Warning screen**

This screen asks if the user would like to download and install the “Embedded ConfigMaster”. Click *Yes* to continue.

After downloading and installing ConfigMaster automatically, the user will be prompted for a Username and a Password, as seen below:

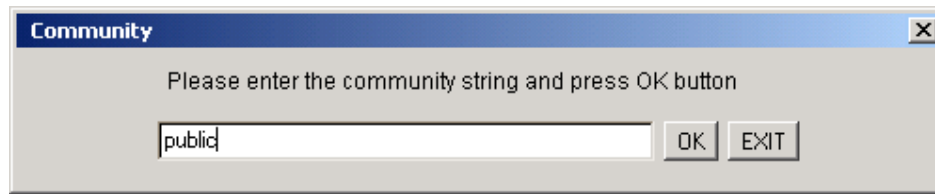
A dialog box titled "Enter User name for Public-Access to DLink EWS". It displays the IP address "10.90.90.90". Below the title, it has a "User Name:" label and a text input field containing "Admin". Below that is a "Password:" label and a text input field filled with "XXXXXXXX". At the bottom are two buttons: "OK" and "Clear".

**Figure 6- 3. Username and Password screen**

Enter the Username and password into the appropriate field and click OK. The default Username and Password are both “Admin”.

Next, the user will be prompted for the community string, as seen below:

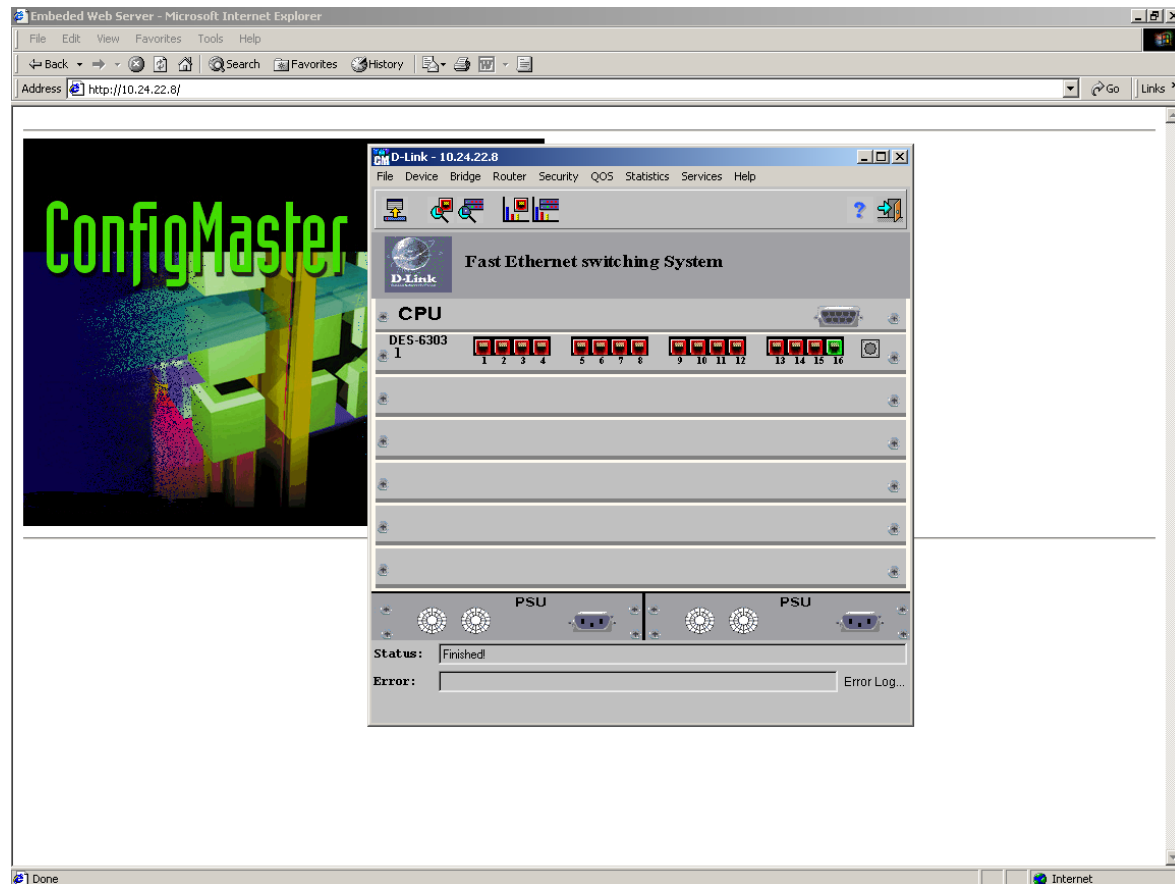




**Figure 6- 4. Community screen**

Enter the SNMP community string in the open field and press OK. The default community string is “public”.

After pressing “OK”, the following screen will appear.



**Figure 6- 5. Initial screen**

The center grey pop-up window is the ConfigMaster GUI (Graphic User Interface) used for configuring the DES-6300.

**Note:** The Embedded Web Server (EWS) has been set in this switch starting with ConfigMaster version 8.426 (Firmware build 3.135). If your current version predates this, you may download ConfigMaster or update the switch's software from the D-Link website.

## Using ConfigMaster Windows

### Standard Layout

ConfigMaster's GUI is windows based with a standardized screen layout. The following figure illustrates a typical screen layout.

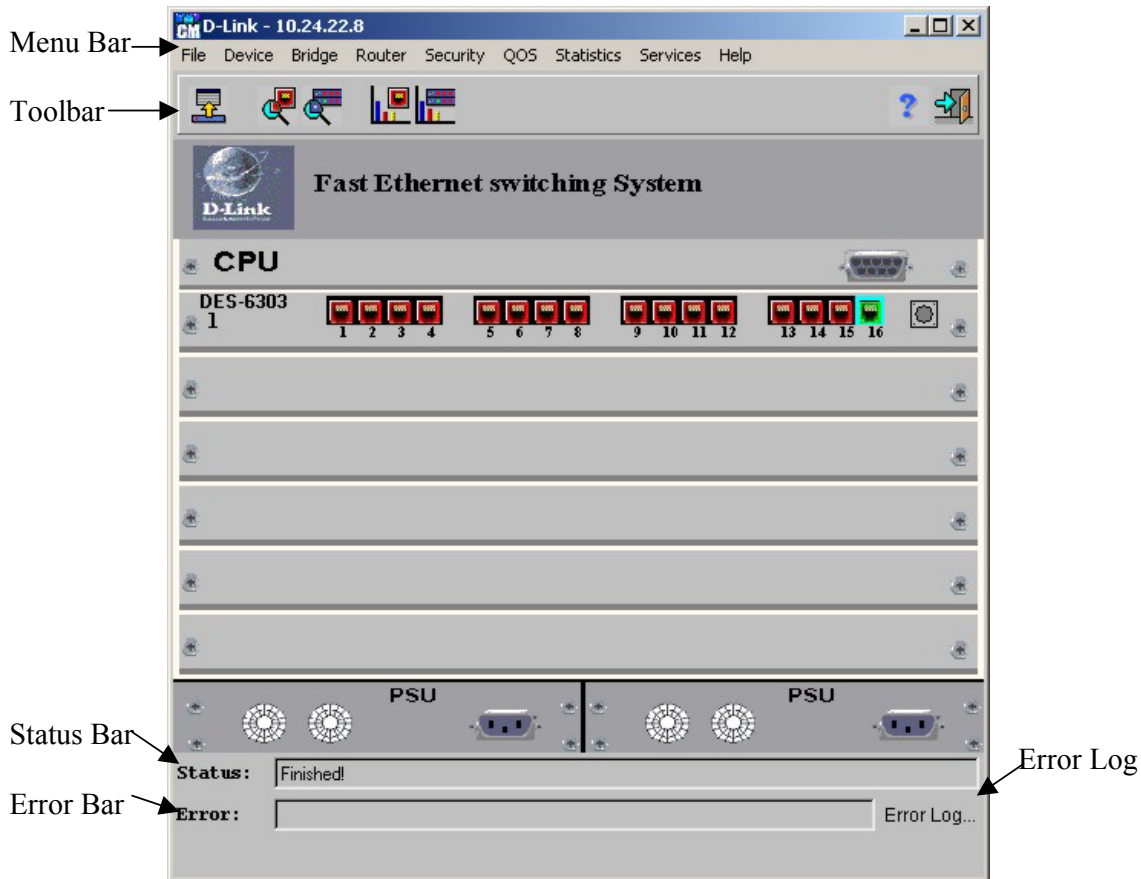


Figure 6- 6. ConfigMaster Window

The screen is divided into the following sections:

- Menu Bar.
- Toolbar.
- Error Log.
- Error Bar.
- Status Bar

### Menu Bar

Most windows opened directly from the front panel display contain a menu with various options. The most widely used options are:



















- **Refresh** – Polls the device and shows new information.
- **Set** – Sends and updates new configurations to the device.
- **Insert** – Inserts a new row into a table.

- **Edit** – Allows information in a dialog box or table to be edited.
- **Delete** – Deletes information from a table.
- **Close** – Closes a dialog box or table.

## Toolbar

ConfigMaster windows have toolbars for quick access to ConfigMaster options. Each window contains only those toolbar icons that are relevant to that window. The table below describes standard Toolbar icons used in the application.

**ConfigMaster Toolbar Icons**

| Icon  | Function  | Relevant Shortcut |
|---|---|-------------------|
|    | Polls the device and show current information.  | Ctrl+R            |
|    | Sends new data from a window to the device and update the device.   | Ctrl+S            |
|    | Opens a dialog box for inserting a table row. Remember to click  to save modifications in the table. | Ctrl+L            |
|    | Opens a dialog box for editing table data. Remember to click  to save modifications in the table.    | Ctrl+E            |
|    | Deletes the selected table rows.  | Ctrl+D            |
|   | Prints the current screen.  | Ctrl+P            |
|  | Generates a graph.  |                   |
|  | Opens a previously stored graph configuration.  |                   |
|  | Undoes all changes since the last time  was clicked.   |                   |
|  | Exits from the current screen and/or application  |                   |
|  | Sends table modifications or additions made in an Insert or Edit dialog box to the table.   | Ctrl+U            |
|  | Cancels changes in an Insert or Edit window.  |                   |
|  | Erases the data from the entire table.  |                   |
|  | Saves a trap to file in the Traps Table.  |                   |
|  | Accesses the Statistics window.   |                   |

**Table 6-1. ConfigMaster Toolbar Icons Table**

## Error Bar

Displays an explanation of an SNMP action that could not be carried out or that failed for any reason.

## Status Bar

Indicates the last SNMP action status. The most common status bar messages are the following:

- **Sending Data** – Displayed when the device is reading or writing.
- **Data Arriving** – Displayed when the device is getting SNMP data.
- **Finished** – Displayed when a set or get action has been completed.
- **Sending Window Request!** – Displayed when the device is searching for a window or table.

## ***The Front Panel Display***

The front panel display GUI is a graphic image illustrating the device combined with the user interface. Labels in the front panel display represent the various interfaces of units and are color-coded for easy identification. All ConfigMaster options are accessed through the front panel display. It provides a device zoomed image. The front panel display has access to all options for controlling the device.










**Figure 6- 7. Front Panel Display**

### **Front Panel Display Toolbar**

The front panel display toolbar includes the following icons:

### *Front Panel Display Toolbar Icons*

| Icon  | Function                                    | Relevant Shortcuts |
|---|---|--------------------|
|  | Refreshes the front panel display           | Ctrl+R             |
|  | Accesses the Port Properties window         | Ctrl+T             |
|  | Accesses the Global Parameters window       | Ctrl+G             |
|  | Views Port Statistics for the selected port | Ctrl+P             |
|  | Views Element Statistics                    |                    |
|  | Accesses the on-line Help                   | F1                 |
|  | Exits the front panel display               | Ctrl+X             |

**Table 6-2. Front Panel Display Toolbar Icons Table**

## Understanding The Front Panel Display Colors

Around each port on the front panel display is a colored border. These borders indicate the device port status. The following table describes the various status indications.

### *Front Panel Display Interface Color-Code*

| Label Color | Explanation            |
|-------------|------------------------|
| Green       | Interface link is up   |
| Red         | Interface link is down |
| Blue        | Port selected          |

**Table 6-3. Front Panel Display Interface Color-Code Table**

## Understanding The Front Panel Display LEDs

The front panel displays LEDs as they appear on the device front panel. The LEDs are color-coded with the same configuration as the front panel.

Each card has its own set of LEDs. The LEDs on the host card indicate the device LED indication mode. The LEDs on the other cards indicate the card individual port status.

## Front Panel Display Mode LEDs

On the Host card are eight mode LEDs. Each LED represents a device function mode. The mode selection determines what function is indicated by the LEDs on the individual cards. The selection is made by physically clicking the Mode Selector button. The mode selected is applied to all the LEDs on the device, for example, if “Rx” is selected, wherever a port is receiving a signal, the port corresponding LED indicates this status.

## Device Front Panel Display Power LEDs

On the Host front panel there are two power supply LEDs. The LED indicates the device power supply status.

The top LED indicates if the device is powered by the power supply 1. The bottom LED indicates that the unit is power by the power supply 2. The following table describes the color code representing the power supply status.

*Color Codes For Power Supply LEDs*

| Color   | Status   |
|---------|--|
| LED on  | The power is being supply.                     |
| LED off | A fault has been detected in the power supply. |

**Table 6-4. Color Codes for Power Supply LEDs**

## Front Panel Display Card LEDs

On all cards installed, there is a corresponding LED for each configured port. Based on the mode selected on the host panel, the LED indicates the port status.

*Color Codes For the Status LEDs*


| Function             | Indication and Status  | Giga Indications and Status  |
|----------------------|--|--|
| Link/act             | LED On—Link is up<br>LED On and blinking—Link is up and active<br>LED Off—Link is down | LED On—Link is up<br>LED On and blinking—Link is up and active<br>LED Off—Link is down |
| 10/100               | LED On—100Tx<br>LED Off—10BaseT  | LED On—1000 Mbps   |
| Coll                 | LED On—Collision occurs  | N/A  |
| B.P. (Back Clickure) | LED On—Receive buffer threshold number is exceeded                                     | N/A  |
| Act                  | LED On—Activity in the link  | LED On—Activity in the link  |
| FD (Full Duplex)     | LED On—Full Duplex<br>LED Off—Half Duplex  | LED On—Full Duplex<br>LED Off—Half Duplex  |
| Tx                   | LED On—Link is transmitting traffic  | LED On—Link is transmitting traffic  |
| Rx                   | LED On—Link is receiving traffic   | LED On—Link is receiving traffic   |

**Table 6-5. Color Codes For the Status LEDs**

## View Port Status

*To view a specific port status:*


1. Click a port to select it. Selected ports are highlighted in blue.
2. Right-click a port to open a context-sensitive menu. There are two menu selections:

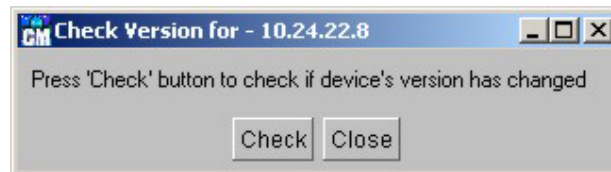
- Refresh Port – The port status is refreshed
  - Port Properties – Displays the port configuration
3. Double-click a port.  
or  
Click Ctrl+T  
or  
Click the  to open the **Port Properties** window for other configuration options.
  4. Select a port and click **Ctrl+P** to open the **Port Statistics** window for other configuration options.

## Refreshing The Front Panel Display

To view the current device and interface status, the front panel display can be refreshed.

*To refresh the front panel display:*

1. Click **Ctrl+R**  
or  
Click .  
or  
Select **Services > Refresh Device Version**. The **Check Version** for window opens:



**Figure 6- 8. Check Version for window**

2. Click . The device is polled for current device and its interfaces.

## ConfigMaster Shortcuts

ConfigMaster has a set of shortcuts for quick access to the main ConfigMaster options. The following table describes the shortcuts and functions used in the ConfigMaster screens.

**Note:** The plus sign (+) is used in the table to show that two keys should be clicked simultaneously, or two actions should be performed at the same time

### *ConfigMaster Shortcuts*

| Shortcut                        | Function  |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <b>ConfigMaster Main Window</b> |   |
| F1                              | Accesses the on-line help.                          |
| Ctrl + O                        | Accesses the <i>General Options - Traps Table</i> . |
| Enter                           | Opens the selected device <i>Zoom View</i> .        |


| Shortcut   | Function   |
|--|--|
| Ctrl + right click inside the IP field;<br>Or Ctrl + D | Accesses the <i>Edit Device List</i> window.   |
| Click the URL  | Accesses the RADLAN Web site.  |
| <b>Zoom View</b>                                       |  |
| F1   | Accesses the on-line help.   |
| Ctrl + X   | Exits the <i>Zoom View</i> .   |
| Ctrl + R   | Refreshs the <i>Zoom View</i> .  |
| Ctrl + G   | Accesses the <i>Global Parameters</i> window   |
| Ctrl + T; Or double click the port                     | Accesses the <i>Port Properties</i> window   |
| Select a port and click Ctrl + P                       | Accesses the <i>Port Statistics</i> window.  |
| <b>Windows</b>   |  |
| Ctrl + S   | Sends the data from the window to the device.  |
| Ctrl + R   | Refreshs the <i>Zoom View</i> showing the current device and its interfaces status.  |
| Ctrl + L; Or double click an empty row                 | Accesses the <i>Insert</i> dialog box.   |
| Ctrl + D   | Deletes a table row.   |
| Ctrl + E; Or double click the row to edit              | Accesses the <i>Edit Dialog</i> box  |
| Ctrl + X   | Exits the window.  |
| Right click the table row and choose Undo              | Undoes the last action performed in the selected table row.  |
| F1   | Accesses the on-line help.   |
| <b>Insert/Edit Dialog Boxes</b>                        |  |
| Ctrl + U   | Sends the table modifications made in the Insert/Edit dialog box to the table.   |
| Escape   | Closes the dialog box and return to the table  |
| <b>Tables</b>  |  |
| Drag the mouse across the table rows                   | Selects multiple table rows<br>Note: This option is not available for FACS, VLAN and Global Forwarding tables.   |
| <b>Edit Device List Window</b>                         |  |
| Double click the device name within the table row      | Sets the device name as default  |
| Enter<br>(in the Insert a Device dialog box)           | Adds a new device name to the Device list in the <i>Edit Device List</i> window (This shortcut is used instead of clicking  .) |
| <b>Traps Table</b>                                     |  |
| Double click the trap within the table row             | Opens the Device <i>Zoom View</i> that sent the trap   |

Table 6-6. ConfigMaster Shortcuts table




## Using Tables


Within ConfigMaster there are tables for configuring devices. The tables are opened through the various operational screens. Section includes the following:

- Editing Table Rows
- Inserting Table Rows
- Deleting Table Rows
- Saving Table Information.

### Editing Table Rows

Certain ConfigMaster tables allow editing. If editing is not allowed, the  toolbar icon does not appear.

*To edit an existing table row:*

1. Select the table row
2. Click .

or


Double-click the selected row.

or

Click **Ctrl+E**.

The **Edit** dialog box opens.



3. Edit the parameters. Parameters that cannot be edited will not appear or are disabled.


**Note:** To cancel changes, click .

4. Click .


or

Click **Ctrl+U**. The **Edit** dialog box closes and the row appears yellow in the table.


**Note:** To undo changes, click . This option affects only those changes that have been made since  was clicked.

- To upload the modifications to the device, click .

### Inserting Table Rows

Certain ConfigMaster tables allow new rows. If adding a row is not allowed, the  toolbar icon does not appear.

*To add a new table row:*

1. Click .


or

Double-click an empty row in the table.

or

Click **Ctrl+L**. The **Insert** dialog box opens.



2. Enter the parameter values. Parameters that are set automatically do not appear.


**Note:** To cancel changes, click .

3. Click 


or

Click **Ctrl+U**. The **Insert** dialog box closes and the row appears yellow in the table.

**Note:** To undo changes, click . This option affects only those changes that have been made since  was clicked.


- To send the changes from the table to the device, click .

## Deleting Table Rows

Certain ConfigMaster tables allow row deletion. If deleting a row is not allowed, the  toolbar icon does not appear.



**To delete a table row:**


1. Select a table row. To select multiple rows, drag the mouse across the table rows. This option is not available for FACS, VLAN and Global Forwarding tables.

2. Click 


or

Click **Ctrl+D**. The row is deleted.

**Note:** To undo changes, click . This option affects only those changes that have been made since  was clicked.

3. To send the changes from the table to the device, click .

## Erasing Tables

Certain ConfigMaster tables allow the entire table to be erased. If a table cannot be erased  does not appear.


**To erase an entire table:**

- Click . All table rows are erased.

## Saving Table Information


Specific ConfigMaster table information can be saved for later reference.

**To save table information:**

- Open a ConfigMaster Table.
- Click  on the toolbar. The *Save File* dialog box displays.



**Figure 6- 9 Save File Dialog Box**

- Select a library to save the table information in the *Save In* field.
- Define a file name in the *File Name* field.
- Click . The table information is saved.

---

## Working With Configuration Files

---

For security reasons, the configuration files are saved on the ConfigMaster computer in the following directory: ConfigMaster/Nms/Configuration.

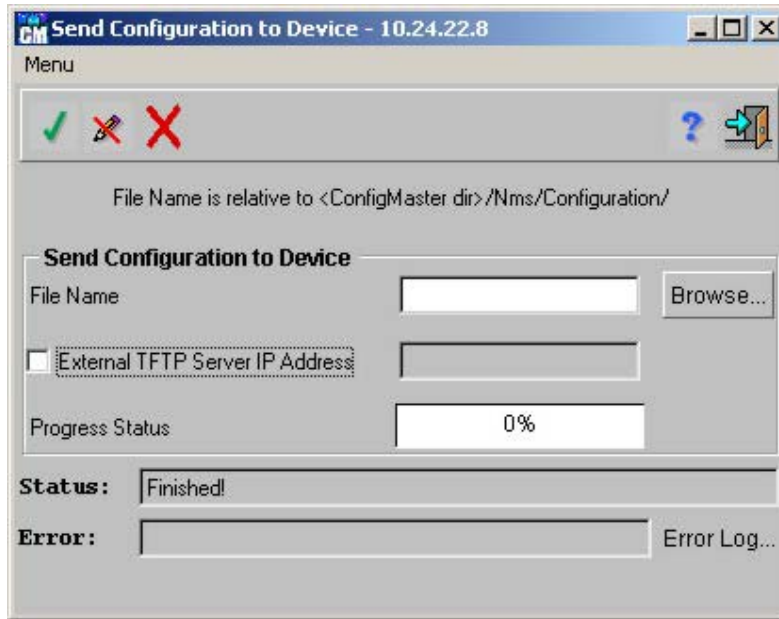
*To save (or backup) the configuration files in this directory:*

- File access must be permitted. Files are sent by either FTP or copied into the configuration file directory.
- The configuration file is managed through the front panel display **File** menu. The **Configuration File** menu has the following menu options:
  - Send Configuration to Device.
  - Get Configuration From Device.
  - Configuration File - Conversion.


### Send Configuration To Device

*To download the configuration file backup copy to the device:*

1. Select **File > Configuration File > Send Configuration to Device**. The *Send Configuration to Device* window opens:



**Figure 6- 10. Send Configuration File to Device window**

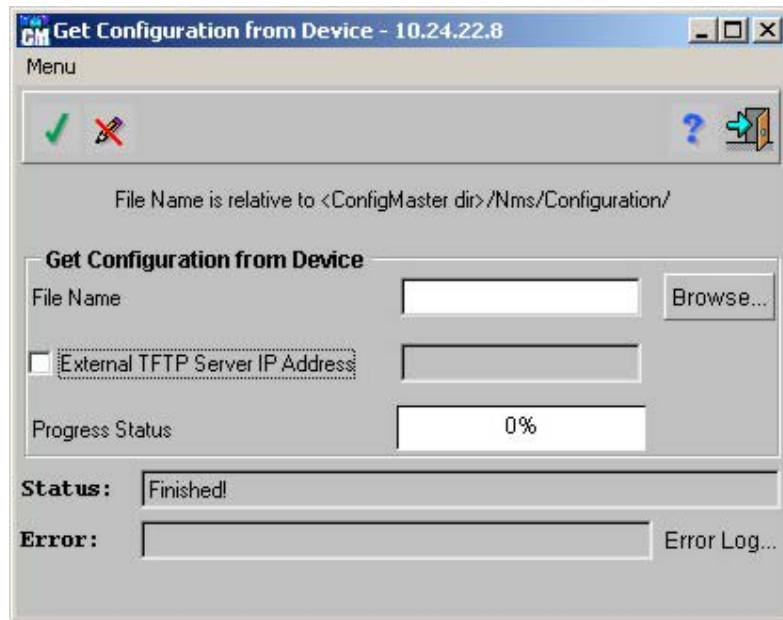
2. In the File Name field, enter the configuration file name to send to the device, or press **Browse...** to locate the configuration file name.
3. If the configuration file is saved on the external TFTP server, check the “External TFTP Server IP Address” check box and enter the external TFTP server IP address.
4. Click . The procedure begins. The procedure progress is illustrated by the Progress Status incremental bar. When the incremental bar indicates that the procedure is completed, a **Reset** window prompt opens.
5. Click **Reset** to reset the device. The device is reset.

## Get Configuration From Device


To maintain a copy of the device configuration file, the device configuration is saved on the server.

*To save (or backup) the modified configuration files:*

1. Select **File > Configuration File > Get Configuration from Device**. The *Get Configuration from Device* window opens:

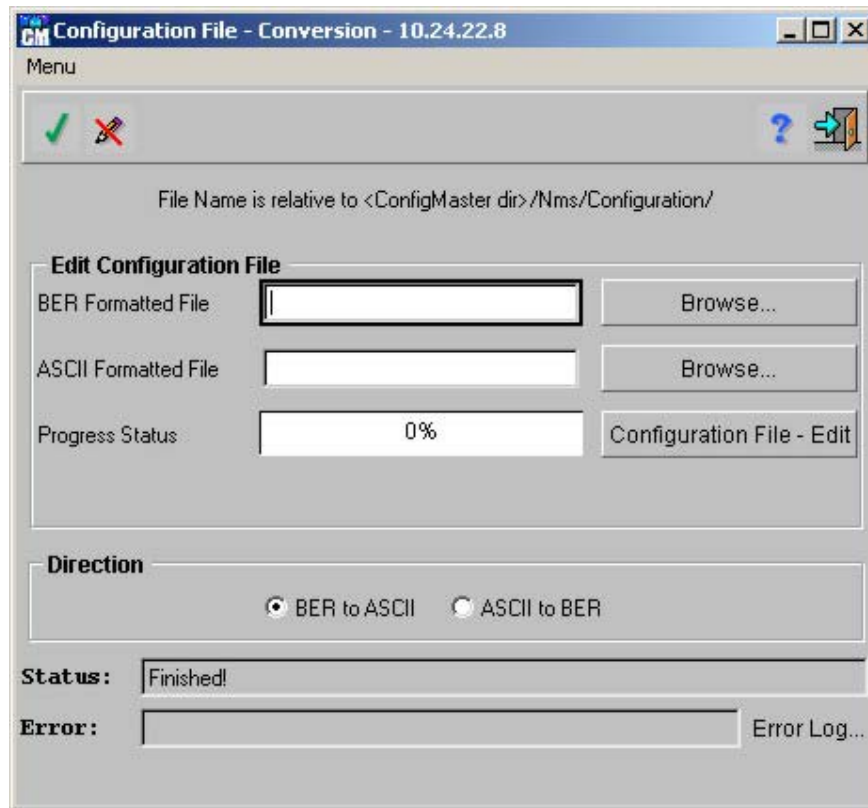


**Figure 6- 11. Get Configuration From Device window**

2. In the File Name field, enter the device configuration file, or click **Browse...** to locate the device configuration file name.
3. If the default TFTP server provided with the device is not required, check the “External TFTP Server IP Address” checkbox and enter the external TFTP server IP address. To use the default TFTP server, clear the “External TFTP Server IP Address” checkbox.
4. Click . The file saving procedure begins. The configuration file is retrieved from the server. The procedure progress is illustrated by the Progress Status incremental bar. When the incremental bar indicates that the procedure is completed, the file is retrieved.

## Configuration File-Conversion

The **Configuration File - Conversion** screen is used to translate the configuration file from BER to ASCII format, edit the configuration file and then translate the file back from ASCII to BER format.



**Figure 6- 12. Configuration File-Conversion window**

**Note:** Using the **Configuration File – Edit** button on the **Configuration File - Conversion** window to edit the configuration file in ASCII should be done only by authorized personnel familiar with the format, otherwise the procedure may result in configuration download errors.

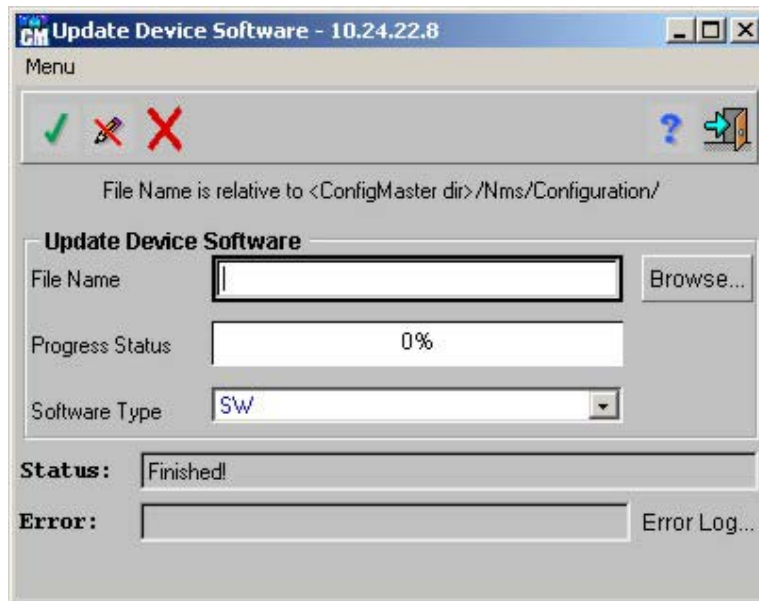
## Update Device Firmware

D-Link Corporation may release updated software versions of the device software. Software files reside on the web server computer and are downloaded from the ConfigMaster\Nms\Configuration directory.


**Note:** If download is not successful, the current device software version does not change. If download is successful, new software is not implemented until the device is reset.

**To update the configuration device software:**

1. Select **File > Update Device Software**. The *Update Device Software* window opens:



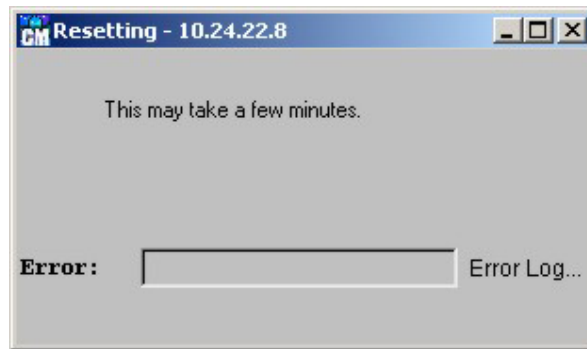
**Figure 6- 13. Update Device Software window**

2. In the File Name field, enter the Web server directory software file  
or  
Click **Browse...** to manually locate the software file.
3. Select one of the following software types for updating:
  - SW.
  - Features.
  - CLI.
4. Click . The update procedure begins. The update progress is illustrated by the Progress Status incremental bar. The software update takes a few minutes. When the update is complete, the following **Confirm reset** window opens:



**Figure 6- 14. Confirm reset window**

5. Click **Reset** to reset the device. The **Resetting** window opens:



**Figure 6- 15. Resetting window**

The device is reset and the following **Reset complete** window prompt opens:



**Figure 6- 16. Reset Complete window**

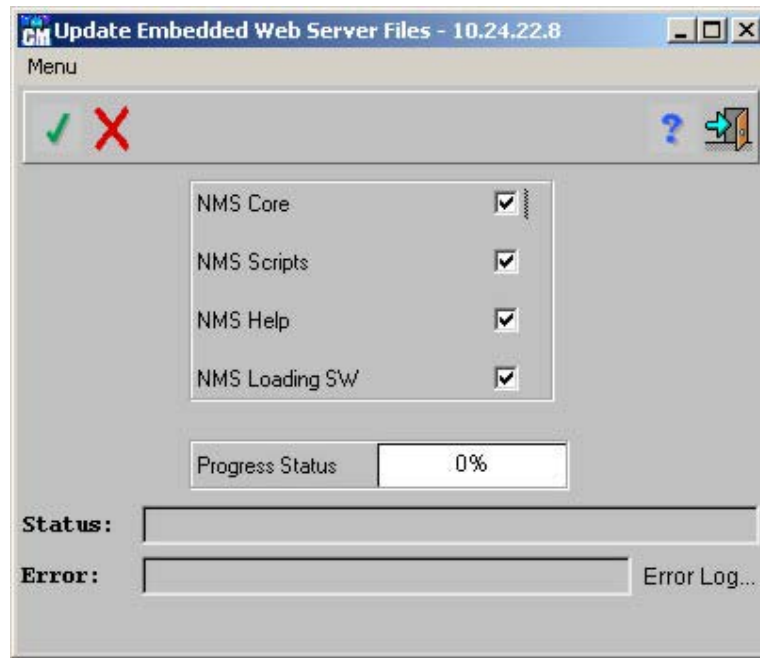
6. Click .

## Update Embedded Web Server

D-Link Corporation may release updated versions of the **Embedded Web Server (EWS)**. These files reside on the web server computer and are downloaded from the D-Link directory.

Select **File > Update Embedded Web Server Files**. The *Update Embedded Web Server Files* window opens:






**Figure 6- 17. Update Embedded Web Server**

1. Display the **Update Embedded Web Server Files** window.
2. Select which files are being updated. The default is all the files are selected. For a first time installation, all the files must be selected. The files are selected by checking the appropriate Update Embedded Web checkbox.
  - NMS Core
  - NMS Scripts
  - NMS Help
  - NMS Loading SW

**Note:** After the EWS files have been updated, the security status must be defined. For more information about defining security access for the EWS.

**Note:** The default user can be used unless it is changed. The default user name is **Admin** and the password **Admin**.

**Note:** To fully upgrade the EWS, it is recommended that the user keep the default setting, whereas all the boxes are checked.

1. Click . The update procedure begins. The update progress is illustrated by the Progress Status incremental bar. The web server files update takes a few minutes. When the update is complete, the following **Success** window opens, confirming a successful update:



**Figure 6-18. Success window**

2. Click .

## Exit

*To end the current front panel display session:*

Select **File > Exit**. The front panel display is closed and the **ConfigMaster Main** window opens.

---

## Managing The Device

---

This section describes the basic functions for managing a device, including resetting the device, erasing the NVRAM, device global parameters, device features, and device features. This section includes the following topics:

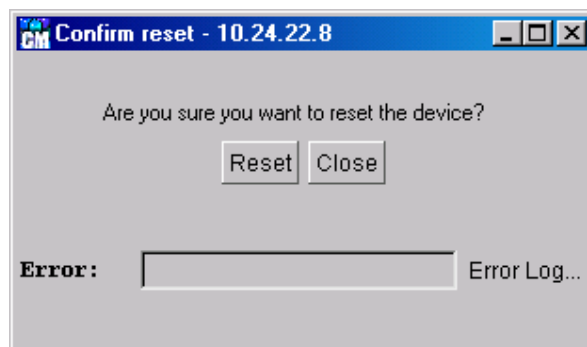
- Resetting The Device
- Device Global Parameters
- Device Features

### ***Resetting The Device***

Reset Device implements changes made to the device.

*To reset a device:*

1. Select **Device > Reset Device**. The *Confirm Reset* window opens:



**Figure 6-19. Confirm Reset window**

2. Click **Reset** to reset the device. The **Resetting** window opens:



**Figure 6- 20. Resetting window**

The device is reset and the following **Reset complete** window opens:




**Figure 6- 21. Reset complete window**

3. Click **O.K.**

## ***Device Global Parameters***

The Global Parameters command is to set the device System Identification, Time and Software Version commands.

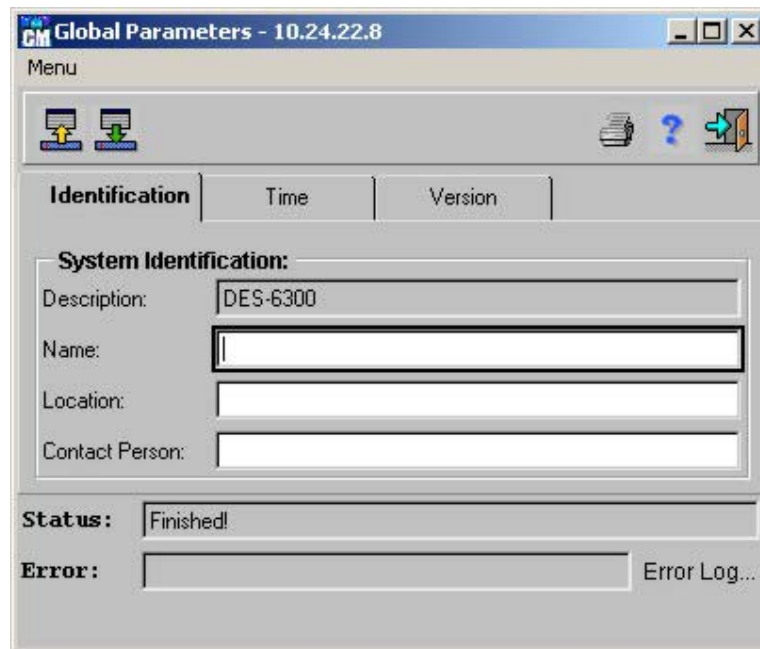
**Note:** The **Global Parameters** window can be also accessed by clicking  on the front panel display toolbar, or pressing **Ctrl+G**.

### ***To display the Global Parameters screen:***

Select **Device > Global Parameters**. The *Global Parameters* window opens. The Global Parameters window has the following three tabs:

- Identification – Defines a general description, user-defined name, location, and contact person for a device.
- Time – Defines the System Up Time, System Time, and System Date for a device.
- Version – Defines the software and hardware software versions running on a device.

The default screen is the **Identification** tab. The following figure illustrates the **Global Parameters** window **Identification** tab:


The screenshot shows a window titled "Global Parameters - 10.24.22.8". Below the title bar is a "Menu" bar with icons for "Configuration", "Status", "Help", and "Exit". Below the menu are three tabs: "Identification", "Time", and "Version". The "Identification" tab is active. It contains a "System Identification:" section with four text input fields: "Description:" (containing "DES-6300"), "Name:" (empty), "Location:" (empty), and "Contact Person:" (empty). Below these fields is a "Status:" label with a text input field containing "Finished!". At the bottom, there is an "Error:" label with a text input field and a button labeled "Error Log...".

**Figure 6- 22. Global Parameters – Identification tab**

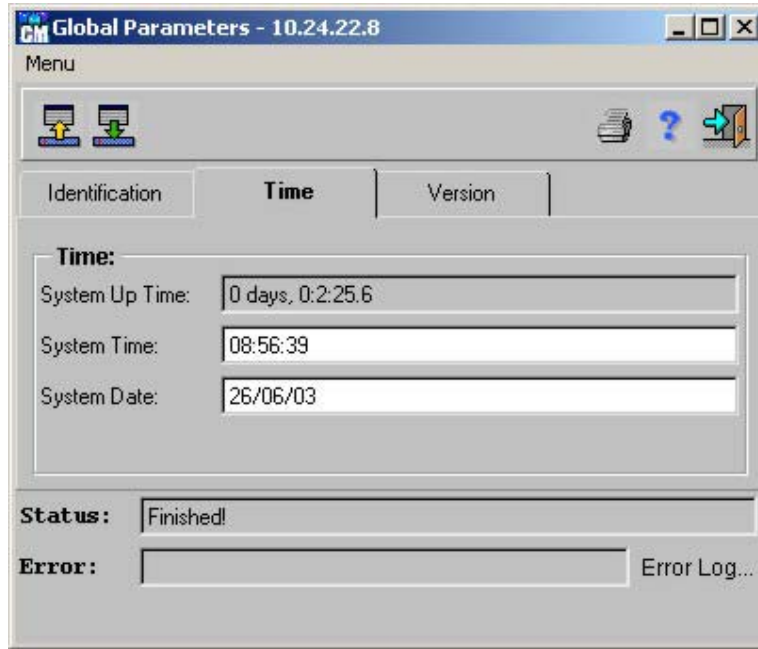
The **Identification** tab displays the following fields:

- **Description** – Device General description.
- **Name** – User assigned device name that appears on all system windows Title Bars.
- **Location** – Device geographic location.
- **Contact Person** – The persons responsible for the device.

*To edit an Identification tab field:*

- Edit any field except the Description field.
- Click . When the *Status* field displays “Finished!”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

The following figure illustrates the **Global Parameters** window **Time** tab:




**Figure 6- 23. Global Parameters – Time tab**

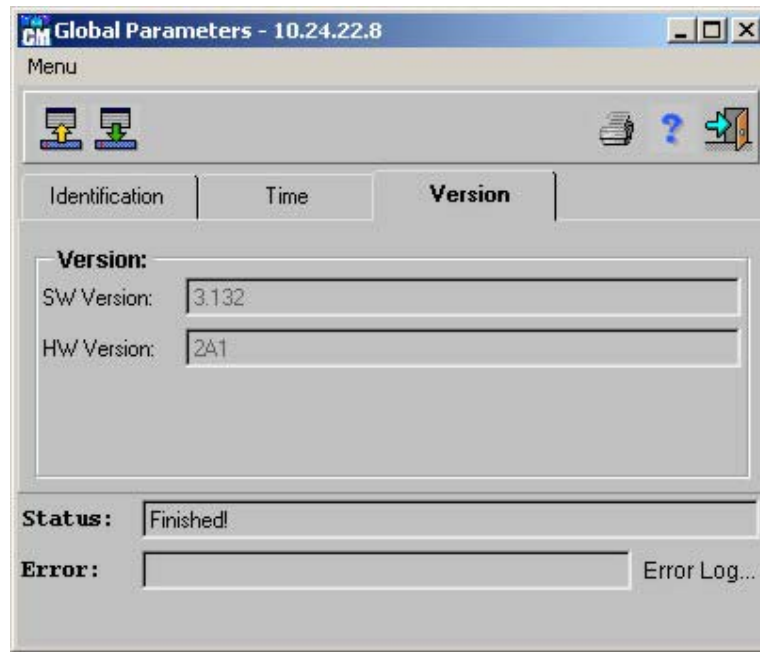
The **Time** tab displays the following fields:

- **System Up Time** – Time elapsed since the last reset.
- **System Time** – Current user-defined device time (HH.MM.SS).
- **System Date** – Current user-defined device date (DD.MM.YY).

**To edit a Time tab field:**

1. Edit the System Time or System Date field, conforming to the date format as described above. The System up Time field cannot be modified.
2. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

The following figure illustrates the **Global Parameters** window **Version** tab:



**Figure 6- 24. Global Parameters – Version tab**

The **Version** tab displays the following fields:

- **SW Software Version** – Software version currently running on the device.
- **HW Software Version** – Hardware Software version currently operating with the device.

## ***Device Features***

The **Device Features** window is a read-only window. It displays a list of features supported by the device's software version.

***To display the Device Features screen:***

Select **Device > Device Features**. The *Device Features* window opens:

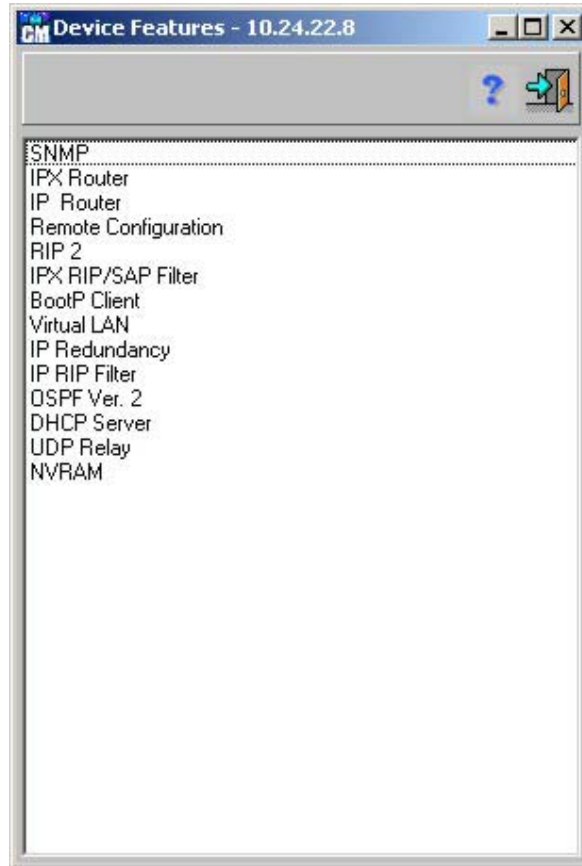


Figure 6- 25. Device Features window

---

## Configuring VLANs

---

This chapter provides an explanation of VLANs and how to configure them. The VLAN menu option can be found in the **Device** menu. This section contains the following topics:

- Introduction to VLANs.
- Working with VLANs
- Aggregated VLANs

### ***Introduction To VLANs***

VLANs are logical subgroups with a Local Area Network (LAN) created via software rather than defining a hardware solution. VLANs combine user stations and network devices into a single unit regardless of the physical LAN segment to which they are attached. VLANs allow network traffic to flow more efficiently within subgroups. VLANs managed through software reduce the amount of time network changes, additions, and moves are implemented.

VLANs have no minimum number of ports, and can be created per unit, per device, per stack, or any other logical connection combination, as VLANs are software based and not defined by physical attributes.

VLANs function at a layer 2. Since VLANs isolate traffic within the VLAN, a layer 3 router working at a protocol level is needed to allow traffic flow between VLANs. Layer 3 routers identify segments and coordinate with VLANs. VLANs are broadcast and multicast domain. Broadcast and multicast traffic is transmitted only in the VLAN in which the traffic is generated. The default VLANs are:

- IP VLAN.
- IPX Raw VLAN.
- IPX ET (ETH II) VLAN.
- IPX LLC VLAN.
- IPX SNAP VLAN.

**Note:** *IP and IPX VLANs are automatically assigned a MAC address.*

- SNA, AppleTalk, NetBios.
- Other VLANs – The "Other" VLAN is a "super-VLAN" that includes all protocols for which VLANs have not been defined. However, super-VLAN does not include IP or IPX. "Other" can be used to quickly configure the device as a full bridge.

The VLAN menu has the following menu options:

- VLAN Parameters
- VLAN Tables Per Port
- or
- VLAN Table Per Port and Protocol.

ConfigMaster supports and automatically recognizes if the device is running VLAN per port or VLAN per port and protocol.

## ***Working with VLANs***

This section provides an explanation for configuring and working with VLANs, and provides the following sections:

- VLAN Parameters
- VLAN Tables Per Port
- VLAN Table Per Port and Protocol.

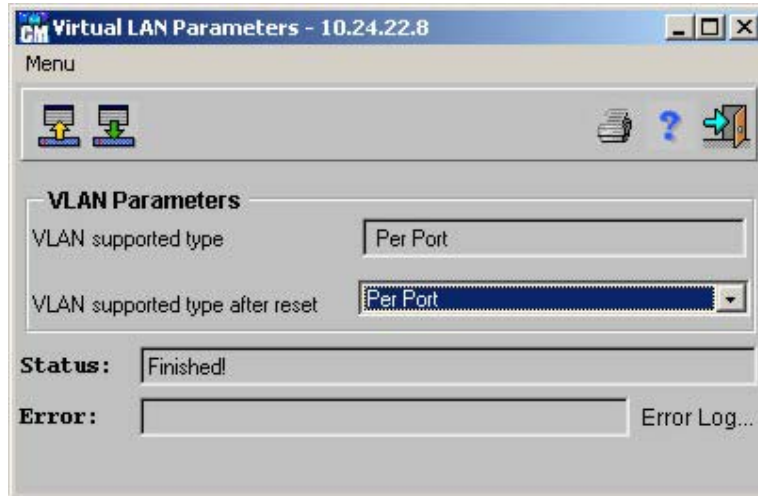
### **VLAN Parameters**

The VLAN Parameters window contains information for enabling VLANs on a per port or per protocol and port basis.

***To display the device VLAN Parameters window:***

Select **Device > VLAN Parameters**. The *Virtual LAN Parameters* window opens:





**Figure 6- 26. Virtual LAN Parameters**

The following VLAN parameters are displayed:

- **VLAN Supported Type** – Indicates the type of VLAN currently supported.
- **VLAN Supported Type After Reset** – Indicates the type of VLAN supported after the device is reset. The possible values are:
  - **Per Port** – Indicates the type of VLAN supported after the device is reset is per port based.
  - **Per Protocol and Port** – Indicates the type of VLAN supported after the device is reset is per protocol and per protocol based.

**To edit the VLAN Parameters:**

Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## VLAN Table Per Port

The following window describes VLAN Table per port:

**To display the VLAN Table window:**

**Note:** Make sure *Per Port* is selected under “VLAN supported type after reset” on the *Virtual LAN Parameters* window (*Device > VLAN > VLAN Parameters*).

Select **Device > VLAN > VLAN Table**. The *VLAN Table* opens:

**VLAN Table - 10.24.22.8**

Table

|   | If Num | Name    | MAC Address       | Address Type | Tag |
|---|--------|---------|-------------------|--------------|-----|
| 1 | 100000 | default | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | Default      | 1   |
|   |        |         |                   |              |     |
|   |        |         |                   |              |     |
|   |        |         |                   |              |     |
|   |        |         |                   |              |     |
|   |        |         |                   |              |     |
|   |        |         |                   |              |     |
|   |        |         |                   |              |     |
|   |        |         |                   |              |     |
|   |        |         |                   |              |     |

Number Of Entries In Table:

Status:

Error:  Error Log...

Figure 6- 27. VLAN Table

The **VLAN Table** displays the following fields:

- **IF Num** – Identifies the VLAN interface number, automatically assigned by the management station.
- **Name** – Identifies the user-defined name of the VLAN.
- **MAC Address** – Permanent VLAN MAC address, automatically assigned by the device. This parameter applies to IP and IPX VLANs only, and is dependent on the VLAN address type.
- **VLAN Address Type** – If default the VLAN gets the device MAC address. If reserved the VLAN is assigned a unique MAC address based on the order of which it was configured (0-4096 reserved MAC addresses). The address types to select from are as follows:
  - Default – The default address.
  - Reserve – User-defined address.
- **Tag** – VLAN Tag ID. The possible values are 0-7.

**To add new VLANs:**

1. Display the **VLAN Table**.
2. In the **VLAN Table**, click . The **VLAN Table Insert** window opens:

**VLAN Table Insert - 10.24.22.8**

If Num: 100001

Name:

Address Type: Default

Tag: 2

**Available Ports**

- 1-1
- 1-2
- 1-3
- 1-4
- 1-5
- 1-6
- 1-7
- 1-8
- 1-9
- 1-10


Remove Port from VLAN ☐ Enable port tagging

Remove Port from VLAN


**Selected Ports**


| VLAN Port Number | VLAN Port Type | Tagging | Forbidden Egress Port |
|------------------|----------------|---------|-----------------------|
|                  |                |         |                       |
|                  |                |         |                       |
|                  |                |         |                       |
|                  |                |         |                       |

Figure 6- 28. VLAN Insert Table



- Complete the fields.
- Select a device port from the list displayed above the **Selected Port Table**. The selected port is added to the table where the following parameters are displayed:
  - VLAN Port Number** – The selected port interface number.
  - VLAN Port Type** – Either static or dynamic.
  - Tagging** – Identifies the VLAN to which the frame belongs. To enable port tagging check the Enable port tagging checkbox.
  - Forbidden Egress Ports** – Indicates ports that are forbidden to be included in the Egress Ports List for this VLAN.
- Click  to apply the new data.
- Close the **VLAN Table Insert** window.

**To delete ports from the Port Table:**



- Display the **VLAN Table** window.
- In the **VLAN Table** window, click . The **VLAN Table Insert** window opens.
- Highlight the port numbers of the ports you want to delete in the Port Table.

4. Click . The ports are highlighted and the port numbers appear in the **Available Ports** list.

***To edit Existing VLANs:***

1. Display the **VLAN Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **VLAN Table Edit** window opens. The window is identical to the **VLAN Table Insert** window.
4. Edit the required fields.
5. Click  to apply the new data.
6. Close the **VLAN Table Edit** window.

***To delete Existing VLANs:***

1. Display the **VLAN Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click  to update the device

## **VLAN Table Per Port and Protocol**

***To display the VLAN Table window:***

**Note:** Make sure *Per Protocol and Port* is selected under “VLAN supported type after reset” on the *Virtual LAN Parameters* window (*Device > VLAN > VLAN Parameters*).

Select **Device > VLAN > VLAN Table**. The *VLAN Table* opens:

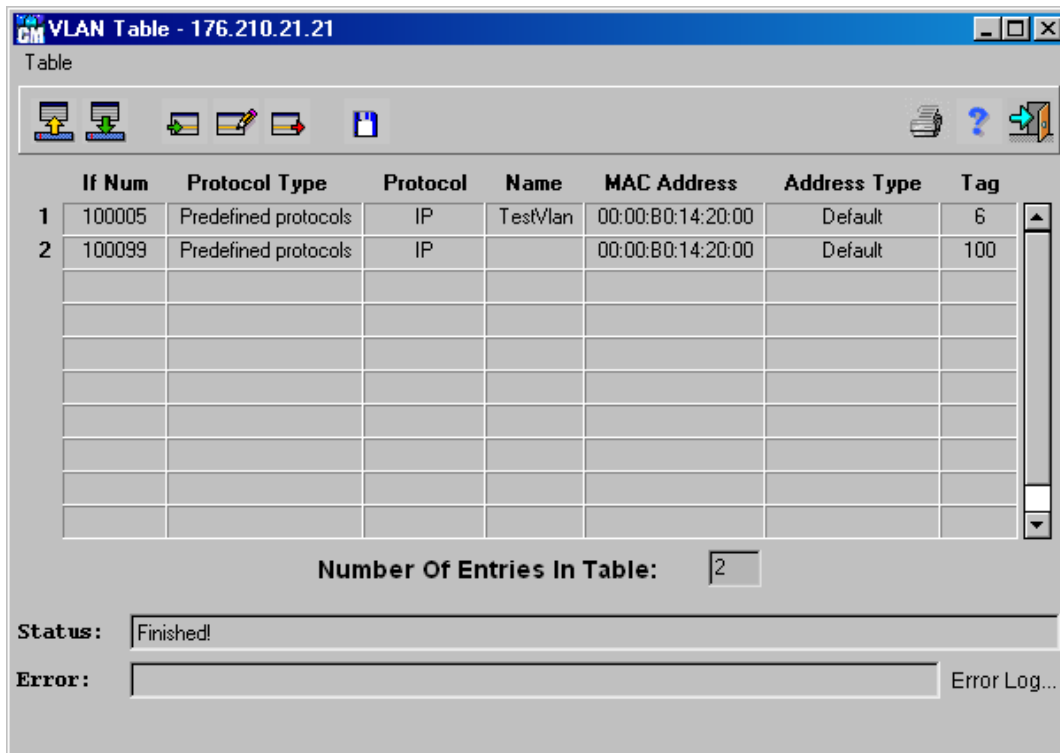



Figure 6- 29. VLAN Table window

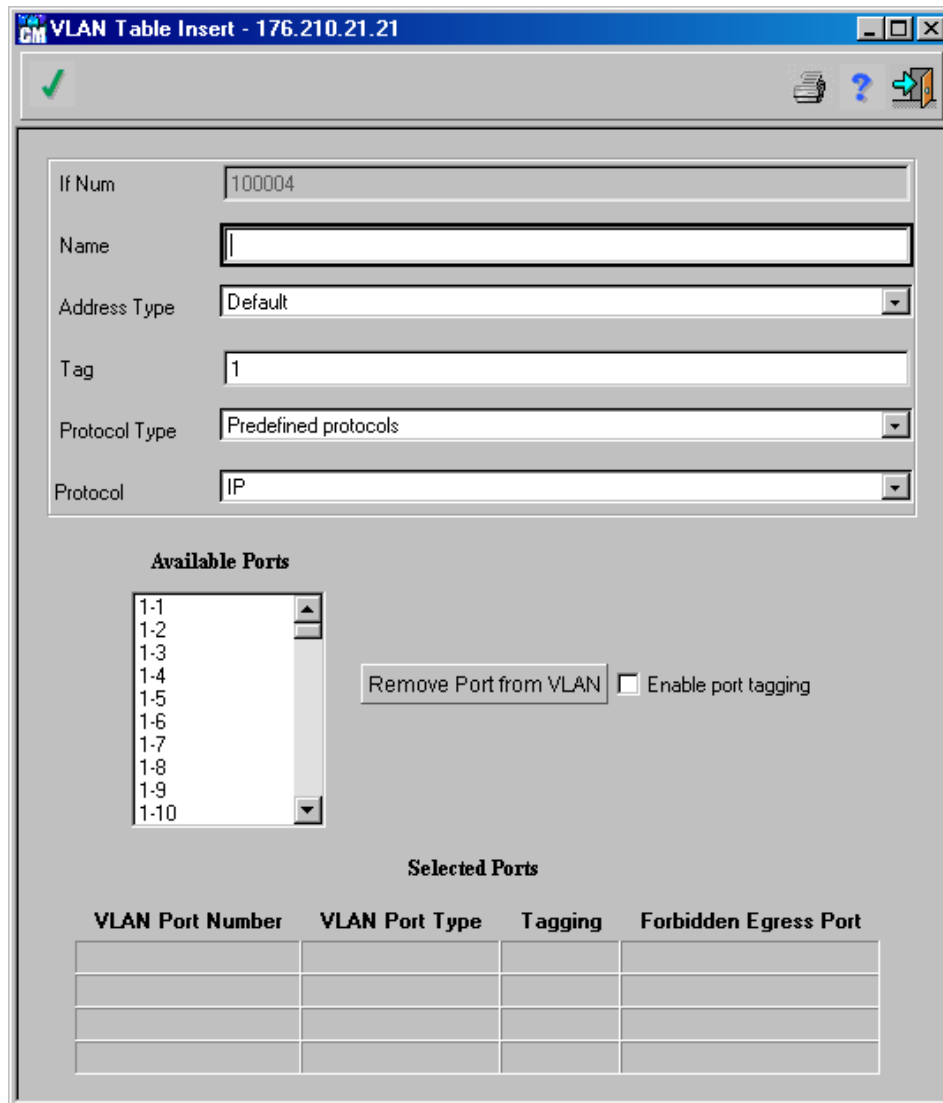
The **VLAN Table** window displays the following fields:

- **IF Num** – The VLAN interface number, automatically assigned by the management station.
- **Protocol Type** – Indicates the type of protocol used. The possible value is Predefined Protocol. The type of predefined protocol used is defined in the Protocol field.
- **Protocol** – Specifies the VLAN protocol type. The possible values are:
  - IP
  - IPX Raw
  - IPX ET
  - IPX LLC
  - IPX SNAP
  - Dec Net
  - Net Bios
  - SNA
  - Other
- **Name** – Indicates the user-defined VLAN name.
- **Priority** – Indicates the value of the priority tag. The possible value is 0-7.
- **MAC Address** – Permanent VLAN MAC address, automatically assigned by the device. This parameter applies to IP and IPX VLANs only, and is dependent on the VLAN address type.
  - **Address Type** – Indicates the MAC address type being used. The possible values are: Default – The VLAN receives the device MAC address.

- **Reserved** – The VLAN is assigned a unique MAC address based on the order of which it was configured (0-4096 reserved MAC addresses).
- **Tag** – Indicates if the VLAN tag is used to identify to which VLAN a packet belongs.

**To add new VLANs for VLANs per Port and Protocol:**

1. Display the **VLAN Table** window.
2. In the **VLAN Table** window, click . The **VLAN Table Insert** window opens:



**VLAN Table Insert - 176.210.21.21**

If Num: 100004

Name:

Address Type: Default

Tag: 1

Protocol Type: Predefined protocols

Protocol: IP

**Available Ports**

- 1-1
- 1-2
- 1-3
- 1-4
- 1-5
- 1-6
- 1-7
- 1-8
- 1-9
- 1-10

Remove Port from VLAN ☐ Enable port tagging


**Selected Ports**

| VLAN Port Number | VLAN Port Type | Tagging | Forbidden Egress Port |
|------------------|----------------|---------|-----------------------|
|                  |                |         |                       |
|                  |                |         |                       |
|                  |                |         |                       |
|                  |                |         |                       |



**Figure 6- 30.VLAN Table Insert**

3. Complete the fields. The fields are the same as the VLAN Table as described above.
4. Double-click a port in the Port List. The port number appears in the Device Table, but no longer displays in the Available Ports List. When the port is removed from the VLAN the



port redisplay in the Available Port List. The Selected Ports list displays the following fields:

5. Click  to apply the new data.
6. Close the **VLAN Table Insert** window.



***To delete ports from the Port Table:***

1. Display the **VLAN Table** window.
2. In the **VLAN Table** window, click . The **VLAN Table Insert** window opens.
3. Highlight the port numbers of the ports you want to delete in the **Port Table**.
4. Click . The ports are highlighted and the port numbers appear in the Available Ports list.

***To edit existing VLANs:***

1. Display the **VLAN Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **VLAN Table Edit** window opens. The window is identical to the **VLAN Table Insert** window.
4. Edit the required fields.
5. Click  to apply the new data.
6. Close the **VLAN Table Edit** window.

***To delete existing VLANs:***

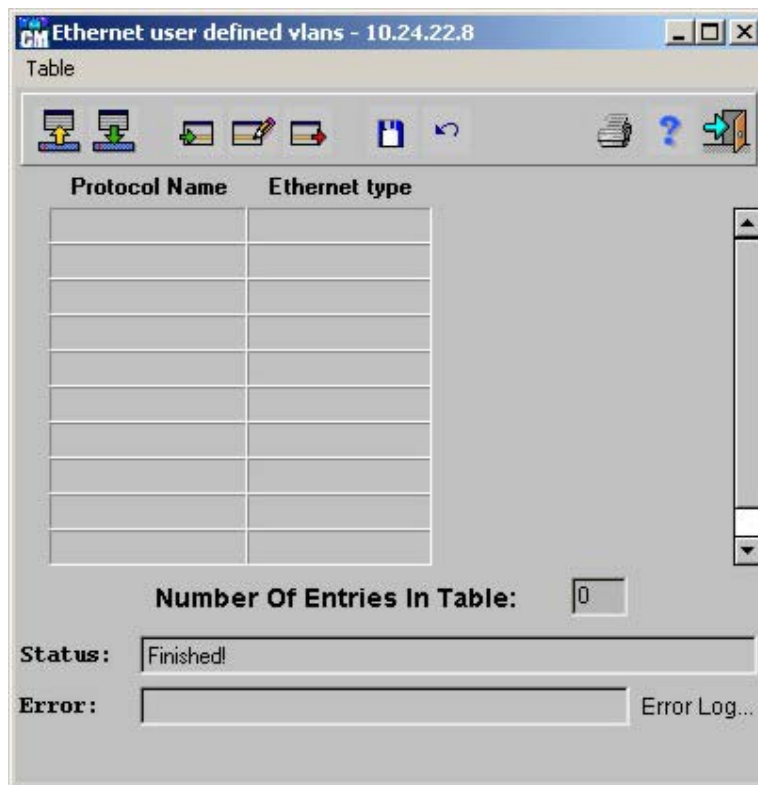
1. Display the **VLAN Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click  to update the device.

## **Ethernet User-Defined Protocols**

The **Ethernet User-Defined VLAN** window contains information regarding protocol names and the type of VLAN Ethernet.

***To display the Ethernet User Defines VLAN window:***

Select **Device > VLAN > Ethernet** user defined protocols. The *Ethernet user defined VLANs* window opens:




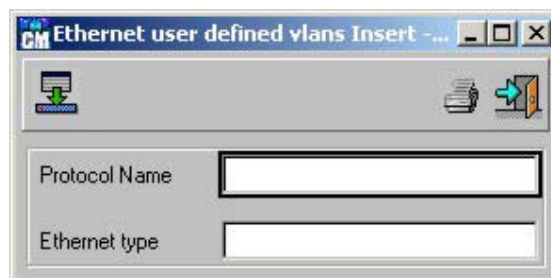
**Figure 6- 31. Ethernet user defined vlans window**

The **Ethernet user defined VLANs** window displays the following fields:

- **Protocol name**— The user-defined protocol name.
- **VLAN Ethernet Type**—The user-defined VLAN Ethernet type.

*To add a new Ethernet user-defined VLAN:*


1. Display the **Ethernet user defined VLANs** window.
2. Click . The **Ethernet user defined VLANs Insert** window opens:





**Figure 6- 32. Ethernet user defined VLANs Insert window**

3. Complete fields with the required information.





4. Click  to apply the new data.
5. Close the **Ethernet User-defined VLAN Insert** window.

***To edit an existing Ethernet user-defined VLAN:***

1. Display the **Ethernet User-defined VLANs** window.
2. Select a VLAN from the table.
3. Click . The **Ethernet User-defined VLANs Edit** window opens. The window is identical to the **VLAN Table Insert** window.
4. Edit the required fields.
5. Click  to update the device.
6. Close the **VLAN Table Edit** window.

***To delete an Ethernet user-defined VLAN:***

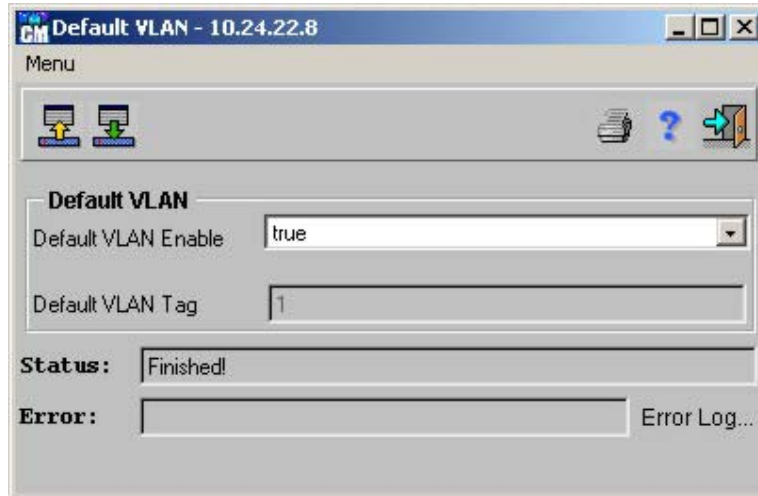
1. Display the **Ethernet User-defined VLANs** window.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click  to update the device.

## **Default VLANs**

The **Default VLAN window** allows the user to set the VLAN settings on the switch. The Default VLAN includes all ports on the switch as its members. If the user sets separate VLANs, the **Default VLAN Enable** setting must be set as *false*. If the user wishes to return to the Default VLAN setting initially set in the switch, the **Default VLAN Enable** setting must be set to *true*.

***To display the Default VLANs window:***

Select **Device > VLAN > Default VLAN**. The *Default VLAN window* opens:




**Figure 6- 33. Default VLAN window**

*To edit the Default VLAN window:*

1. Display the **Default VLAN** window.
2. Define the *Default VLAN Enable* as *true* (return to the initial VLAN setting) or *false* (user set VLANs).
3. Enter the *Default VLAN Tag* to identify the VLAN previously set by the user. (a value between 1 and 4096).

**Note:** This option is only available if the user has set VLANs on the switch

4. Click  to update the device.

---

## Aggregate VLANs

---

This section will help the user understand and configure Aggregated VLANs, including:

- Aggregate VLAN Parameters
- Aggregate VLAN Table
- Aggregate Sub VLAN Table

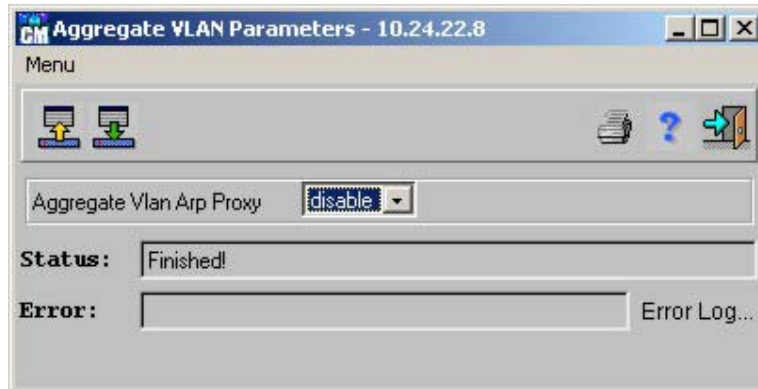
### Aggregate VLAN Parameters

The *Aggregated VLAN Parameters* window enables routers to respond to ARP requests for nodes located on different sub-VLANs belonging to the same Super VLAN. Routers respond with their MAC address.

When ARP Proxy is disabled, routers respond to only ARP requests for their IP addresses.

*To displays the Aggregated VLAN Parameters window:*

Select **Device > Aggregated VLAN > Aggregated VLAN Parameters**. The *Aggregated VLAN Parameters* window displays.



**Figure 6- 34. Aggregate VLAN Parameters window**

The Aggregate VLAN Parameters window displays the following fields:

- **Aggregate VLAN ARP Proxy**—Enables routers to respond to ARP requests for nodes located on a different sub-VLAN belonging to the same Super VLAN. The possible values are:
  - *enable*—Enables aggregated VLAN ARP proxy on the device.
  - *disable*—Disables aggregated VLAN ARP proxy on the device. This is the default value.

## Aggregate VLAN Table

The Aggregated VLAN Table contains information for configuring aggregated VLANs.

### *To display the Aggregated VLAN Table:*

Select **Device > Aggregated VLAN > Aggregated VLAN Table**. The *Aggregated VLAN Table* window displays.

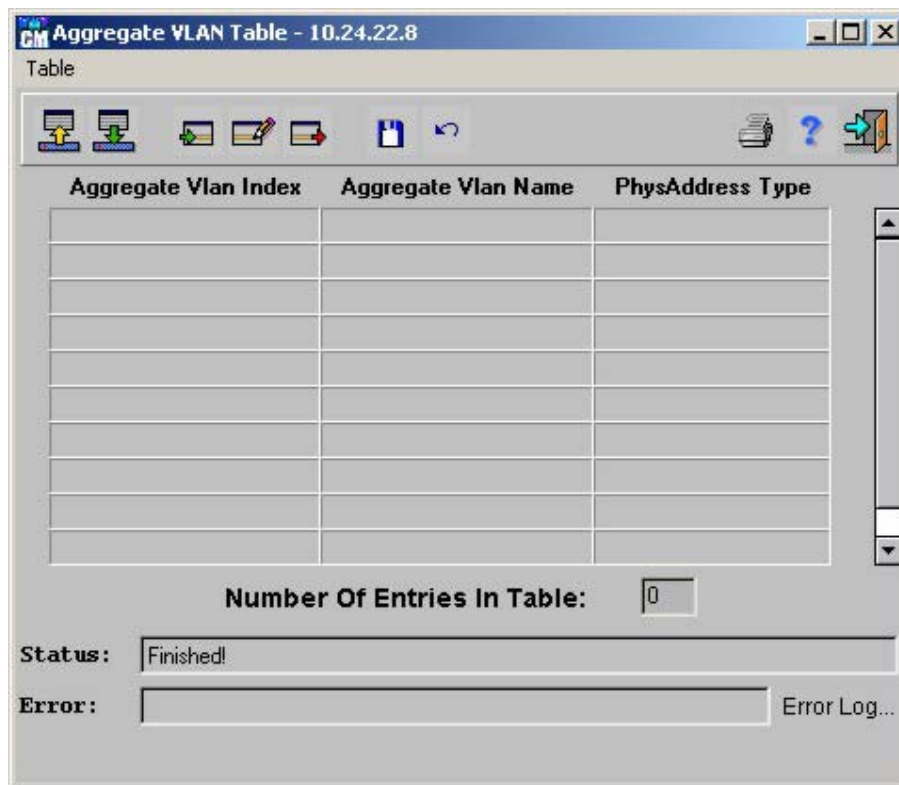


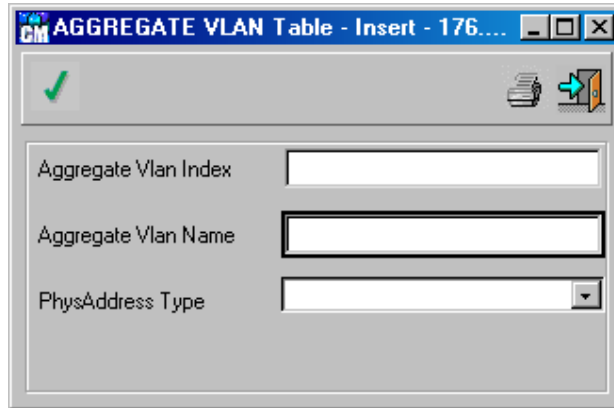
Figure 6- 35. Aggregate VLAN Table

The **Aggregate VLAN Table** contains the following fields:


- **Aggregate VLAN Index**—Specifies the aggregated VLAN ID. The index number starts from 10,000.
- **Aggregate VLAN Name**—Indicates the user-defined name of the aggregated VLAN.
- **PhysAddress Type**—Specifies if the VLAN physical address is the default physical address. The VLAN address is not the physical address, the address is chosen from the device physical address reserve. The possible values are:
  - *default*—Indicates that the VLAN's physical is the default physical address. This is the default value.
  - *reserve*—Indicates that the VLAN's physical is one of the device reserve physical addresses.

***To add an entry to the Aggregated VLAN Table:***



1. Display the **Aggregated VLANs Table** window.
2. Click . The **Aggregated VLANs Table Insert** window is displayed.





**Figure 6- 36. Aggregate VLAN – Insert Window**

3. Complete the fields. The fields are the same as the **Aggregated VLANs Table** as described above.
4. Click  to apply the new data.
5. Close the **Aggregated VLANs Table Insert** window. The changes are saved to the **Aggregated VLANs Table Insert**.

***To modify an entry to the Aggregated VLAN Table:***

1. Display the **Aggregated VLANs Table** window.
2. .Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . **Aggregated VLANs Table Edit** window is displayed. The window is identical to the VLAN Table Insert window.
4. Edit the required fields.
5. Click  to apply the new data.
6. Close the **Aggregated VLANs Table Edit** window.

***To delete an Ethernet user-defined VLAN:***

1. Display the **Aggregated VLANs Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click  to update the device.

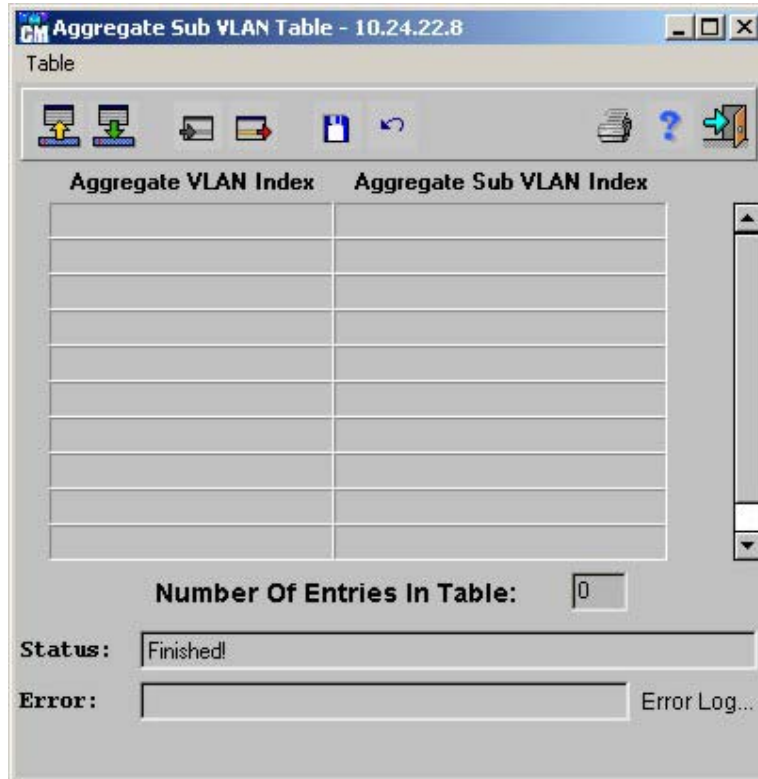
## **Aggregate Sub VLAN Table**

The **Aggregate Sub VLAN Table** displays information for creating sub-VLANs.

**Note:** Entries in the Aggregated VLAN Table must exist to create sub-VLANs

**To display the Aggregated Sub VLAN Table:**

Select **Device > Aggregated VLAN > Aggregated Sub VLAN Table**. The *Aggregated VLAN Table* window displays.




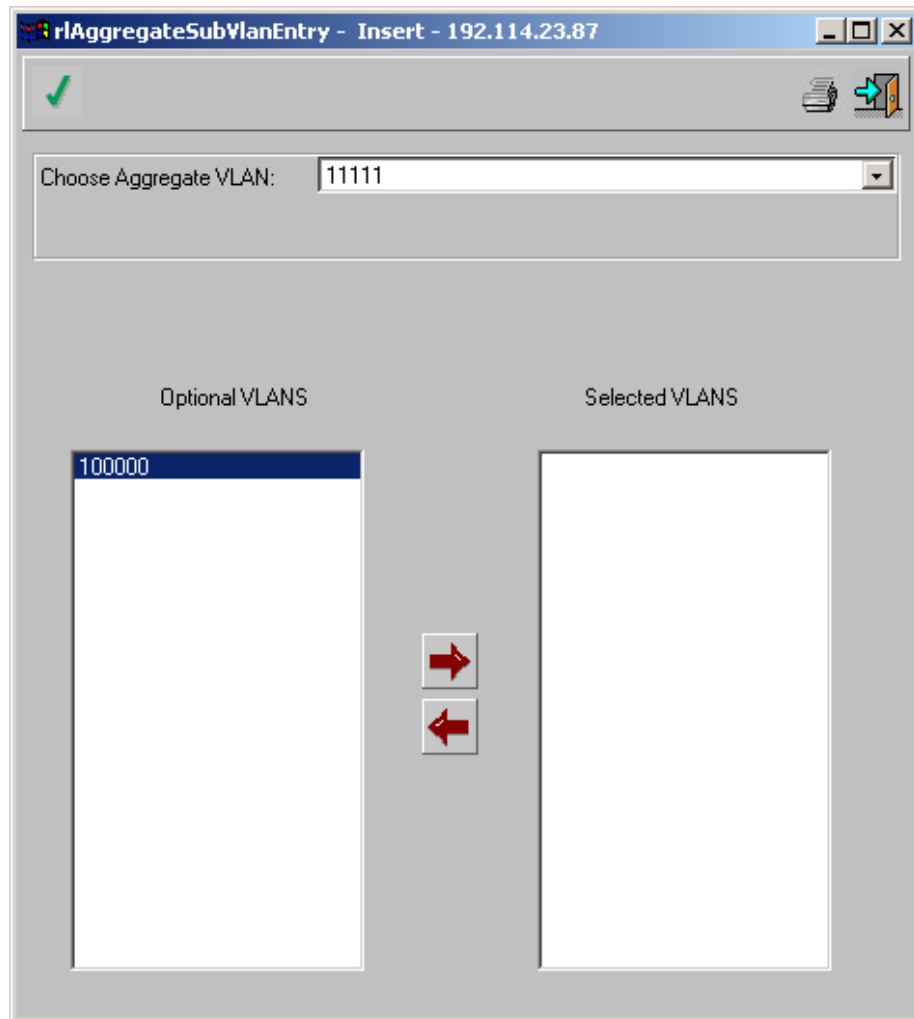
**Figure 6- 37. Aggregate Sub VLAN Table window**

The **Aggregate Sub VLAN Table** contains the following fields:


- **Aggregated VLAN Index**—Specifies the VLAN ID of the entire Aggregated VLAN.
- **Aggregate Sub VLAN Index**—Specifies the VLAN ID of the specific VLAN which is aggregated.

**To add an entry to the Sub Aggregated VLAN Table:**


1. Display the Aggregated Sub VLANs Table window.
2. Click . The Aggregated Sub VLANs Table Insert window is displayed.




**Figure 6- 38. Aggregate Sub VLAN – Insert Window**



3. Complete the fields. The fields are the same as the **Aggregated Sub VLANs Table** as described above.
4. Click  to apply the new data.
5. Close the **Aggregated Sub VLANs Table Insert** window. The changes are saved to the **Aggregated Sub VLANs Table Insert**.

***To modify an entry to the Aggregated Sub VLAN Table:***

1. Display the **Aggregated Sub VLANs Table** window.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . **Aggregated Sub VLANs Table Edit** window is displayed. The window is identical to the **Aggregated Sub VLANs Table** window.
4. Edit the required fields.

5. Click  to apply the new data.
6. Close the **Aggregated Sub VLANs Table Edit** window.

***To delete an Ethernet user-defined VLAN:***

1. Display the **Aggregated Sub VLANs Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click  to update the device.


---

## Configuring Ports

---

### ***Port Properties***

Use the **Port Properties** window to define parameters for the port selected in the front panel display or from the Select Port Number field in the **Port Properties** window.

**Note:** The **Port Properties** window can also be accessed by clicking  on the front panel display toolbar, or by right-clicking the selected port, or by pressing **Ctrl+T**.

***To display the Port Properties screen:***

Select **Device > Port > Port Properties**. The *Port Properties* window opens. The **Port Properties** window has the following five tabs:

- **Main** – Defines the general port settings including MAC address, port type, port description, speed, administration status, port status, and full or half duplex modes.
- **Other** – Defines the back-pressure and flow control modes.
- **VLAN** – Defines the VLAN settings on a port.
- **IP** – Displays the IP addresses and network masks for a selected port.
- **IPX** – Displays the network addresses and network masks for a port

The default opening screen is the **Main** tab. The following paragraphs illustrate and describe each screen tab.

The following figure illustrates the **Port Parameters** window **Main** tab.



**Port Properties - 10.24.22.8**

Menu

Select Port Number: 1-1

**Main** | Other | IP | IPX | Vlan

MAC Address: 00:05:5D:70:07:00

Max Capacity: 100M

Connector Type: rj45S

Port Descriptor: Ethernet Interface

Speed Admin Mode: [dropdown]

Port Speed (bps): 100 M

Admin. Status: On

Port Status: Up

Duplex Admin. Mode: [dropdown]

Duplex Operation Mode: Full

Assign Physical Address: Default

Autonegotiation Mode: Enable

**Status:** Finished!

**Error:** [empty] Error Log...

**Figure 6- 39. Port Priorities Table window**

The **Main** tab displays the following fields:

- **MAC Address** – The interface Media Access Control (MAC) address.

**Note:** Each router is assigned a unique MAC address by the system.

- **Max Capacity** – The maximum capacity of the current port connection.
- **Connector Type** – The type of interface.
- **Port Descriptor** – Brief interface description, for example Ethernet.
- **Speed Admin Mode** – The possible LAN rate for the selected interface. The rate is selected from the field-configured options. For LAN interfaces only. (Auto-negotiation mode should be disabled).


- **Port Speed (bps)** – The synchronized port speed in bps.
- **Admin. Status** – Controls the traffic from the selected port. By default, this parameter is set to Enable. The options are as follows:
  - On – Select this option to permit the traffic through the port.
  - Off – Select this option to stop the traffic.
- **Port Status** – Indicates if the interface is operational (Up), non-operational (Down), or engaged in a test procedure so it does not carry traffic (Testing).
- **Duplex Admin Mode** – Specifies the conversation type for the interface. The options are as follows:
  - Full – The interface supports transmission between the device and the client in both directions simultaneously.
  - Half – The interface supports transmission between the device and the client in only one direction at a time.
- **Duplex Operation Mode** – The port synchronization mode.
- **Assign Physical Address** – To assign a physical address. The options are as follows:
  - Select Default to use the default address.
  - Reserve to assign a unique address (up to 264 unique addresses), in incrementing order.
- **Autonegotiation Mode** – This mode setting determines whether the Switch will automatically negotiate for the fastest possible connection. The options are as follows:
  - Enable – Select this option to enable the optimal connection speed.
  - Disable – Select this option to disable this feature.

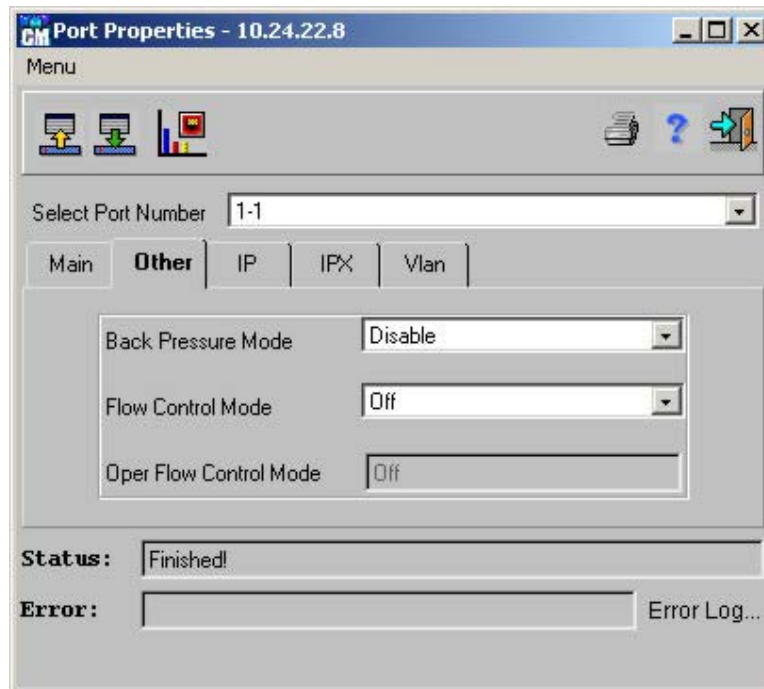
***To edit a Port Properties Main tab field:***

1. Display the **Port Properties Main** tab.

Edit one of the following fields:

- Speed Admin Mode.
- Port Speed (bps).
- Admin Status.
- Duplex Admin Mode.
- Duplex Operation Mode.
- Assign Physical Address.

2. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified. The following figure illustrates the **Port Parameters** window **Other** tab:



**Figure 6- 40. Port Properties – Other tab**

The **Other** tab displays the following fields:

- **Back Pressure Mode** – Disabled by default. By enabling back-pressure, the device signals the accompanying partner device to hold onto the traffic, whenever a certain speed is reached.
- **Flow Control Mode** – To control packet transmissions. The options are as follows:
  - On – Activates the flow control mechanism. The accompanying device behavior has no affect on the feature.
  - Off – Disables the feature. *Off* is the default setting.
  - AutoNegotiation – The port sends the device flow control packets (as long as it is supported by the other device).
  - EnabledRx – The port allows packets to be received only.
  - EnabledTx – The port allows packets to be transmitted only.
- **Open Flow Control Method** – This read-only field displays whether this feature is currently enabled or not.


**Note:** When modifying Flow Control and Back Pressure, The HOL setting is automatically changed:

- Flow Control set to ON – HOL automatically resets to OFF
- Back Pressure set to Enable – HOL automatically resets to OFF

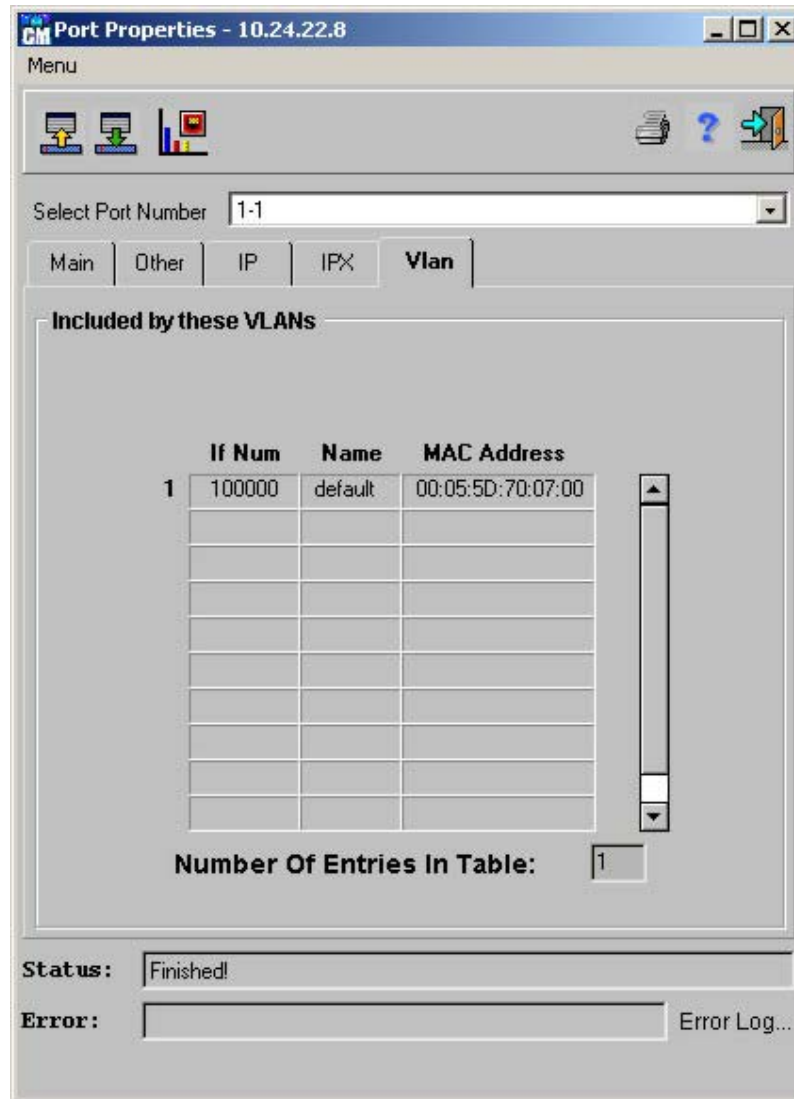
**Note:** If a configured port goes down due to either an Administrative or physical link, the HOL resets to ON even if the Flow Control on port was configured to ON.)

To edit an *Other* tab field:

1. Display the **Port Properties-Main** tab.

2. Edit the required field.
3. Click . When the *Status* field displays “Finished!”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

The following figure illustrates the **Port Parameters window-VLAN tab**:

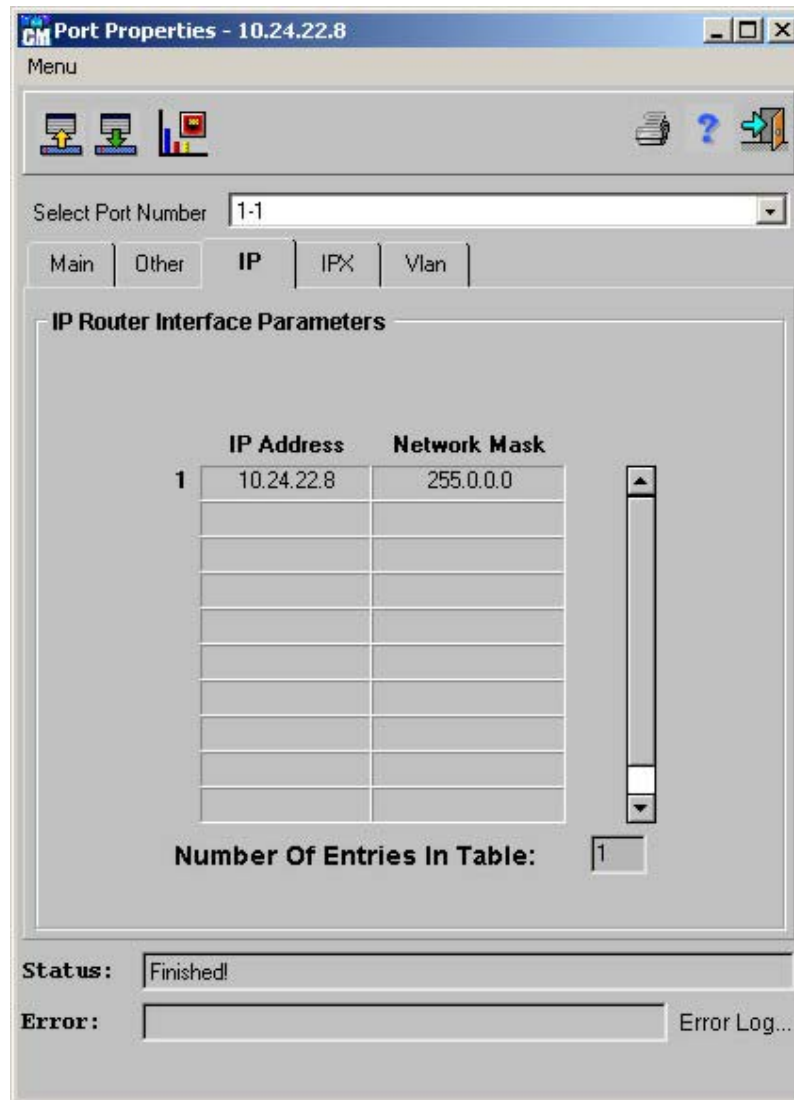


**Figure 6- 41. Port Properties– VLAN tab**

The **VLAN** tab displays the following fields:

- If Number/Name/MAC Address – The number/name/MAC address of VLANs in which the selected port is included.

The following figure illustrates the **Port Parameters IP** tab:



**Figure 6- 42. Port Properties – IP tab**

The **IP** tab displays the following address information defined for the selected port:

- **IP address** – Displays the IP address of port.
- **Network Mask** – Displays the network masked used to mask parts of the IP address.

The following figure illustrates the **Port Parameters** window **IPX** tab:

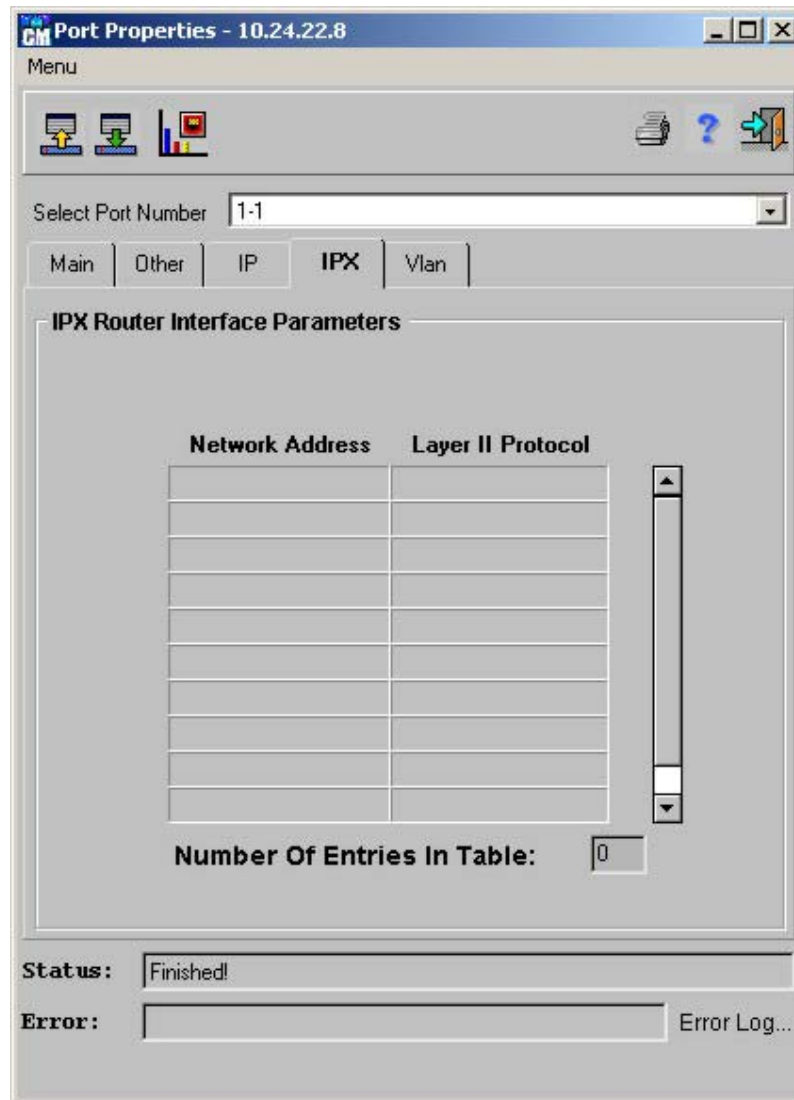


Figure 6- 43. Port Properties – IPX tab

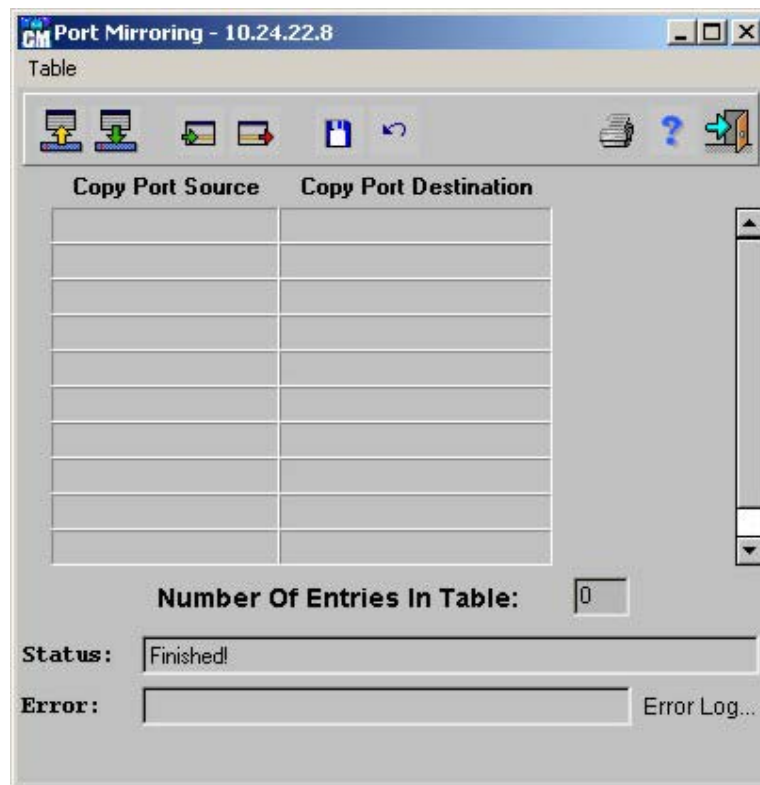
The **IPX** tab displays the following address information defined for the selected port:

- **Network Address** – Displays the network address on which the port is located.
- **Layer II Protocol** – Displays the Layer II protocol type enabled on the port.

## Port Mirroring

Port Mirroring allows you to copy traffic from one port to another port. To display the **Port Mirroring** window:

Select **Device > Port > Port Mirroring**. The *Port Mirroring* window opens:



**Figure 6- 44. Port Mirroring window**


The **Port Mirroring** window displays the following fields:

- **Mirrored Port** – Defines the port number from which all outgoing and incoming traffic is copied. The possible values are:
  - Disabled – Disables port mirroring.
  - Port List – A list of port numbers. Select the port from the drop-down list. If selected, traffic is mirrored from that port only.
- **Copy Port** – Defines the port number to which all outgoing and incoming traffic is mirrored. A copy port cannot mirror itself, be a member of a VLAN, or be configured with an IP or IPX interface. The possible values are:
  - Disabled – Disables port mirroring.
  - Port List – A list of port numbers. Select the port from the drop-down list. If selected traffic is mirrored to that port only.

**Note:** Port mirroring may cause network congestion. This may result in the dropping of packets that are being mirrored to the copy port due to lack of network resources.

**To enable port mirroring on a device:**

1. Display the **Port Mirroring** window.
2. Complete the fields. The fields are the same as the **Port Mirroring** window as described above.

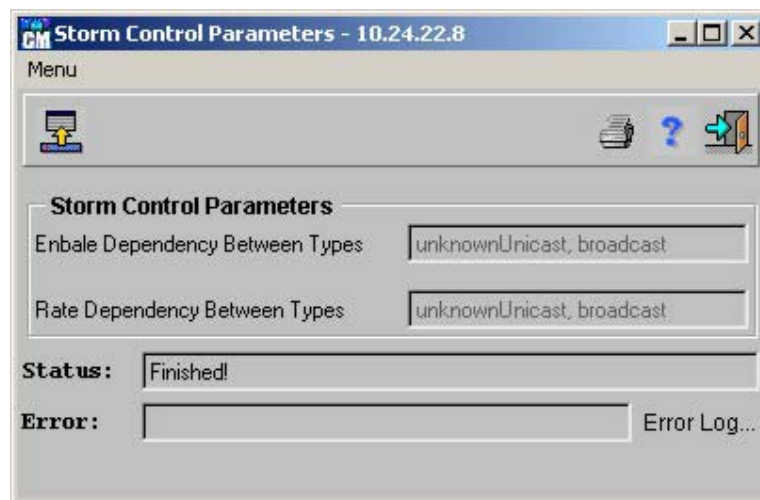
3. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, Port Mirroring is enabled on the device.

## Storm Control

Use the **Storm Control Parameters** window to display parameters for storm control.

*To display the Storm Control Parameters window:*

Select **Device > Port > Storm Control > Storm Ctrl Parameters**. The *Storm Control Parameters* window opens:



**Figure 6- 45. Storm Control Parameters window**

Use the **Storm Control Table** window to display the whole table as well as to edit individual entries.

*To display the Storm Control Table window:*

Select **Device > Port > Storm Control > Storm Ctrl Table**. The *Storm Control Table* window opens:



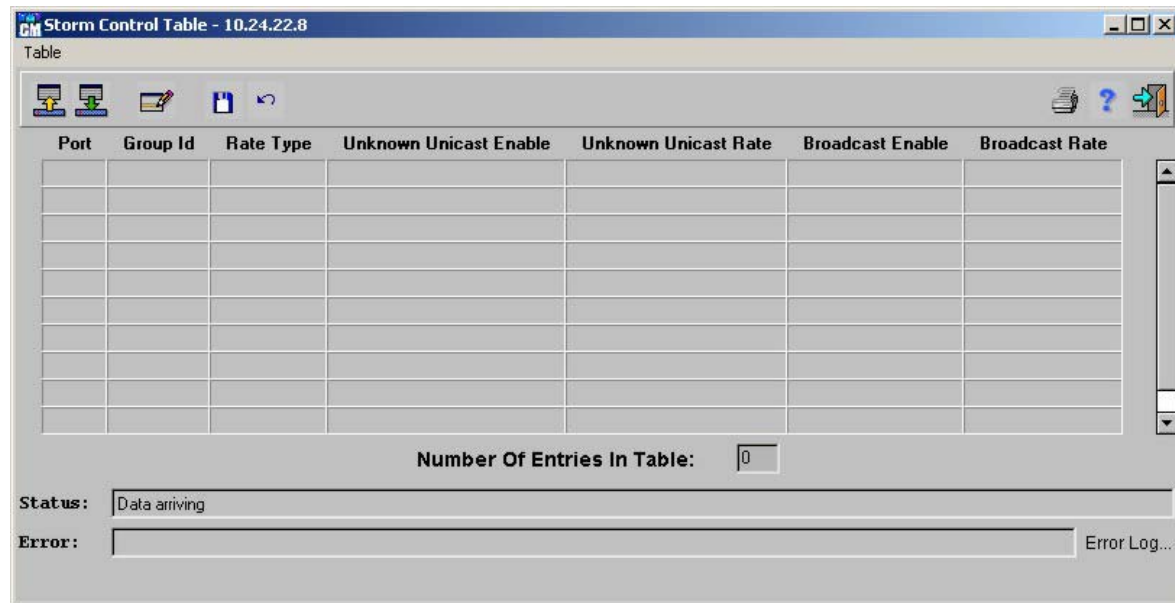



Figure 6- 46. Storm Control Table window

*To edit an existing Storm Control entry:*

1. Display the **Storm Control Table** window.
2. Select an entry from the table.
3. Click . The **Storm Control Table Edit** window opens:

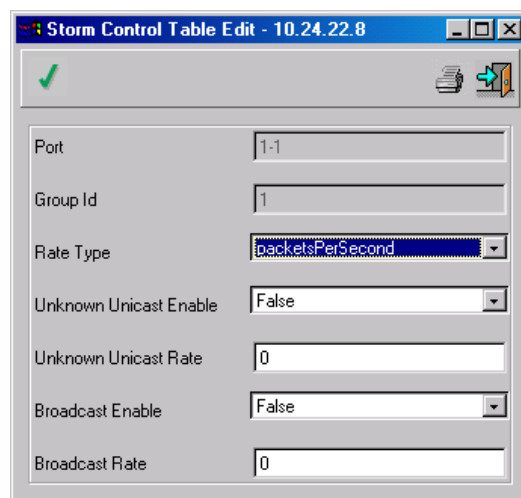




Figure 6- 47. Storm Control Table Edit window

4. Edit the required fields.
5. Click  and close the **Storm Control Table Edit** window.
6. Click  to update the device.

---

## Configure GVRP and Trunking

---

Generic Attribute Registration Protocol (GARP) protocol is a general-purpose protocol that registers any network connectivity or membership-style information. GARP defines a set of devices interested in a given network attribute, such as VLAN or multicast address.

GARP VLAN Registration Protocol (GVRP) protocol is specifically provided for automatic distribution of VLAN membership information among VLAN-aware bridges. GVRP allows VLAN-aware bridges to automatically learn VLANs to bridge ports mapping, without having to individually configure each bridge, and to register VLAN membership.

To minimize the memory requirements when running the GVRP protocol, two proprietary tuning variables have been added to the standard variables:

- Maximum number of GVRP VLANs – Displays the number of GVRP VLANs allowed to participate in GVRP operation.
- Maximum number of GVRP VLANs after Reset – Sets another value of GVRP VLANs. *Maximum number of GVRP VLANs after Reset* is used for tuning. This value becomes valid after reset only.

The maximum number of GVRP VLANs includes all the VLANs participating in GVRP operation regardless if they are static or dynamic.

The following should be considered when specifying the maximum number of VLANs participating in GVRP by setting the *Maximum number of GVRP VLANs after Reset* value:

- The default maximum number of GVRP VLANs is equal to 0 because of the memory restrictions.
- The maximum number of VLANs (managed through Max VLANs MIB variable) limits the maximum number of GVRP VLANs.
- To ensure the correct operation of the GVRP protocol, users are advised to set the maximum number of GVRP VLANs equal to a value that significantly exceeds the sum of:
  - The number of all static VLANs both currently configured and expected to be configured.
  - The number of all dynamic VLANs participating in GVRP both currently configured (initial number of dynamic GVRP VLANs is 0) and expected to be configured.

Increasing the value of maximum number of GVRP VLANs to value beyond the sums, allows users to run GVRP, and not reset the device to receive a larger amount of GVRP VLANs. For example, if 3 VLANs exist and another two VLANs are expected to be configured as a result of VLAN static or dynamic registration, set the maximum number of GVRP VLANs after reset to 10.

**Note:** To enable GVRP, ensure that the amount of maximum amount of VLANs is less than 4000. For more information, see the Device Tuning section later in this manual.

### **To configure the GVRP feature:**

1. Enable GVRP on a device.

2. Enable GVRP per port to participate in GVRP.
3. Specify the maximum number of GVRP VLANs after reset.
4. Reset the device to receive the new maximum number of GVRP VLANs set.

***To increase the number of Maximum GVRP VLANs and to reconfigure the GVRP protocol:***

1. Specify a new value of the maximum number of GVRP VLANs after reset.
2. Reset the device.
3. Check that the new value is displayed in the Max GVRP VLANs field.

For more information about configuring the Maximum number of GVRP VLANs and Maximum number of GVRP VLANs after Reset fields, see the Device Tuning section later in this manual.

## **Consideration Concerning STP And GVRP Operation**

The circulation of GARP/GVRP registration information follows through the Bridged LANs active topology and it is assumed that the STP protocol is established and maintained.

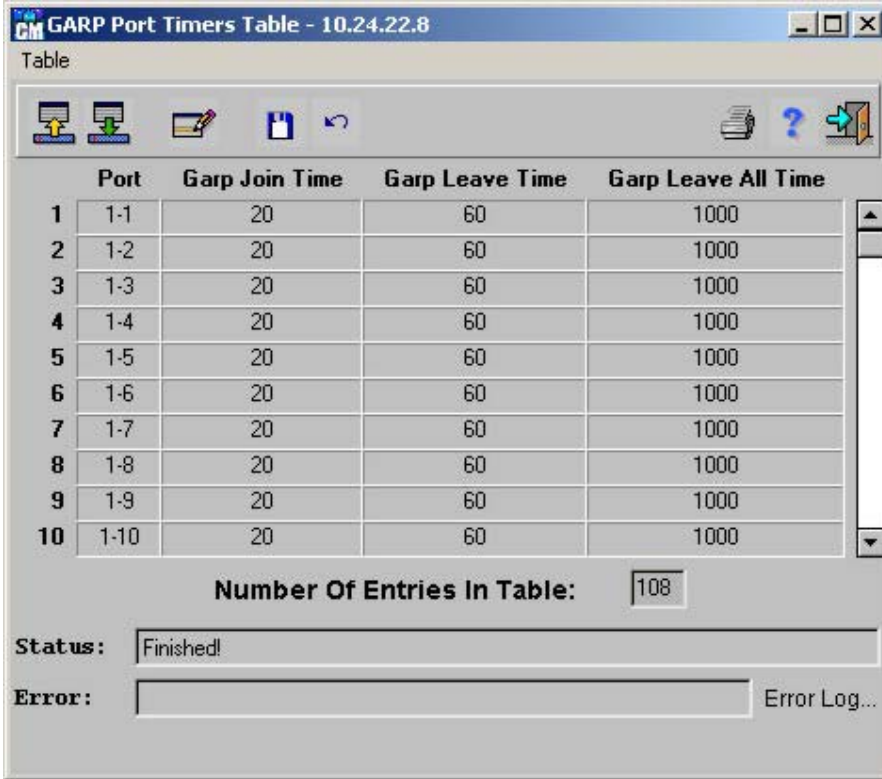
**Note:** *When operating in the STP per device mode with the Must belong to VLAN parameter set to True, STP reacts to GVRP enabled on a port as if a VLAN was created on this port*

## **GARP Timers Control**

The **GARP Port Timers Control Window** contains information about timers for every bridged port.

***To display the GARP Timers Control window:***

**Select > Device > GARP > GARP Timers Control.** The *GARP Port Timers Control* window displays.



|    | Port | Garp Join Time | Garp Leave Time | Garp Leave All Time |
|----|------|----------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1  | 1-1  | 20             | 60              | 1000                |
| 2  | 1-2  | 20             | 60              | 1000                |
| 3  | 1-3  | 20             | 60              | 1000                |
| 4  | 1-4  | 20             | 60              | 1000                |
| 5  | 1-5  | 20             | 60              | 1000                |
| 6  | 1-6  | 20             | 60              | 1000                |
| 7  | 1-7  | 20             | 60              | 1000                |
| 8  | 1-8  | 20             | 60              | 1000                |
| 9  | 1-9  | 20             | 60              | 1000                |
| 10 | 1-10 | 20             | 60              | 1000                |

Number Of Entries In Table: 108

Status: Finished!


Error: Error Log...

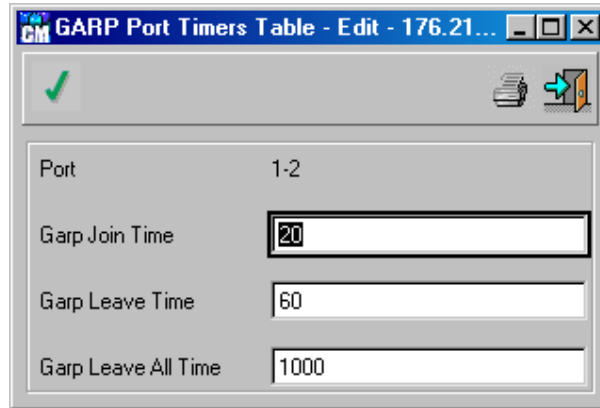
Figure 6- 48. GARP Timers Control window

The **GARP Port Timers Control Window** contains the following fields:



- **Port**—Indicates the port number for which GVRP is enabled.
- **Join Time**—Indicates the time in milliseconds that PDUs are transmitted.
- **Leave Time**—Indicates the time lapse in milliseconds that the device waits before leaving its GARP state. The Leave Time is activated by a Leave All Time message sent/received, and cancelled by the Join message received.
- **Leave All Time**—Used to confirm the port within the VLAN. The time in milliseconds between messages sent.

**To modify a GARP Timer Control:**

1. Display the **GARP Port Timers Control Window**.
2. Select an entry in the **GVRP Timers Control** table.
3. Click . The **GVRP Port Timers Edit** window displays.



**Figure 6- 49. GARP Port Timers Edit Window**

4. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **GARP Timers Control** window as described above.
5. Click . The **GARP Port Timers Edit** window closes.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the timer control settings are saved to the device.

## GVRP Parameters

The **GVRP Parameters** window contains information about GVRP and whether GVRP is enabled on specific ports. The **GVRP Parameters** window contains two tabs:

- **Device Parameters** – Indicates if GVRP is currently enabled on a device.
- **Ports Parameters** – Displays information about the individual ports and whether or not GVRP is enabled on specific ports.

*To display the GVRP Parameters window:*

Select **Device > GARP > GVRP > Parameters**. The *GVRP Parameters* window opens. The **GVRP Parameters** window has two tabs

- **Device Parameters** – Displays the options enabling or disabling the GVRP on a device.
- **Port Parameters** – Displays the status of GVRP on individual ports.




**Figure 6- 50. GVRP Parameters – Device Parameters tab**

The **GVRP Parameter – Device Parameters** tab displays the following parameters:

- **GVRP Status** – Indicates if GVRP is enabled on a device, except for specific ports for which GVRP is disabled. If the GVRP status is disabled on all ports, GVRP packets are discarded.

**To enable a GVRP on a device:**

1. Display the **GVRP Parameters** window.
2. Right-click on GVRP Status and select *Enabled*.
3. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the GVRP is enabled.

The **GVRP Parameters – Port Parameters** tab displays the following parameters:

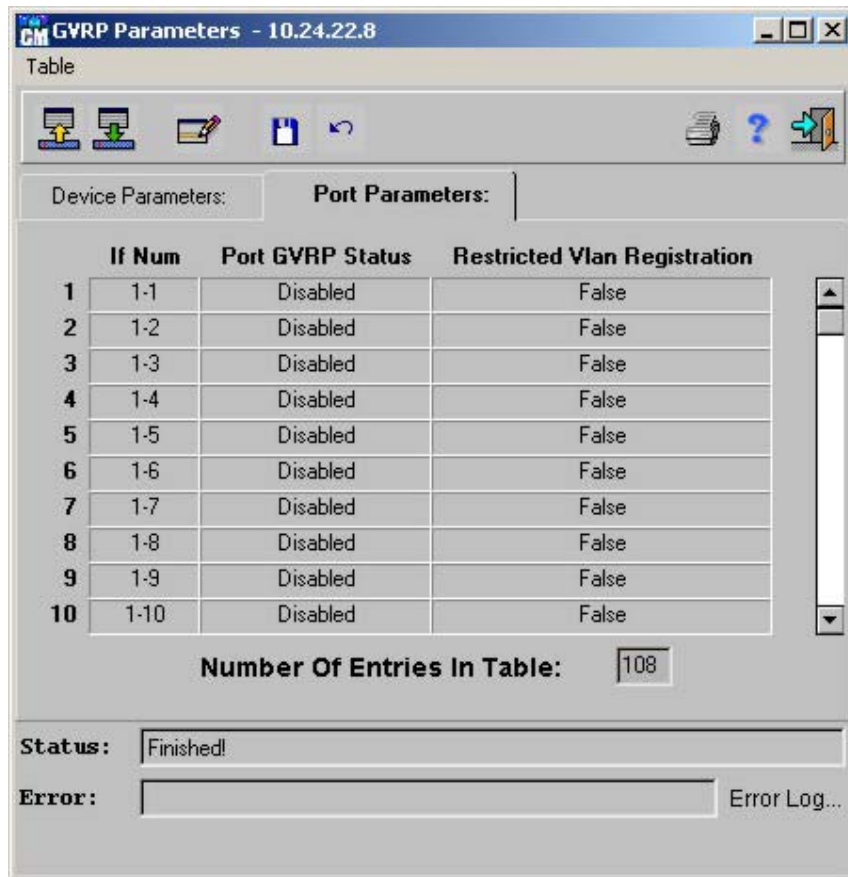


Figure 6- 51. GVRP Parameters – Port Parameters tab

- **If Num** – Indicates the port number.
- **Port GVRP Status** – Indicates if GVRP is enabled on a port.

## GVRP Timers Control

The **GVRP Timers Control** window contains information about timers for every bridged port.

**Note:** When modifying the default timer values, the Leave value must be greater than three times the Join value and the Leave All value must be greater than the Leave value:

- $Leave\ Time \geq 3 \times Join\ Time$
- $Leave\ All\ Time > Leave\ Time$

*To display the GVRP Timers Control window:*

Select **Device > GARP > GVRP > Timers Control**. The *Timers Control* window opens:

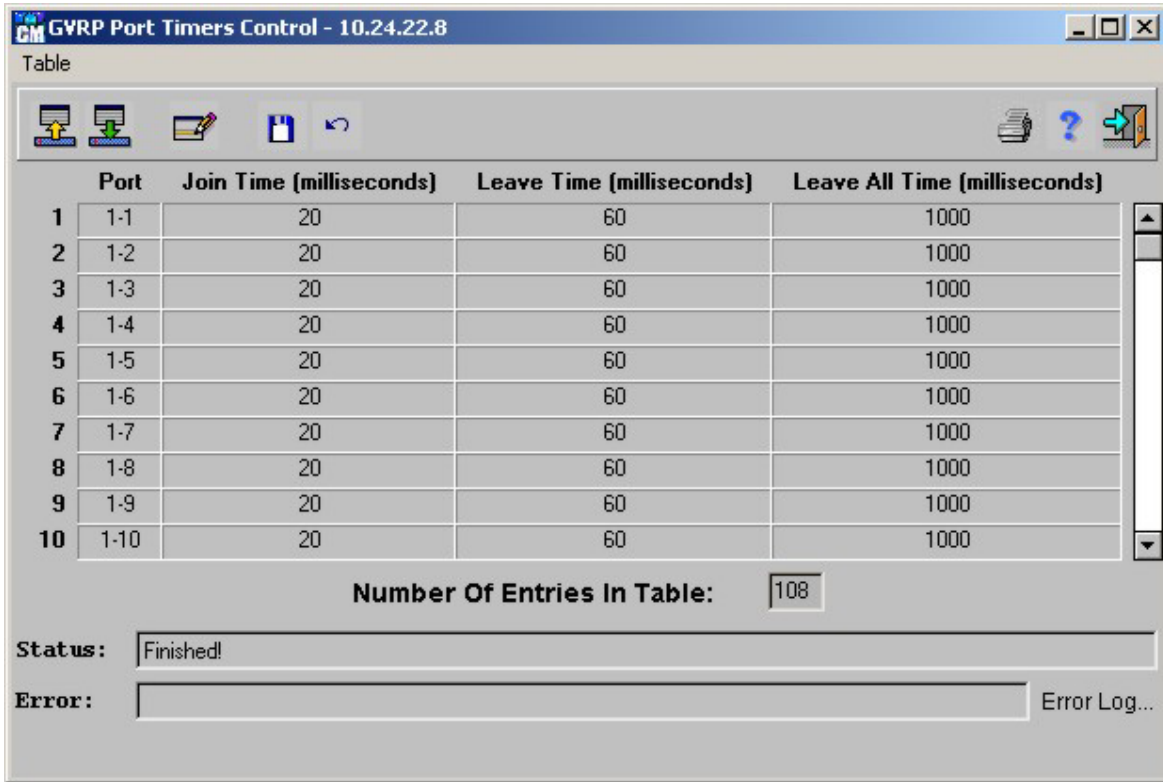



Figure 6- 52. GVRP Port Timers Control window

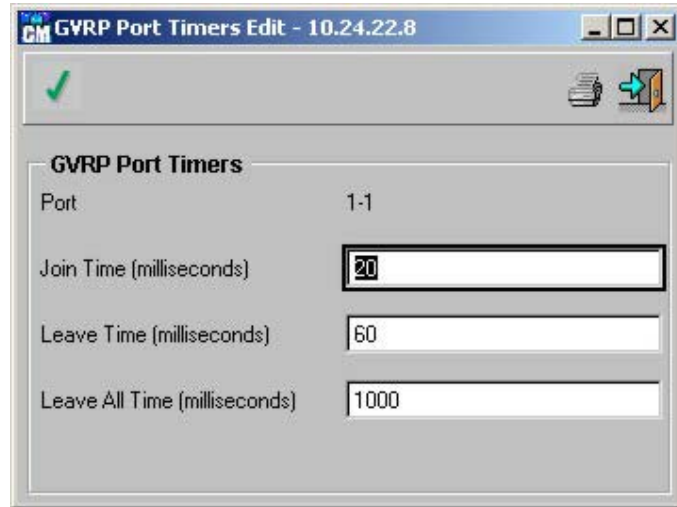
The **GVRP Timers Control** window displays the following parameters:

- **If Num** – Indicates the port number for which GVRP is enabled.
- **Join Time** – Indicates the time in milliseconds that PDUs are transmitted.
- **Leave Time** – Indicates the time lapse in milliseconds that the device waits before leaving its GVRP state. The Leave Time is activated by a Leave All Time message sent/received, and cancelled by the Join message received.
- **Leave All Time** – Used to confirm the port within the VLAN. The time in milliseconds between messages sent.



**To Edit a Timer Control:**

1. Display the **GVRP Port Timers Control** window.
2. Select an entry in the **GVRP Port Timers Control** table.
3. Click . The **GVRP Port Timers Edit** window opens:





**Figure 6- 53. Port Timers Edit window**

4. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **GVRP Timers Control** window as described above.
5. Click . The **GVRP Port Timers Edit** window closes.
6. Click . When the Status field displays “Finished!”, the timer control settings are saved to the device.

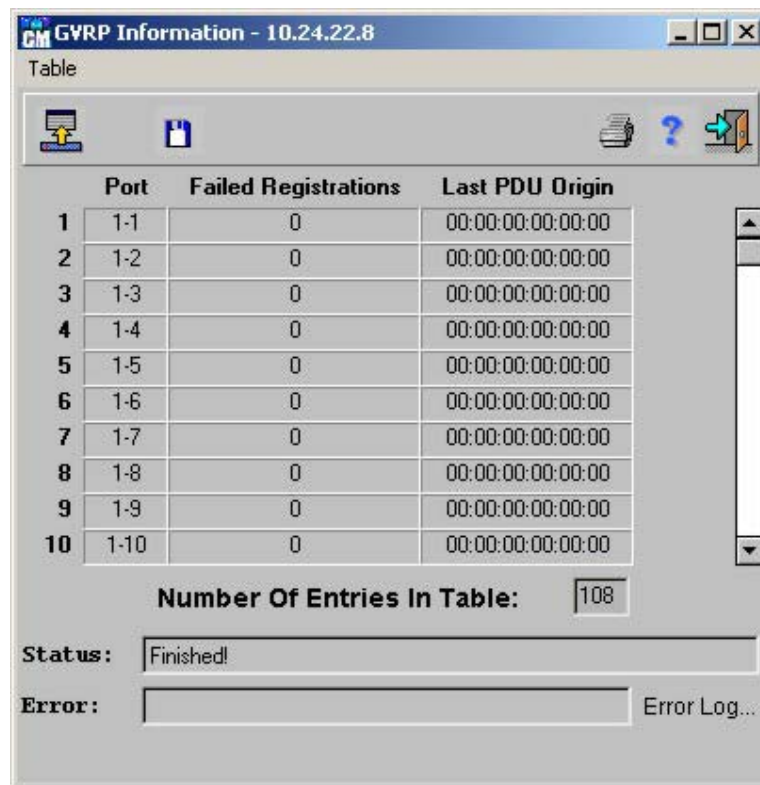
**Note:** The necessity to modify the default timer values arises when the number of VLANs participating in GVRP operation approaches approximately 200 VLANs. A network administrator is advised to increase the default values of Leave and Leave All timers.

## GVRP Information

The **GVRP Information** window contains information about failed registrations and MAC address of GVRP messages received on individual ports.

*To display the GVRP Information window:*

Select **Device > GARP > GVRP > Information**. The *GVRP Information* window opens:



The screenshot shows a window titled "GVRP Information - 10.24.22.8". Inside, there is a table with the following data:

|    | Port | Failed Registrations | Last PDU Origin   |
|----|------|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1  | 1-1  | 0                    | 00:00:00:00:00:00 |
| 2  | 1-2  | 0                    | 00:00:00:00:00:00 |
| 3  | 1-3  | 0                    | 00:00:00:00:00:00 |
| 4  | 1-4  | 0                    | 00:00:00:00:00:00 |
| 5  | 1-5  | 0                    | 00:00:00:00:00:00 |
| 6  | 1-6  | 0                    | 00:00:00:00:00:00 |
| 7  | 1-7  | 0                    | 00:00:00:00:00:00 |
| 8  | 1-8  | 0                    | 00:00:00:00:00:00 |
| 9  | 1-9  | 0                    | 00:00:00:00:00:00 |
| 10 | 1-10 | 0                    | 00:00:00:00:00:00 |

Below the table, it says "Number Of Entries In Table: 108". At the bottom, there is a "Status:" field with the value "Finished!" and an "Error:" field which is empty. To the right of the error field is a button labeled "Error Log...".

**Figure 6- 54. GVRP Information window**

The **GVRP Information** window displays the following parameters:

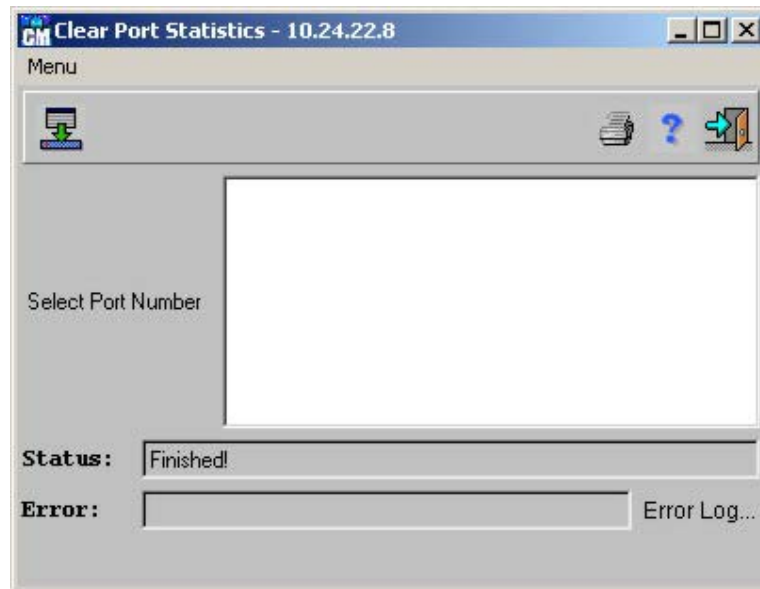
- **If Num** – Indicates the active port number.
- **Failed Registrations** – The total number of failed GVRP registrations on this port.
- **Last PDU Origin** – The source MAC Address of the last GVRP message received on this port.

## Clear Port Statistics

The **Clear Port Statistics Window** clears all the selected port GVRP Statistics.

*To display the Clear Port Statistics Window:*

Select **Device > GARP > GVRP > Clear Port Statistics**. The *GVRP Clear Port Statistics* window displays:




**Figure 6- 55. Clear Port Statistics window**

The *Clear Port Statistics* window contains the following fields:

- **Select Port Number**—Displays a list of ports from which the GVRP statistics are to be cleared.

*To erase the GVRP statistics for a port:*

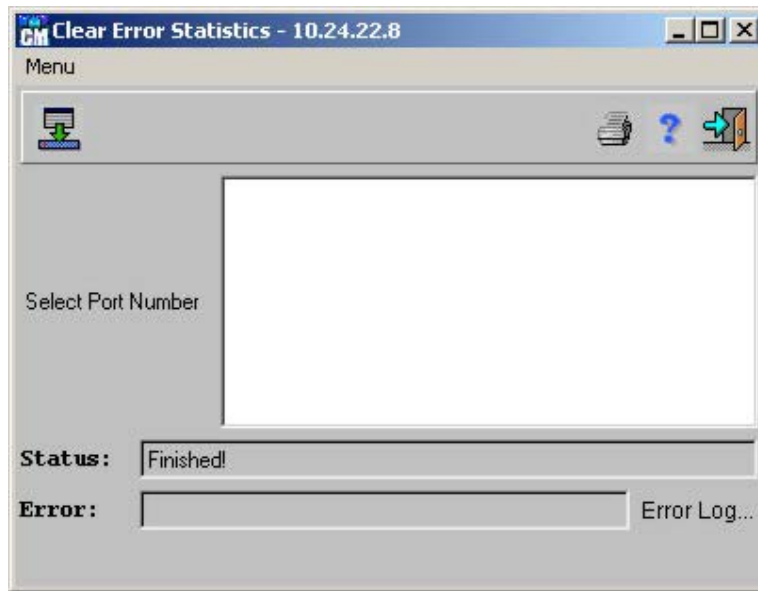
1. Display the **Clear Port Statistics** window.
2. Select a port in the Select Port Number field.
3. Click . The port statistics are erased.

## Clear Port Error Statistics

The Clear Port Statistics Window clears all the selected port GVRP error statistics.

*To display the Clear Port Error Statistics Window:*

Select **Device > GARP > GVRP > Clear Port Error Statistics**. The *GVRP Clear Port Error Statistics* window displays:




**Figure 6- 56. Clear Port Error Statistics window**

The **Clear Port Error Statistics** window contains the following fields:

- **Select Port Number**—Displays a list of ports from which the GVRP statistics are to be cleared.

*To erase the GVRP error statistics for a port:*

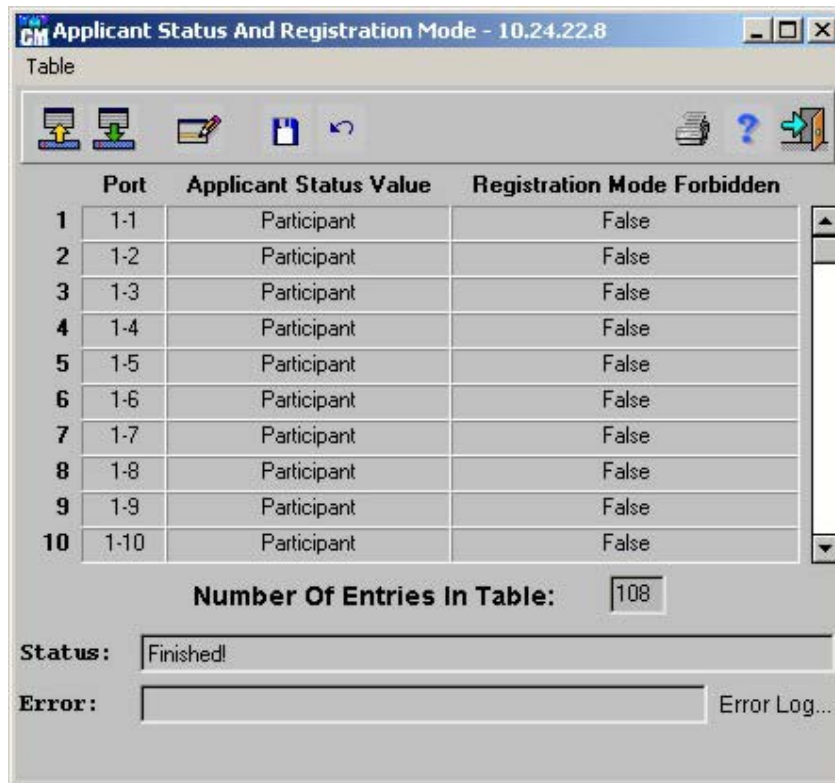
1. Display the Clear Port Error Statistics window.
2. Select a port in the *Select Port Number* field.
3. Click . The port error statistics are erased.

## **Applicant Status and Registration Mode**

The **Application Status and Registration Mode Table** displays information about ports participating in GVRP. The **Application Status and Registration Mode Table** also information about the VLAN registration mode. Specific ports can be disabled on VLAN. Specific ports can also be blocked from registering or being used in a VLAN.

*To display the Application Status and Registration Mode Table:*

Select **Device > GARP > GVRP > Application Status and Registration Mode**. The *Application Status and Registration Mode* window displays:




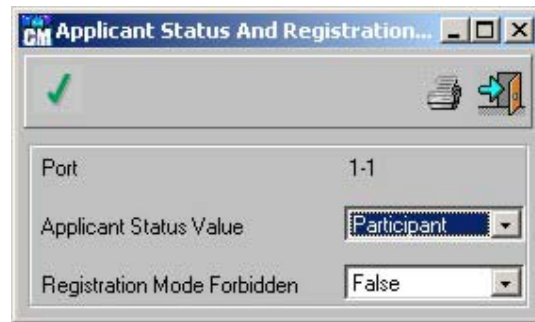
**Figure 6- 57. Applicant Status and Registration Mode window**

The **Application Status and Registration Mode** window contains the following fields

- **Port**—Indicates the port number
- **Application Status Value**—Indicates if the port is participating in GVRP. The possible values are:
  - *Participant*—Indicates that the port is sending GARP PDUs
  - *nonParticipant*— Indicates that the port is not sending GARP PDUs
- **Registration Mode Forbidden**—Disables VLANs from being created with a specific port or for port registration to occur. The default value is false. The possible values are:
  - *True*—Disables and/or unregisters specific ports from becoming part of a VLAN.
  - *False*—Enables normal registration for the port.

**To modify Application Status and Registration Mode Table information:**

1. Display the **Application Status and Registration Mode** window.
2. Click . The **Application Status and Registration Mode Table – Edit** window displays



**Figure 6- 58. Applicant Status and Registration Mode – Edit window**

3. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **Application Status and Registration Mode Table** as described above.
4. Click . The **Application Status and Registration Mode Table – Edit** window closes.
5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the GVRP settings are saved to the device

## Trunk

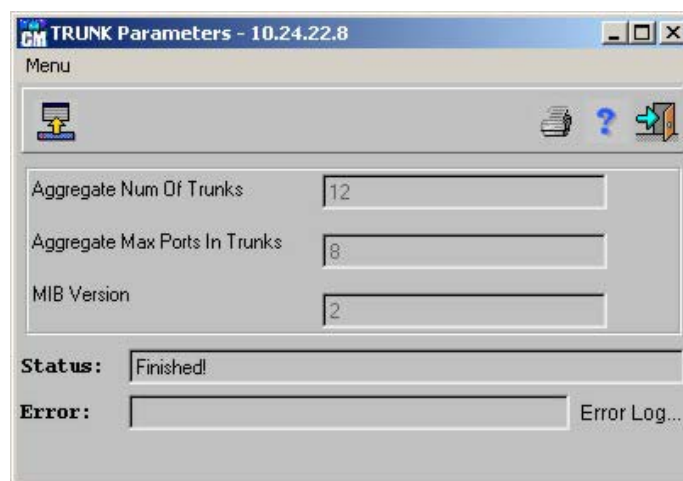
Trunking (Link Aggregation) optimizes port usage by linking a group of ports together to form a single trunk (aggregated groups). Trunking multiplies the bandwidth between the devices, increases port flexibility, and provides link redundancy.

### Trunk Parameters

The **Trunking Parameters** window displays information about the number of trunks on a device, the number of ports included in a trunk, and the MIB software version currently running.

*To display the Trunk Parameters window:*

Select **Device > Trunk > Parameters**, the *Trunk Parameters* window opens:



**Figure 6- 59. Trunk Parameters window**

The **Trunk Parameters** window displays the following fields:

- **Aggregate Num. of Trunks** – Indicates the number of trunks supported by the device.
- **Aggregate Max Ports In Trunks** – Indicates the maximum number of ports that can make up a trunk.
- **MIB Software version** – Indicates the MIB Software version currently running.

## Trunk Table

The **Trunk Table** contains information specific to trunks including the ports that make up the trunks. The Trunk Table allows network managers to assign ports to trunks. In order to assign a trunk a port, the port must comply with the following requirements:

A Layer 3 interface is not configured on the port.

- A VLAN is not configured on the port.
- A port is not assigned to a different trunk.
- An available MAC address exists which can be assigned to a port.
- Auto-negotiation mode is not configured on the port.
- The port is in full-duplex mode.
- All ports must operate at the same rate.
- All ports must have the same ingress filtering and tagged modes.
- All ports must have the same back pressure and flow control modes.
- All ports must have the same priority.
- All ports must have the same transceiver type.

### *To display the Trunk Port Table:*

Select **Device > Trunk > Trunk Table**, the *Trunk Table* opens:

Table

|    | Index | Trunk MAC Address | Aggregate | Ports Included | Ports Active |
|----|-------|-------------------|-----------|----------------|--------------|
| 1  | 97    | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | True      |                |              |
| 2  | 98    | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | True      |                |              |
| 3  | 99    | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | True      |                |              |
| 4  | 100   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | True      |                |              |
| 5  | 101   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | True      |                |              |
| 6  | 102   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | True      |                |              |
| 7  | 103   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | True      |                |              |
| 8  | 104   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | True      |                |              |
| 9  | 105   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | True      |                |              |
| 10 | 106   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | True      |                |              |

Number Of Entries In Table: 12

Status: Finished!

Error: Error Log...

Figure 6- 60. Trunk Table window


The **Trunk Table** window displays the following fields:

- Indicates the trunk ifIndex.
- **Trunk MAC Address** – Indicates the MAC Address of the Trunk.

**Note:** The device's MAC address displays by default, unless a MAC address is reserved for a trunk.

- **Aggregate** – Indicates if the trunk currently contains ports. The possible values are:
  - True – The trunk contains ports.
  - False – The trunk does not contain ports
- **Ports Included** – Identifies the ports that are part of the trunk.
- **Ports Active** – Identifies the ports that currently active.

**To Add or Edit the Aggregated Port List Port field:**

1. Display the **Trunk Table**.
2. Select an entry in the **Trunk Table**.
3. Click . The **Trunk Table** window opens

or

Double-click an entry in the **Trunk Table**, the **Trunk Table- Edit** window opens:



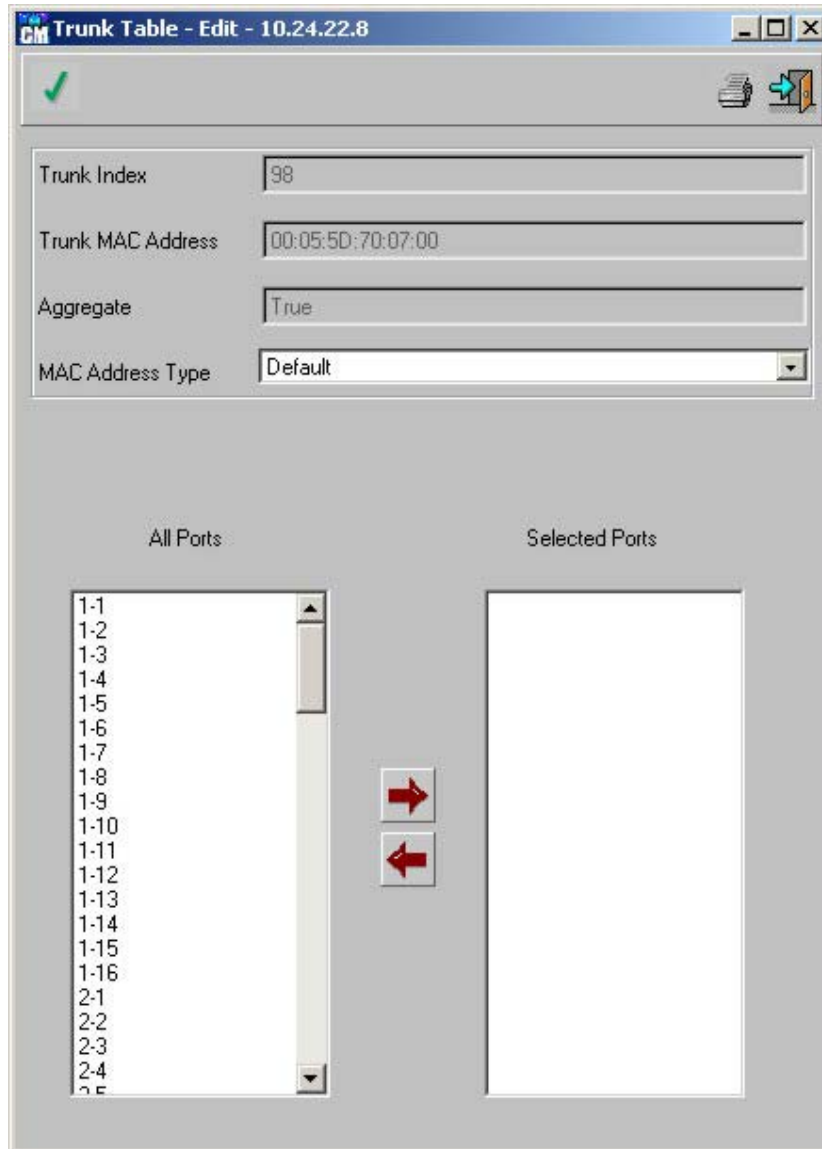





Figure 6- 61. Trunk Table- Edit window

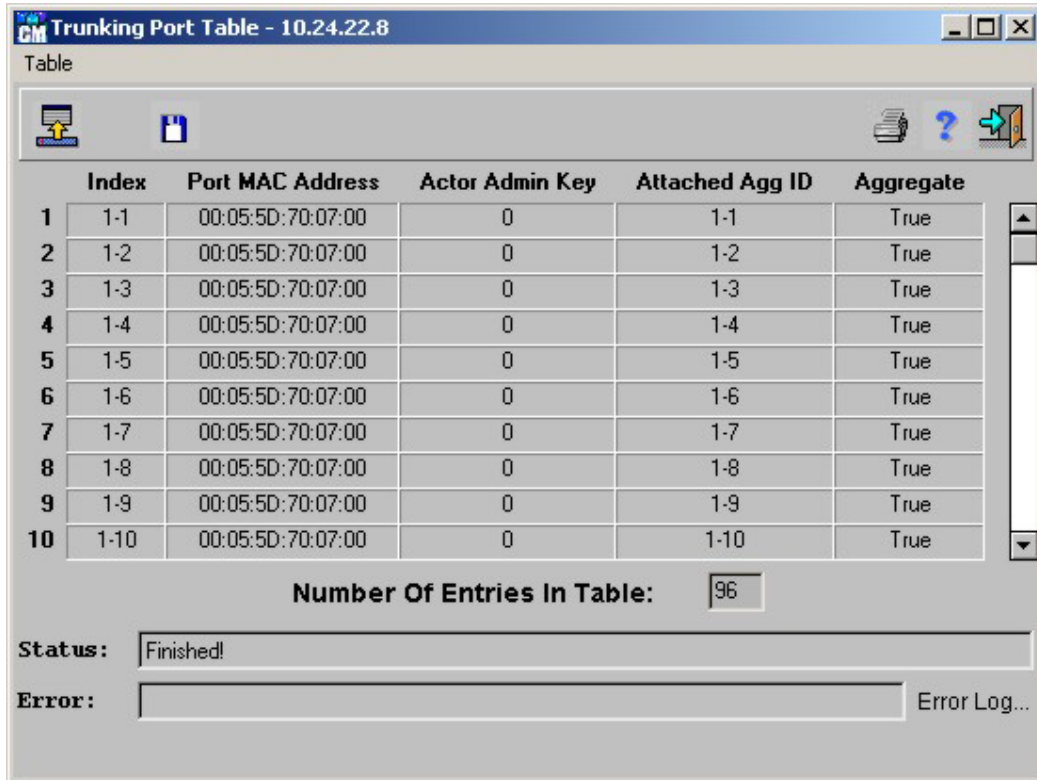
4. Edit the ports list using  to move ports between the All Ports and Forbidden Port lists. The MAC address type can also be modified. The possible values are:
  - **Reserved** – The Trunk is assigned a unique MAC address based on the order of which it was configured (0-4096 reserved MAC addresses).
  - **Default** – The Trunk receives the device MAC address.
5. Click . The **Trunk Table- Edit** window closes.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the ports that have been associated with a trunk are saved to the device.

## Trunking Port Table

The **Trunking Port Table** displays information regarding about the individual ports that make up trunks.

*To display the Trunking Port Table:*

Select **Device > Trunk > Ports Table**, the *Trunking Port Table* opens:



The screenshot shows a window titled "Trunking Port Table - 10.24.22.8". Inside, there is a table with the following data:

|    | Index | Port MAC Address  | Actor Admin Key | Attached Agg ID | Aggregate |
|----|-------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------|
| 1  | 1-1   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 1-1             | True      |
| 2  | 1-2   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 1-2             | True      |
| 3  | 1-3   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 1-3             | True      |
| 4  | 1-4   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 1-4             | True      |
| 5  | 1-5   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 1-5             | True      |
| 6  | 1-6   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 1-6             | True      |
| 7  | 1-7   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 1-7             | True      |
| 8  | 1-8   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 1-8             | True      |
| 9  | 1-9   | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 1-9             | True      |
| 10 | 1-10  | 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 1-10            | True      |

Below the table, it says "Number Of Entries In Table: 96". At the bottom, there is a "Status:" field with the value "Finished!" and an "Error:" field which is empty. There is also a button labeled "Error Log...".

**Figure 6- 62. Trunking Port Table window**

The **Trunking Port Table** window displays the following fields:

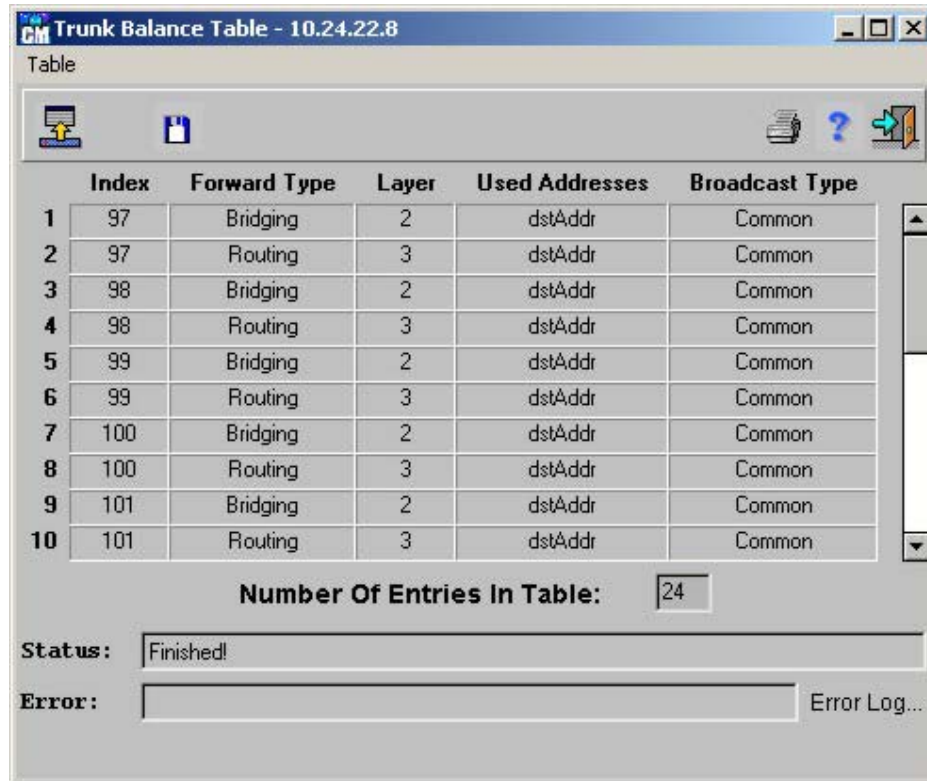
- **Index** – Identifies the individual port number.
- **Port MAC Address** – Identifies the MAC address of the port that contains the trunk.
- **Actor Admin Key** – Indicates the key value of the port. Key values are assigned to ports to signify that ports can be trunked together. For example, all ports with a key value of 5 can be trunked together, while all ports with a key value of 8 can form a different trunk. A value of 0 deletes an existing port from a trunk. A port with an unassigned key value can be aggregated to a trunk.
- **Attached Agg ID** – Identifies the trunk ifIndex to which the port is attached.
- **Aggregated** – Indicates if the port is trunked. The possible values are:
  - True – Indicates that the port is part of a trunk.
  - False – Indicates that the port is not part of a trunk.

## Trunk Balance Table

The **Trunk Balance Table** displays information about the criteria for balancing the corresponding trunk indexes.

### *To display the Trunk Balance Table:*

Select **Device > Trunk > Trunk Balance Table**, the *Trunk Balance Table* opens:



|    | Index | Forward Type | Layer | Used Addresses | Broadcast Type |
|----|-------|--------------|-------|----------------|----------------|
| 1  | 97    | Bridging     | 2     | dstAddr        | Common         |
| 2  | 97    | Routing      | 3     | dstAddr        | Common         |
| 3  | 98    | Bridging     | 2     | dstAddr        | Common         |
| 4  | 98    | Routing      | 3     | dstAddr        | Common         |
| 5  | 99    | Bridging     | 2     | dstAddr        | Common         |
| 6  | 99    | Routing      | 3     | dstAddr        | Common         |
| 7  | 100   | Bridging     | 2     | dstAddr        | Common         |
| 8  | 100   | Routing      | 3     | dstAddr        | Common         |
| 9  | 101   | Bridging     | 2     | dstAddr        | Common         |
| 10 | 101   | Routing      | 3     | dstAddr        | Common         |

Number Of Entries In Table: 24

Status: Finished!

Error: Error Log...

**Figure 6- 63. Trunk Balance Table window**

The **Trunk Balance Table** window displays the following fields:

- **Index** – Identifies the trunk number.
- **Forward Type** – Balances the trunk in either 1 of 2 modes. The possible values are:
  - Bridging
  - Routing
- **Layer** – Specifies the Balance Layer that the trunk used for the specified Forward Type, the possible values are:
  - 2 – Indicates that layer 2 is being used as the balance layer.
  - 3 – Indicates that layer 3 is being used as the balance layer.
  - 4 – Indicates that layer 4 is being used as the balance layer.
- **Used Addresses** – Specifies the network layer addresses used for balancing unicast frames. The possible values are:
  - NotApplied – Indicates that a network layer address is not used for balancing unicast frames.

- DstAddr – Indicates that the destination address is used for balancing unicast frames.
- ScrAddr – Indicates that the source address is used for balancing unicast frames.
- DstAddrSrcAddr – Indicates that both the source and destination addresses are used for balancing unicast frames.
- VlanID – Indicates that the VLAN ID is used for balancing unicast frames.
- EthType – Indicates that the ethernet type is used for balancing unicast frames.
- **Broadcast Type** – Specifies the criterion used for balancing L2 broadcast and unknown frames. The possible values are:
  - Common – A link allocated for broadcast and unknown frames is used for also for unicast frames.
  - Dedicated – A link allocated for broadcast and unknown frames is not used for unicast frames.

---

## Configuring Bridging

---

This section describes the **Bridge** menu and its options, including unicast and multicast routing, spanning tree and rapid spanning tree settings, MAC multicast routing, and traffic control.

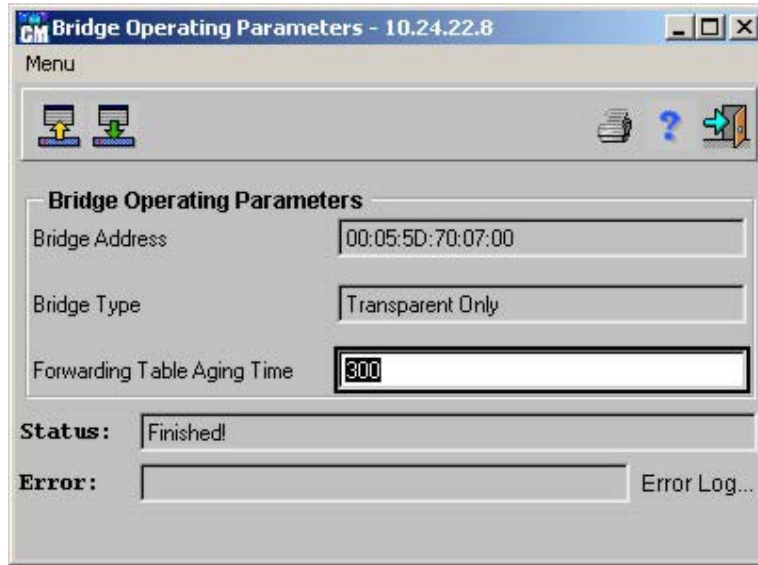
Once a VLAN is defined, bridging is performed within the VLAN. For example if a DECnet VLAN is defined on ports 1 and 2, DECnet packets into port 1 are bridged to port 2 and DECnet packets into port 2 are bridged to port 1.

### ***Operating Parameters***

The **Operating Parameters** window allows you to define general parameters for bridging.

*To display the Bridge Operating Parameters window:*

Select **Bridge > Operating Parameters**. The *Bridge Operating Parameters* window opens:




**Figure 6- 64. Bridge Operating Parameters window**

The **Bridge Operating Parameters** window displays the following fields:

- **Bridge Address** – The device MAC address.
- **Bridge Type** – Types of bridging the device can perform. This is a read only field, whose value is Transparent Only.
- **Forwarding Table Aging Time** – The user-defined number of seconds the learned entries remain in the **Forwarding Table**. The counter is reset each time the entry is used. After this time, entries are deleted from the table. There is a minimum 10-second period.

*To edit the Forwarding Table Aging Time field:*

1. Display the **Bridge Operating Parameters** window.
2. Edit the Forwarding Table Aging Time field.
3. Click . When the Status field displays “Finished!”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## **Unicast**

Unicast is a method of sending one packet to one destination, for example between a workstation and a server. The **Unicast** menu has the following options:

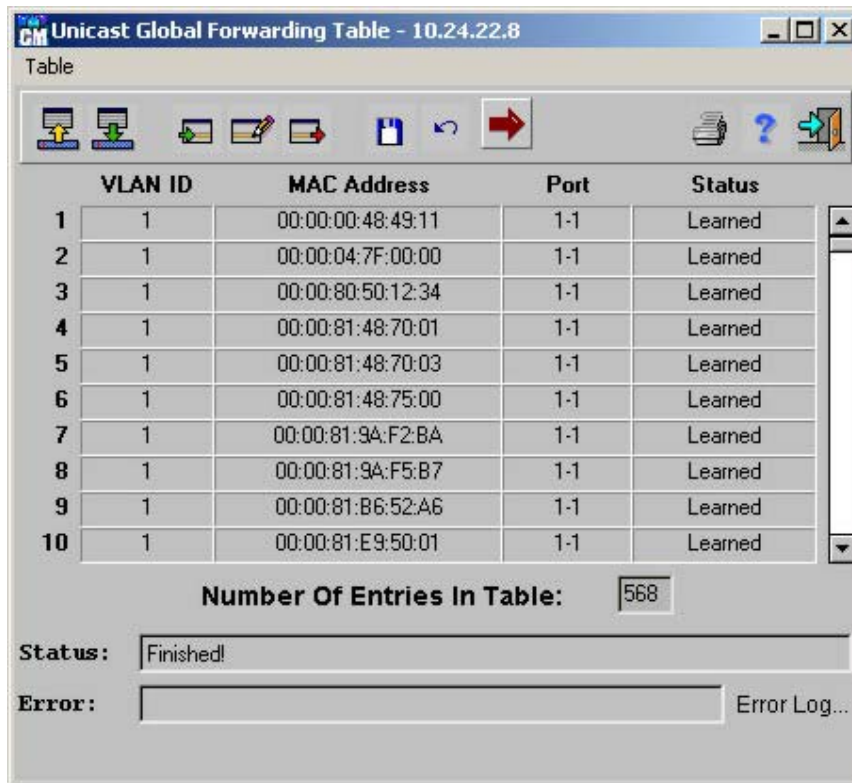
- Unicast Forward Table Size
- Unicast Forward Table Size.

## **Unicast Global Forwarding Table**

The **Unicast Forwarding Table** contains information about MAC Addresses that belong to a specific VLAN.

**To display the Unicast Global Forwarding Table:**

Select **Bridge > Unicast > Unicast Global Forwarding Table**. The *Unicast Global Forwarding Table* opens:



|    | VLAN ID | MAC Address       | Port | Status  |
|----|---------|-------------------|------|---------|
| 1  | 1       | 00:00:00:48:49:11 | 1-1  | Learned |
| 2  | 1       | 00:00:04:7F:00:00 | 1-1  | Learned |
| 3  | 1       | 00:00:80:50:12:34 | 1-1  | Learned |
| 4  | 1       | 00:00:81:48:70:01 | 1-1  | Learned |
| 5  | 1       | 00:00:81:48:70:03 | 1-1  | Learned |
| 6  | 1       | 00:00:81:48:75:00 | 1-1  | Learned |
| 7  | 1       | 00:00:81:9A:F2:8A | 1-1  | Learned |
| 8  | 1       | 00:00:81:9A:F5:B7 | 1-1  | Learned |
| 9  | 1       | 00:00:81:B6:52:A6 | 1-1  | Learned |
| 10 | 1       | 00:00:81:E9:50:01 | 1-1  | Learned |


Number Of Entries In Table: 568

Status: Finished!

Error: Error Log...

**Figure 6- 65. Unicast Global Forwarding Table window**

The **Unicast Global Forwarding Table** displays the following fields:

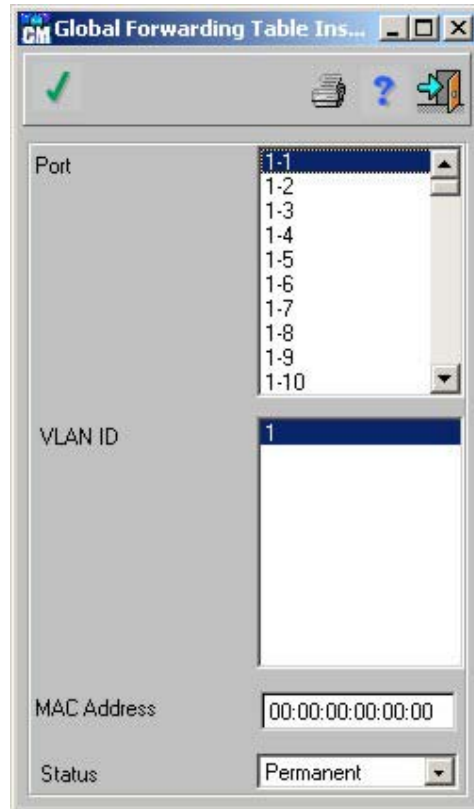
- **VLAN ID** – Identifies the VLAN to which the MAC Address applies.
- **MAC Address** – Identifies the Group MAC address of a frame to which the filtering information applies.
- **Port** – Identifies the specific port through which the MAC Address was learned.
- **Status** – Indicates the port status. The possible values are:
  - Learned – The entry was automatically learned.
  - Self – The entry is a port on the device.
  - Mgmt – The entry is a static node manually entered using the  button.
  - Other – Node status cannot be described by one of the above.

**To add a new entry in the Unicast Global Forwarding Table:**



1. Display the **Unicast Global Forwarding Table**.
2. Double-click an empty row in the **Unicast Global Forwarding Table**.

or


Click . The **Unicast Global Forwarding Table Insert** window opens:

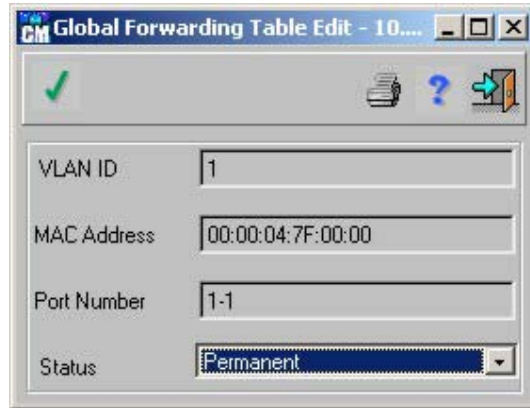


**Figure 6- 66. Global Forwarding Table Insert window**



3. Complete the fields. The fields are the same as those for **Unicast Global Forwarding** as described above.
4. Click . The **Global Forwarding Table Insert** window closes.
5. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the entry is saved to the device.

***To edit an entry in the Global Forwarding Table:***



1. Display the Global Forwarding Table.
2. Double-click an entry in the **Global Forwarding Table**.  
or  
Click . The **Global Forwarding Table Edit** window opens:



**Figure 6- 67. Global Forwarding Table Edit window**

3. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as those for **Unicast Global Forwarding** as described above.
4. Click . The **Global Forwarding Table Edit** window closes.
5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the profile is saved to the device.

***To delete an entry in the Global Forwarding Table:***

1. Display the **Global Forwarding Table**.
2. Select an entry in the **Global Forwarding Table**.
3. Click . The entry is deleted from **Global Forwarding Table**.
4. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the entry is deleted from the device.

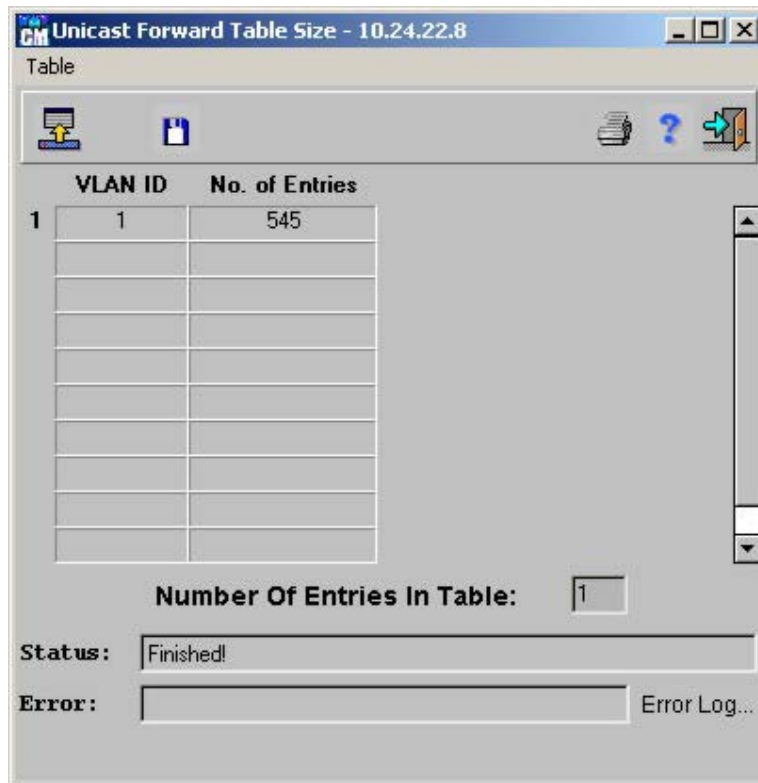
## **Unicast Forward Table Size**

The **Unicast Forward Table Size** contains information about VLANs and their entries.

***To display the Unicast Forward Table Size Window:***

Select **Bridge > Unicast > Unicast Global Forwarding Table Size**. The *Unicast Forward Table Size* window opens:





**Figure 6- 68. Unicast Forward Table Size window**

The **Unicast Forward Table Size** window displays the following fields:

- **VLAN ID** – Indicates the VLAN on which the Unicast mode is enabled.
- **No. of Entries** – Indicates the amount VLAN entries.

## Spanning Tree

The Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) provides tree topography for any arrangement of bridges. STP provides one path between end stations on a network, eliminating loops. STP is implemented either:

- STP per Device.

### STP per Device

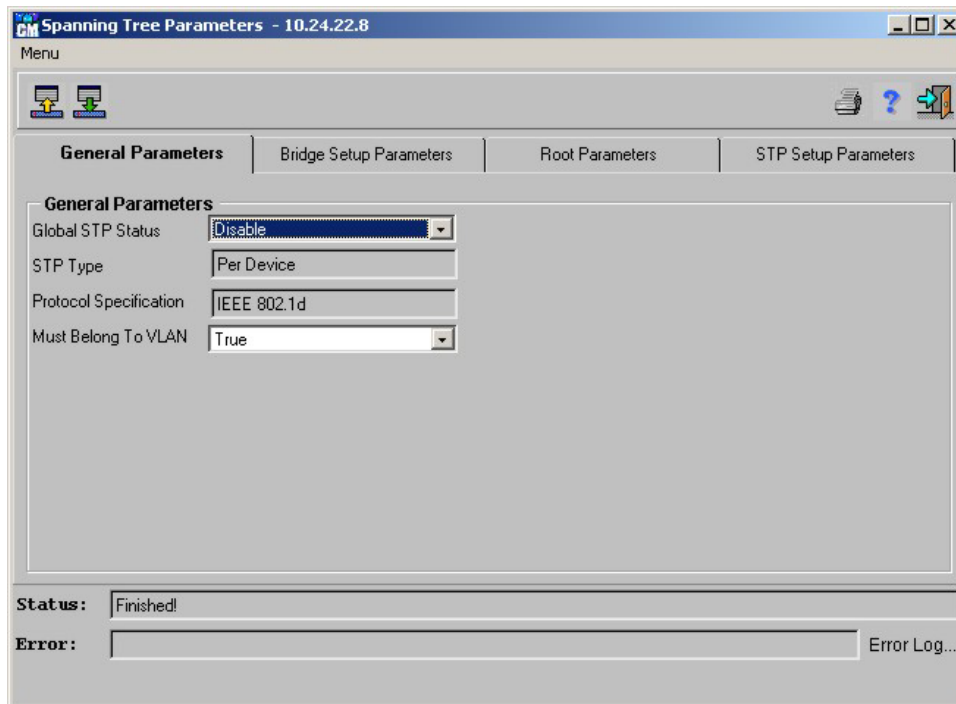
The following windows apply to STP per device. STP can be implemented on a per device basis.

### Parameters

The **Spanning Tree Parameters** window allows you to set the parameters for the Spanning Tree per device.

*To display the Spanning Tree Parameters window:*

Select **Bridge > Spanning Tree > Parameters**. The *Spanning Tree Parameters* window opens:



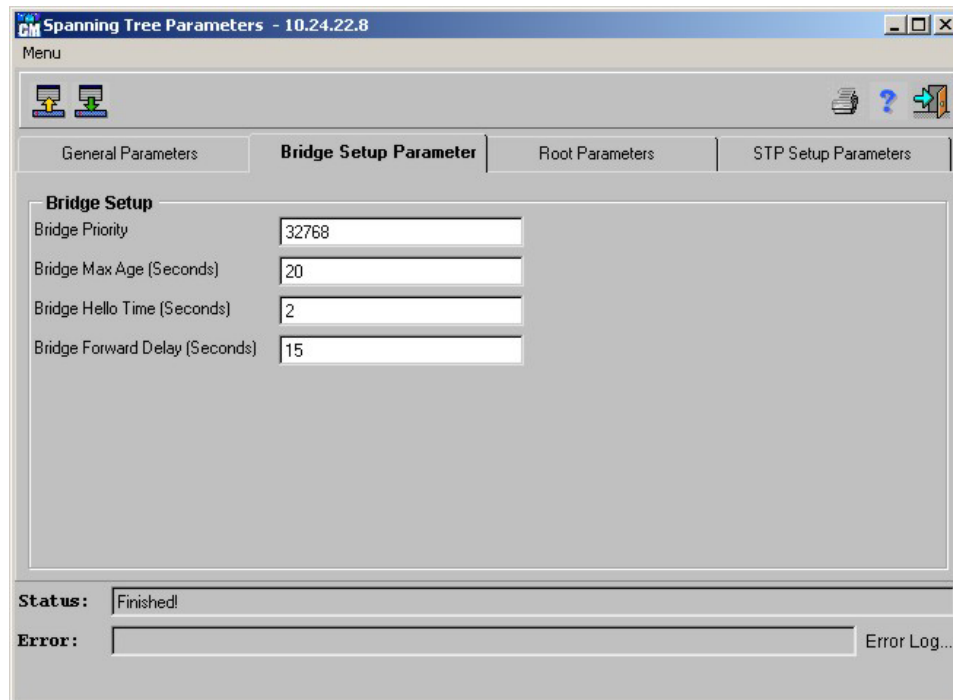
**Figure 6- 69. Spanning Tree Parameters window General Parameters tab**

The **Spanning Tree Parameters** window displays the following fields:

- **General Parameters** – Defines general information about the Spanning Tree Mode on a device or VLAN, including the protocol specification, and if a port must belong to a VLAN. These parameters can be modified.
- **Bridge Setup Parameter** – Identifies the root bridge's parameters.
- **Root Parameters** – Contains information regarding the root. These fields are grayed out and cannot be modified. The fields appearing in this tab are grayed out.
- **STP Setup Parameters** – Contains information regarding the STP Setup. These fields are grayed out and cannot be modified.

The **General Parameters** tab displays the following fields:

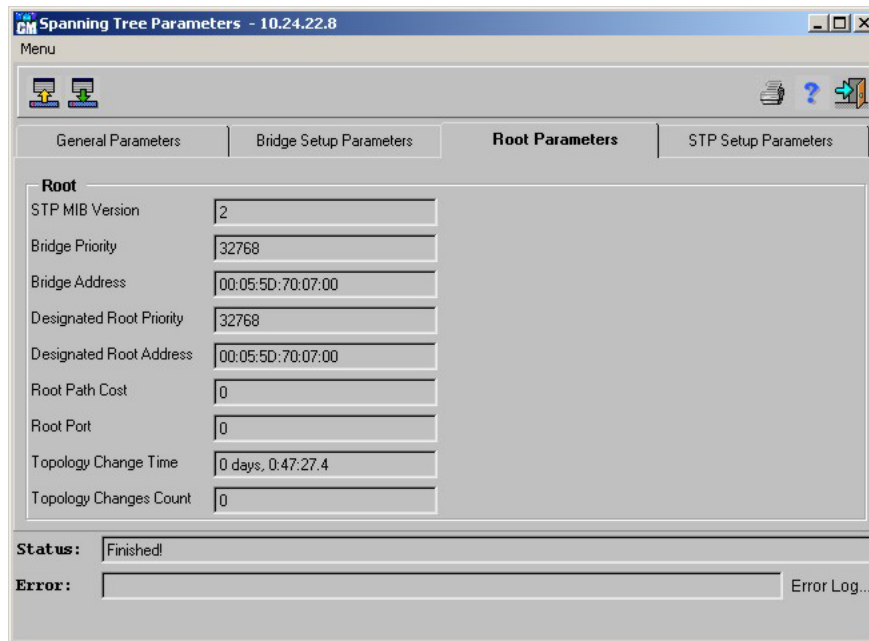
- **Global STP Status** – Indicates the STP status. The possible values are:
  - Enabled – STP is enabled.
  - Disabled – STP is disabled.
- **Protocol Specification** – Indicates the protocol type. This field is a read only.
- **Must belong to VLAN** – Indicates if ports must belong to a defined VLAN. The possible values are:
  - True – Indicates that ports must belong to a defined VLAN to be in the STP mode.
  - False – Indicates that each port of a device is in STP mode, whether or not a VLAN was defined.



**Figure 6- 70. Spanning Tree Parameters window Bridge Setup Parameter tab**

The **Bridge Setup Parameter** tab displays the following fields:

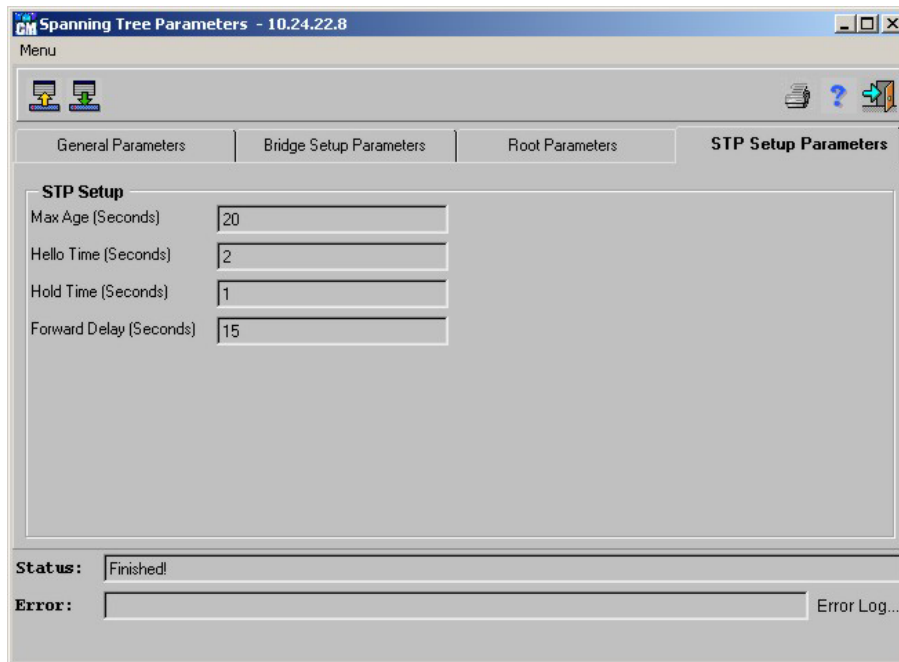
- **Bridge Priority** – Identifies the bridge priority and is part of the bridge identifier. The bridge identifier is 8 octets long, and the two most significant octets indicate the bridge priority. The bridge with the lowest value is the root.
- **Bridge Max Age (Seconds)** – Indicates the amount of time a bridge waits before implementing a topological change. The possible values are 6-40 seconds. The default is 20 seconds. This parameter is configured on all the bridges participating in the STP, but only the one belonging to the elected Root Bridge is used. It is strongly recommended to use:
  - $\text{Max age} \geq \text{Hello time} \times 2 + 1.0\text{s}$ .
- **Bridge Hello Time (Seconds)** – Indicates the amount of time a root bridge waits between configuration messages. The possible values are 1-10 seconds. The default is 2 seconds. Lengthening the Bridge Hello Time lowers the overhead time of the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP).
- **Bridge Forwarding Delay (Seconds)** – Indicates the amount of time a bridge remains in a *listening* and *learning* state before forwarding packets. The possible values are 4-30 seconds. Bridge Forward Delay is also used when a topology change is detected. Bridge Forward Delay ensures that Bridges use a consistent value for the Forward Delay Timer when changing the Port State to forwarding. The default is 15 seconds.



**Figure 6- 71. Spanning Tree Parameters window Root Parameters tab**

The **Root Parameters** tab displays the following fields:

- **STP MIB Version** – Indicates the MIB version currently in use.
- **Bridge Priority** – Indicates the bridge's priority within the Spanning Tree. The bridge with the lowest value has the highest priority, and is the root.
- **Bridge Address** – Specifies the MAC address of the bridge.
- **Designated Root Priority** – Indicates the root's priority.
- **Designated Root Address** – Specifies the root's MAC address.
- **Root Path Cost** – The cost of the path from this bridge to the root.
- **Root Port** – Indicates the port number that offers the lowest cost path from this bridge to the Root Bridge. It is significant when the Bridge is not the Root. The default is zero.
- **Topology Change Time** – Indicates the amount of time that has passed since the last topological change.
- **Topology Changes Count** – Indicates the total amount of topographic changes in since the bridge was initialized or reset. The time is displayed in an hour-minute-second format, for example, 5 hours 10 minutes and 4 seconds.



**Figure 6- 72. Spanning Tree Parameters window STP Setup Parameters tab**

The **STP Setup Parameters** tab displays the following fields:

- **MAX Age (Seconds)** – Indicates the amount of time in seconds that the bridge waits before discarding learned information. Identifies the timeout value used by all Bridges. This ensures that each Bridge has a consistent value against which to test the age of stored configuration information.
- **Hello Time (Seconds)** – Indicates the amount of time a bridge waits between CMs.
- **Hold Time (Seconds)** – Indicates the amount of time between the relaying of configuration messages through a port. The default value is 1 second.
- **Forward Delay (Seconds)** – Indicates the amount of time that a port remains in the listening and learning state before forwarding the traffic. This value is also used, when a topology change has been detected and is underway, to age all dynamic entries in the Forwarding Database. Forward Delay ensures that each Bridge uses a consistent value for the Forward Delay Timer when changing the State of a Port to the Forwarding State.

**Note:** *Forward Delay (Sec) in contrast to Bridge Forward Delay (Sec) is the value currently in use. Bridge Forward Delay (Sec), Bridge Max Age (Sec), and Bridge Hello Time (Sec) are the values that this bridge and all others use when the bridge becomes the root.*

## Spanning Tree Port Table

The **Spanning Tree Port Table** allows network managers to edit the port states and parameters for the STP managed ports, and displays the port's current status.

**To display the Spanning Tree Port Table:**

Select **Bridge > Spanning Tree > Spanning Tree Port Table**. The *Spanning Tree Port Table* opens:

|   | Port | Priority | PortState | Port Enable | Path Cost | Designated Root        | Designated Cost | Designated Bridge      | Port Designated Port | Forward Transitions |
|---|------|----------|-----------|-------------|-----------|------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 | 1-1  | 128      | Disabled  | Enabled     | 19        | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 229-0                | 0                   |
| 2 | 1-2  | 128      | Disabled  | Enabled     | 100       | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 229-0                | 0                   |
| 3 | 1-3  | 128      | Disabled  | Enabled     | 100       | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 229-0                | 0                   |
| 4 | 1-4  | 128      | Disabled  | Enabled     | 100       | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 229-0                | 0                   |
| 5 | 1-5  | 128      | Disabled  | Enabled     | 100       | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 229-0                | 0                   |
| 6 | 1-6  | 128      | Disabled  | Enabled     | 100       | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 229-0                | 0                   |
| 7 | 1-7  | 128      | Disabled  | Enabled     | 100       | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 229-0                | 0                   |
| 8 | 1-8  | 128      | Disabled  | Enabled     | 100       | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 229-0                | 0                   |
| 9 | 1-9  | 128      | Disabled  | Enabled     | 100       | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 0               | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 | 229-0                | 0                   |

Number Of Entries In Table: 108

Status: Finished

Error: Error Log...


**Figure 6- 73. Spanning Tree Port Table window**

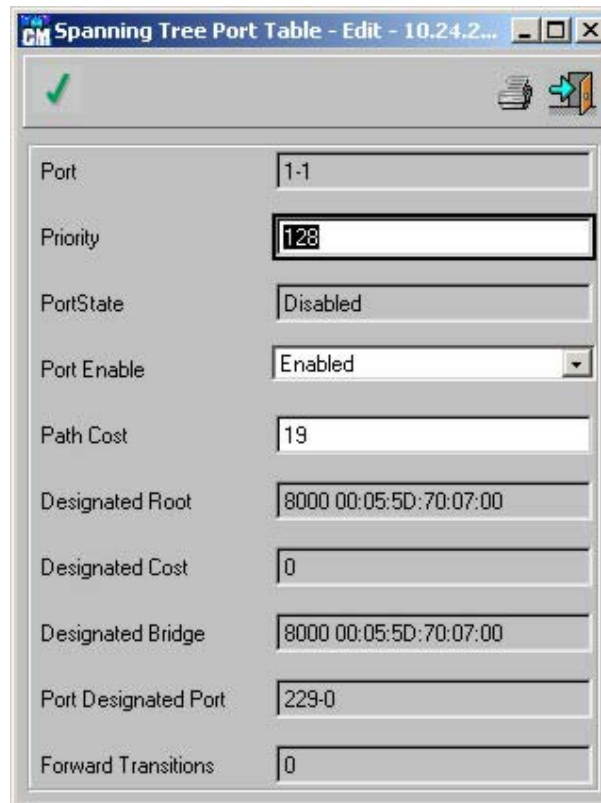
The **Spanning Tree Port Table** displays the following fields:

- **Port** – Indicates the port number to which the STP applies.
- **Priority** – Indicates the priority value of the port. The Priority value can be used to influence the choice of port when a bridge has two ports connected in a loop.
- **PortState** – Indicates the current STP state of a port. If enabled *Port State* determines what forwarding action is taken on traffic. If the bridge discovers a malfunctioning port, the port is placed in the *Broken State*. The possible values are:
  - Disabled – STP is currently disabled on the port. The port forwards traffic while *learning* MAC addresses.
  - Blocking – The port is currently blocked and cannot be used to forward traffic or learn MAC addresses.
  - Listening – The port is currently in the *listening* mode. The port cannot forward traffic nor can it learn MAC addresses.
  - Learning – The port is currently in the learning mode. The port cannot forward traffic however it can learn new MAC addresses.
  - Forwarding – The port is currently in the forwarding mode. The port can forward traffic and learn new MAC addresses.
  - Broken – The port is currently malfunctioning and cannot be used for forwarding traffic.
- **Port Enable** – Indicates if the STP is enabled on the port. If the port is disabled, the PortState is forwarding.
- **Path Cost** – The amount this port contributes to the Root Path Cost. The Path Cost can be adjustable to a higher or lower value, and can be used to forward traffic towards or away from a path being rerouted.
- **Designated Root** – The Designated Bridge transmits a unique Bridge Identifier as the *root* in the CMs.
- **Designated Cost** – The Designated Port path cost of network segments connected to this port. This value is compared to the Root Path Cost field in received CMs.
- **Designated Bridge** – Identifies which bridge is the designated bridge for the port.
- **Port Designated Port** – Identifies the port on the designated bridge.

- **Forward Transitions** – Indicates the number of times the port has gone from a learning state to a forwarding state.

*To edit an entry in the Spanning Tree Port Table:*



1. Display the **Spanning Tree Port Table**.
2. Double-click an entry in the **Spanning Tree Port Table**.  
or  
Click . The **Spanning Tree Port Table - Edit** window opens:



The image shows a window titled "GM Spanning Tree Port Table - Edit - 10.24.2...". It contains a list of fields for editing a spanning tree port entry. The fields and their values are:

| Field                | Value                  |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| Port                 | 1-1                    |
| Priority             | 128                    |
| PortState            | Disabled               |
| Port Enable          | Enabled                |
| Path Cost            | 19                     |
| Designated Root      | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 |
| Designated Cost      | 0                      |
| Designated Bridge    | 8000 00:05:5D:70:07:00 |
| Port Designated Port | 229-0                  |
| Forward Transitions  | 0                      |

**Figure 6- 74. Spanning Tree Port Table- Edit window**

3. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **Spanning Tree Port Table** as described above.
4. Click . The **Spanning Tree Port Table - Edit** window closes.
5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the entry is saved to the device.

## Spanning Tree Extended Port Table

The **Spanning Tree Extended Port Table** displays various types of damp and BPDU information.

*To display the Spanning Tree Extended Port Table:*

Select **Bridge > Spanning Tree > Spanning Tree Extended Port Table**. The *Spanning Tree Extended Port Table* opens:

|    | Port | Damp Enable | Damp Stable | Filter BPDU | BPDU Sent | BPDU Received |
|----|------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|---------------|
| 1  | 1-1  | false       | false       | false       | 0         | 0             |
| 2  | 1-2  | false       | false       | false       | 0         | 0             |
| 3  | 1-3  | false       | false       | false       | 0         | 0             |
| 4  | 1-4  | false       | false       | false       | 0         | 0             |
| 5  | 1-5  | false       | false       | false       | 0         | 0             |
| 6  | 1-6  | false       | false       | false       | 0         | 0             |
| 7  | 1-7  | false       | false       | false       | 0         | 0             |
| 8  | 1-8  | false       | false       | false       | 0         | 0             |
| 9  | 1-9  | false       | false       | false       | 0         | 0             |
| 10 | 1-10 | false       | false       | false       | 0         | 0             |

Number Of Entries In Table: 96

Status: Finished!

Error: Error Log...

**Figure 6- 75. Spanning Tree Extended Port Table window**

The **Spanning Tree Extended Port Table** displays the following fields:

- **Damp Enable** – Indicates Damp Enable status.
- **Damp Stable** – Indicates Damp Stable status.
- **Filter BPDU** – Indicates whether Bridge Protocol Data Units are being filtered by the switch.
- **BPDU Sent** – The number of Bridge Protocol Data Units sent from the port.
- **BPDU Received** – The number of Bridge Protocol Data Units received on the port.

## Rapid Spanning Tree

Rapid STP provides a faster re-configuration of network paths than regular STP. Bridges make their forwarding assessments on both STP and Rapid STP paths.

The **Rapid Spanning Tree** menu option has the following menu options:

- Ports Table.
- Force Version Table.

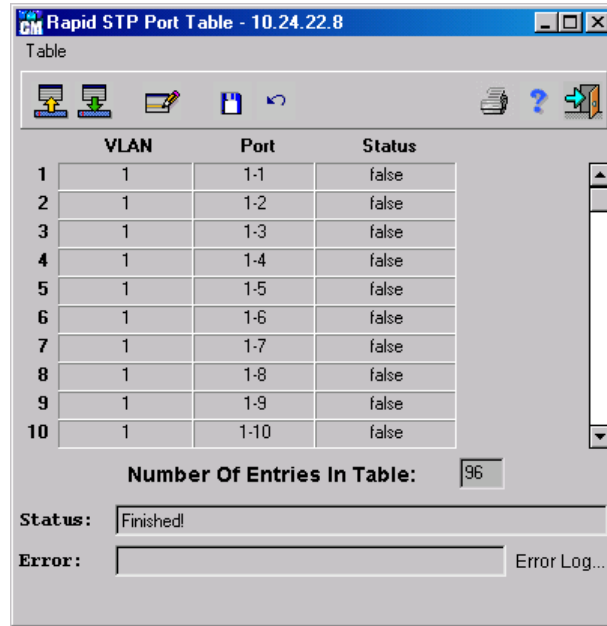
## Rapid STP Port Table

The **Rapid STP Port Table** contains information about the STP state on ports and VLANs.

**To display the Rapid STP Port Table:**

Select **Bridge > Rapid Spanning Tree > Ports Table**. The *Rapid STP Port Table* opens:





|    | VLAN | Port | Status |
|----|------|------|--------|
| 1  | 1    | 1-1  | false  |
| 2  | 1    | 1-2  | false  |
| 3  | 1    | 1-3  | false  |
| 4  | 1    | 1-4  | false  |
| 5  | 1    | 1-5  | false  |
| 6  | 1    | 1-6  | false  |
| 7  | 1    | 1-7  | false  |
| 8  | 1    | 1-8  | false  |
| 9  | 1    | 1-9  | false  |
| 10 | 1    | 1-10 | false  |

Number Of Entries In Table: 96

Status: Finished

Error:  Error Log...

Figure 6- 76. Rapid STP Port Table window

The **Rapid STP Port Table** displays the following fields:

- **VLAN** – Identifies the VLAN to which the port belongs and STP is enabled.
- **Port** – Identifies the port number for which STP is currently enabled.
- **Status** – Indicates if the port is an edge port. The default is false.

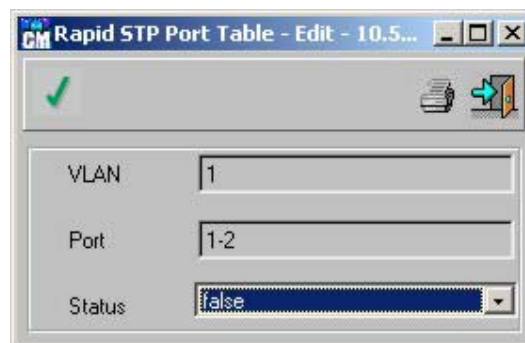
**Note:** *Rapid STP is recommended for edge ports in the topology. This eliminates loops that may be created through these ports.*

**To edit an entry in the Rapid STP Port Table:**

1. Display the **Rapid STP Port Table**.
2. Double-click an entry in the **Rapid STP Port Table**.

OR

Click . The **Rapid STP Port Table - Edit** window opens:





**Rapid STP Port Table - Edit - 10.5...**

VLAN: 1

Port: 1-2

Status: false

**Figure 6- 77. Rapid STP Port Table window**

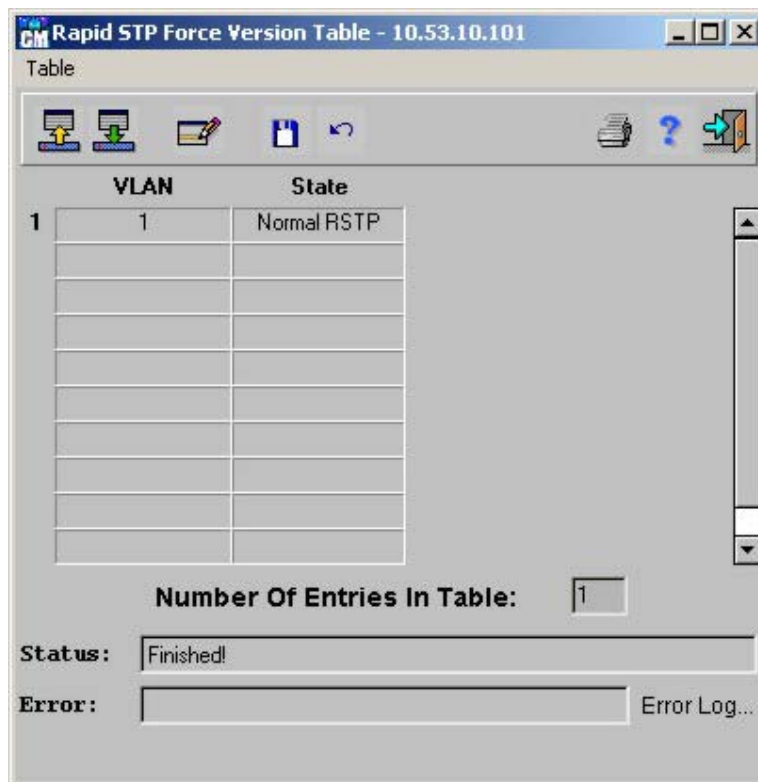
3. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **Rapid STP Port Table** as described above.
4. Click . The **Rapid STP Port Table - Edit** window closes.
5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the entry is saved to the device.

## Rapid STP Force Version Table

The **Rapid STP Force Version Table** contains information specific to Rapid STP.

*To display the Rapid STP Force Version Table:*

Select **Bridge > Rapid Spanning Tree > Force Version Table**. The *Rapid STP Force Version Table* opens:


**Figure 6- 78. Rapid STP Force Version Table window**

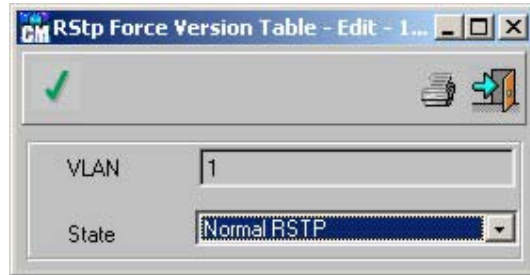
The **Rapid STP Force Version Table** displays the following:

- **VLAN** – The VLAN number to which the VLAN belongs.
- **State** – Specifies if the bridge is currently using:
  - Normal RSTP – Rapid STP Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDU) are transmitted unless a legacy system is detected by a port.
  - STP Compatibility – Indicates the rapid transition of alternate ports to root ports. Rapid STP transmits the configuration BPDUs and the Topology



Change Notification (TCN) BPDUs only. Rapid STP BPDUs are discarded.

***To edit an entry in the Rapid STP Force Version Table:***

1. Display the **Rapid STP Force Version Table**.
2. Double-click an entry in the **Rapid STP Force Version Table**.  
or  
Click . The **RSTP Force Version Table - Edit** window opens:



**Figure 6- 79. RSTP Force Version Table – Edit window**

3. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **Rapid STP Force Version Table** as described above.
4. Click . The **RSTP Force Version Table - Edit** window closes.
5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the entry is saved to the device.

## ***Traffic Control***

Traffic control allows users to map network traffic to priority queues, which determine the forwarding of network traffic. Priority values are assigned per port, and the settings are assigned per queue.

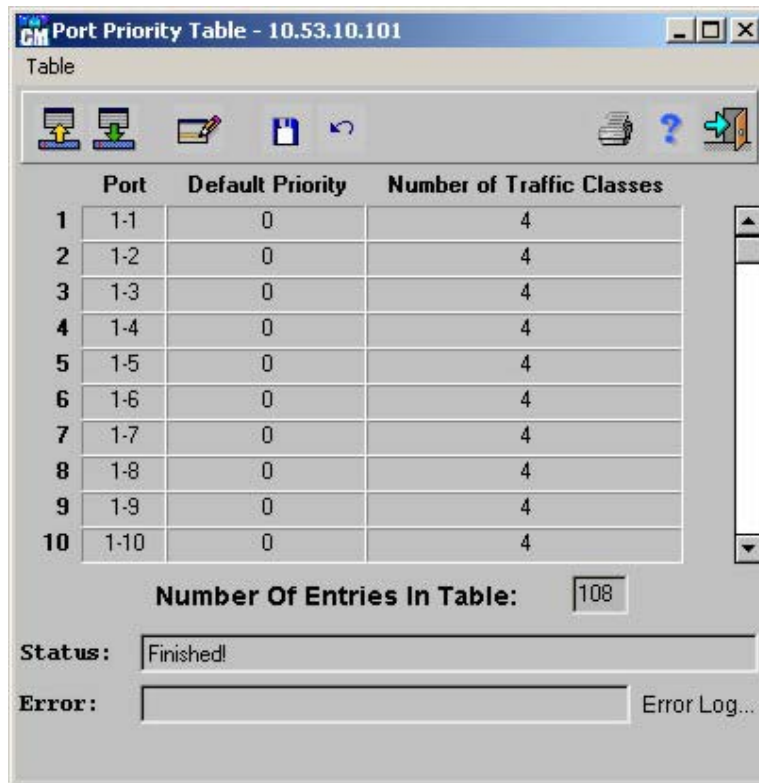
The **Traffic Control** menu option has the following menu options:

- Port Priority Table.
- Traffic Class Table.
- Priority Groups Table.

### **Traffic Control Port Priority Table**

***To display the Traffic Control Port Priority Table:***

Select **Bridge > Traffic Control > Port Priority Table**. The *Port Priority Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 80. Port Priority Table window**

The **Traffic Control Port Priority Table** displays the following fields:

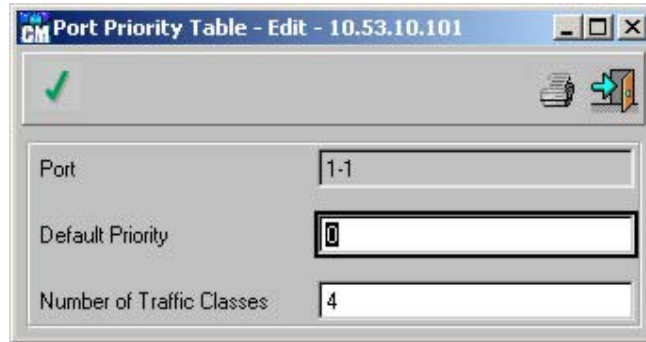
- **Port** – Identifies the port on the device.
- **Default Priority** – Indicates the default user priority assigned to the ingress port. Ports may have a priority value of 0-7. The default value is 0. Packets are assigned the default port priority if they are not tagged. Tagged packets are forwarded with their tagged priority.
- **Number of Traffic Classes** – The number of traffic classes to which received packets can be mapped. Priorities are mapped as follows:
  - Priorities 2-1 – Mapped to traffic class 0. Traffic class 0 is the lowest priority for forwarding packets.
  - Priorities 0-3 – Mapped to traffic class 1.
  - Priorities 4-5 – Mapped to traffic class 2.
  - Priorities 6-7 – Mapped to traffic class 3. Traffic class 3 is the highest priority for forwarding packets.

*To edit an Traffic Control Port Priority Table entry:*

1. Display the **Port Priority Table**.
2. Double-click an entry in the **Port Priority Table**.

or

Click . The **Port Priority Table - Edit** window opens:



**Figure 6- 81. Port Priority Table – Edit window**

3. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **Port Priority Table** as described above.
4. Click . The **Port Priority Table - Edit** window closes.
5. Click . When the Status field displays “Finished!”, the entry is saved to the device.

## Traffic Class Table

The **Traffic Class Table** allows network managers to map packet priorities to traffic classes within a group. Traffic class groups can only be configured on the same Hertz. Priorities can be mapped to four traffic classes.

*To display the Traffic Class Table:*

Select **Bridge > Traffic Control > Traffic Class Table**. The *Traffic Class Table* opens:

|    | Port | Port Group | P0 | P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 | P5 | P6 | P7 |
|----|------|------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1  | 1-1  | 2          | 1  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 2  | 2  | 3  | 3  |
| 2  | 1-2  | 2          | 1  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 2  | 2  | 3  | 3  |
| 3  | 1-3  | 2          | 1  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 2  | 2  | 3  | 3  |
| 4  | 1-4  | 2          | 1  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 2  | 2  | 3  | 3  |
| 5  | 1-5  | 2          | 1  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 2  | 2  | 3  | 3  |
| 6  | 1-6  | 2          | 1  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 2  | 2  | 3  | 3  |
| 7  | 1-7  | 2          | 1  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 2  | 2  | 3  | 3  |
| 8  | 1-8  | 2          | 1  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 2  | 2  | 3  | 3  |
| 9  | 1-9  | 1          | 1  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 2  | 2  | 3  | 3  |
| 10 | 1-10 | 1          | 1  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 2  | 2  | 3  | 3  |

Number Of Entries In Table: 84

Status: Data arriving

Error: Error Log...

**Figure 6- 82. Traffic Class Table window**

The **Traffic Class Table** displays the following fields:

- **Port** – Indicates the port number.
- **Port Group** – Indicates the group to which a port belongs. All ports in a group must be mapped to the same priority and traffic class.
- **P0** – Indicates the traffic class value to which priority 0 is mapped.
- **P1** – Indicates the traffic class value to which priority 1 is mapped.
- **P2** – Indicates the traffic class value to which priority 2 is mapped.
- **P3** – Indicates the traffic class value to which priority 3 is mapped.
- **P4** – Indicates the traffic class value to which priority 4 is mapped.
- **P5** – Indicates the traffic class value to which priority 5 is mapped.
- **P6** – Indicates the traffic class value to which priority 6 is mapped.
- **P7** – Indicates the traffic class value to which priority 7 is mapped.



*To edit the Traffic Class Table:*

1. Display the **Traffic Class Table**.
2. Double-click an entry in the **Traffic Class Table**.

| PRIORITY   | TRAFFIC CLASS |
|------------|---------------|
| Priority 0 | 1             |
| Priority 1 | 0             |
| Priority 2 | 0             |
| Priority 3 | 1             |
| Priority 4 | 2             |
| Priority 5 | 2             |
| Priority 6 | 3             |
| Priority 7 | 3             |

**Figure 6- 83. Edit Traffic Class Table Edit window**

3. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **Traffic Class Table** as described above.

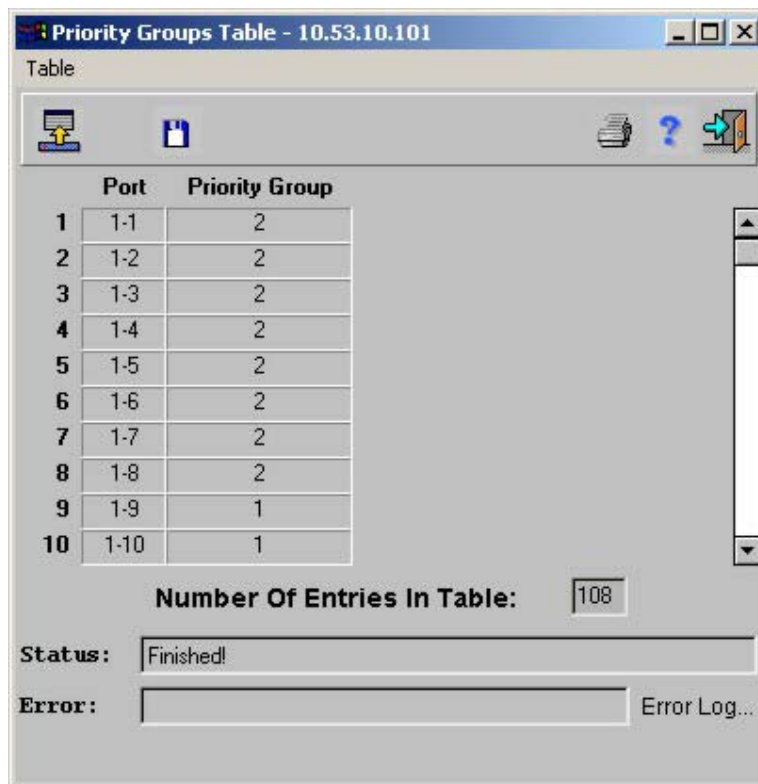
4. Click . The **Traffic Class Table Edit** window closes.
5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the entry is saved to the device.

## Priority Groups Table

The **Priority Groups Table** contains information about a port's priority group.

*To display the Priority Groups Table:*

Select **Bridge > Traffic Control > Priority Groups Table**. The *Priority Groups Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 84. Priority Groups Table window**

The **Priority Groups Table** displays the following fields:

- **Port** – Indicates the port number.
- **Priority Group** – Indicates the group to which a port belongs.

---

## Configuring Routing

---

This section describes the Router menu and its options, including routing settings for IP, IPM, and IPX routing.

## IP

For a device to perform IP routing, an IP Interface is configured. The IP interface consist of two parts:

- **IP Address** – The IP Address is defined for a physical port or VLAN.
- **IP Network Mask** – The IP Network Mask is determined by the network setup.

A device performs IP routing between all defined IP interfaces. The **IP** menu option has the following menu options:

- Operating Parameters
- Interface Parameters
- RIP
- OSPF II
- Routing Table
- ARP Table
- IP Redundancy
- DHCP
- UDP Relay
- TCP General Parameters
- TCP Connections Table

### Operating Parameters

The **Operating Parameters** window contains information about how the IP Router operates.

*To display the IP Operating Parameters window:*

Select **Router > IP > Operating Parameters**. The *IP Router Operating Parameters* window opens:

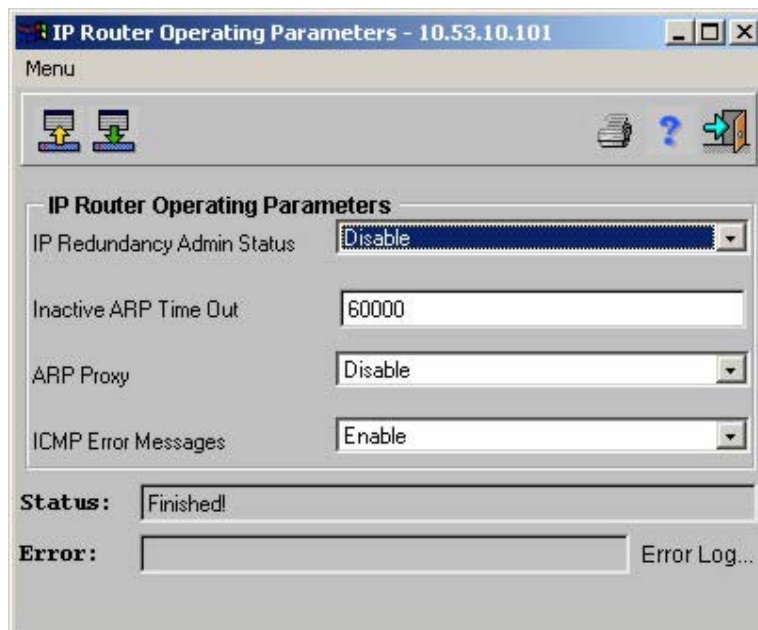



Figure 6- 85. IP Router Operating Parameters window



The **IP Router Operating Parameter** window displays the following fields:

- **IP Redundancy Admin Status** – If enabled, this device serves as a backup if the current main device fails.
- **Inactive ARP Time Out** – Seconds passed between ARP requests about an entry in the ARP table. After this period, the entry is deleted from the table.
- **ARP Proxy** – If enabled, the device responds to ARP requests for located nodes. If disabled the device responds with its own MAC address
- **ICMP Error Messages** – If enabled the device generates ICMP error messages.

*To edit IP Router operating parameter fields:*

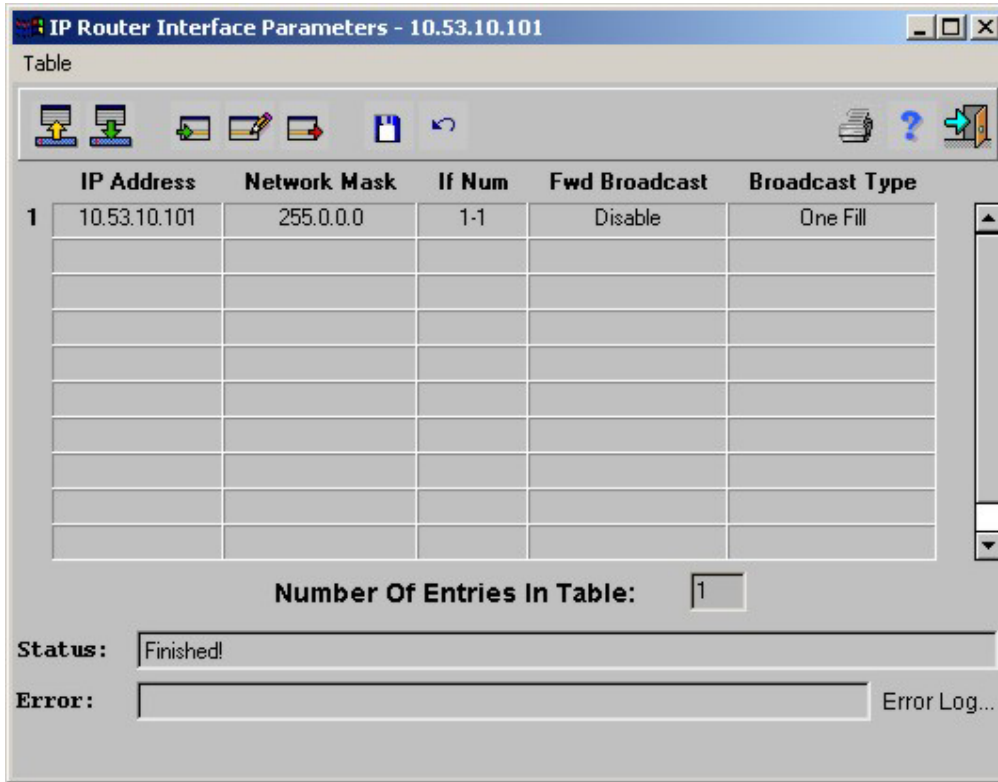
1. Display the **IP Router Operating Parameters** window.
2. Edit the fields as required.
3. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified

## Interface Parameters

The **Interface Parameters** window displays specific details for each interface including IP addresses, network masks, port index number, broadcast types and if the ARP server is enabled.

*To display a device IP Router Interfaces:*

Select **Router > IP > Interface Parameters**. The *IP Router Interface Parameters* window opens:




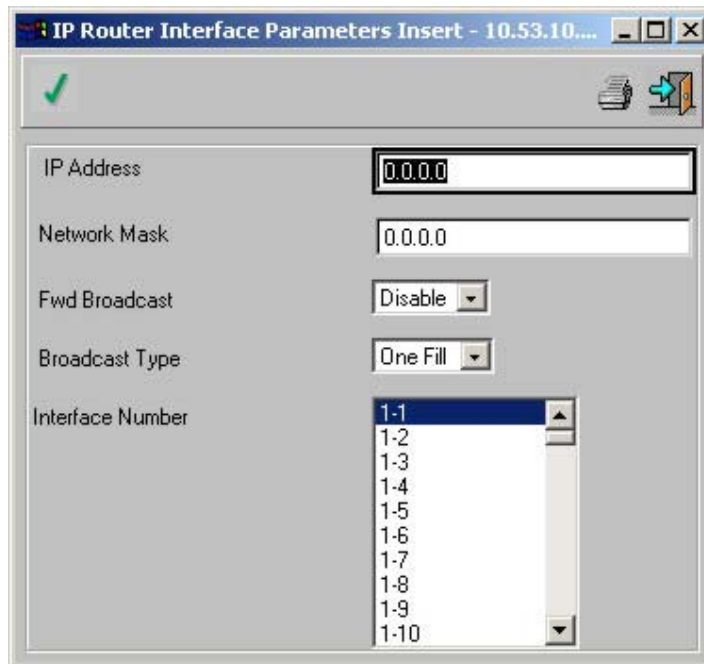
**Figure 6- 86. IP Router Interface Parameters window**

The **IP Router Interface Parameters** window displays the following details for all a device IP interfaces:


- **IP Address** – Interface IP address.
- **Network Mask** – Associated subnet mask
- **If Num** – Interface number. If the interface is a VLAN, the included interfaces are listed in the Interface Number box in the **IP Router Interface Parameters Insert** window.
- **Fwd Broadcast** – Indicates if the device forwards incoming broadcasts to this interface.
- **Broadcast Type** – Fills the host ID in the broadcast address with ones or zeros.

*To add new a device IP interface:*


1. Display the **IP Router Interface Parameters** window.
2. Click  to add an IP interface. The **IP Router Interface Parameters Insert** window opens:

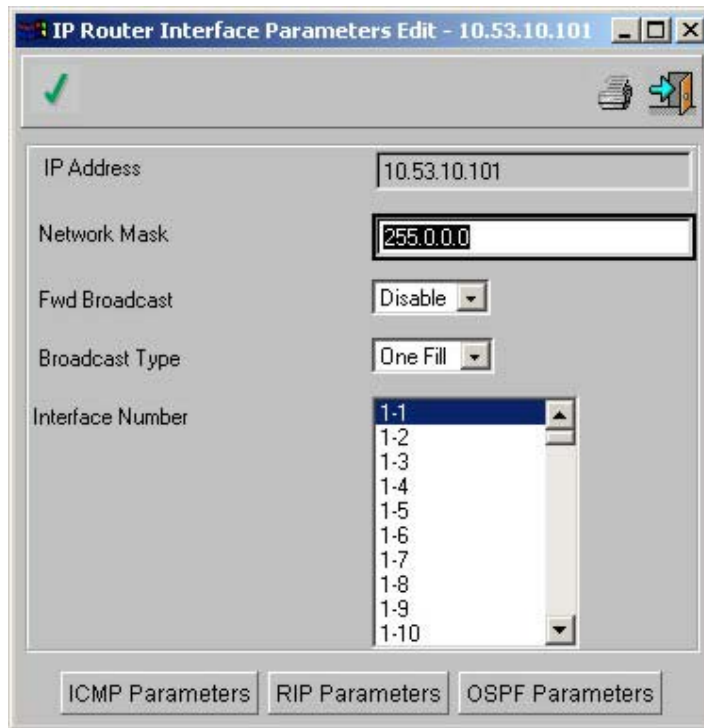


**Figure 6- 87. IP Router Interface Parameters Insert window**

3. Enter the IP Address and Network Mask as determined by the network setup.
4. Select an interface number from the Interface Number list. This list contains all physical interfaces and all IP VLANs. If a required physical interface combination is not listed, use the **VLAN Table** to define the desired combination.
5. Click  to confirm the new IP Interface.
6. Repeat steps 2-5 for all new IP interfaces.


***To edit a device IP interface:***

1. Display the **IP Router Interface Parameters** window.
2. Select an entry and click . The **IP Router Interface Parameters Edit** window opens:





**Figure 6- 88. IP Router Interface Parameters Edit window**

The **IP Router Interface Parameters Edit** window contains the following buttons that define additional parameters:

- **ICMP Parameters** – Defines the ICMP parameters for IP interface
  - **RIP Parameters** – Defines the RIP parameters for IP interface
  - **OSPF Parameters** – Defines the OSPF parameters for IP interface
3. Edit the fields required, except the IP Address field.
  4. Press the **ICMP Parameters** button and complete the **ICMP Interface Parameters** window fields.
  5. Press the **RIP Parameters** button and complete the **RIP Interface Table Edit** window fields.
  6. Press the **OSPF Parameters** button and complete the **OSPF Interface table** fields.
  7. Click  to confirm the new IP Interface.
  8. Close the **IP Router Interface Parameters Edit** window.

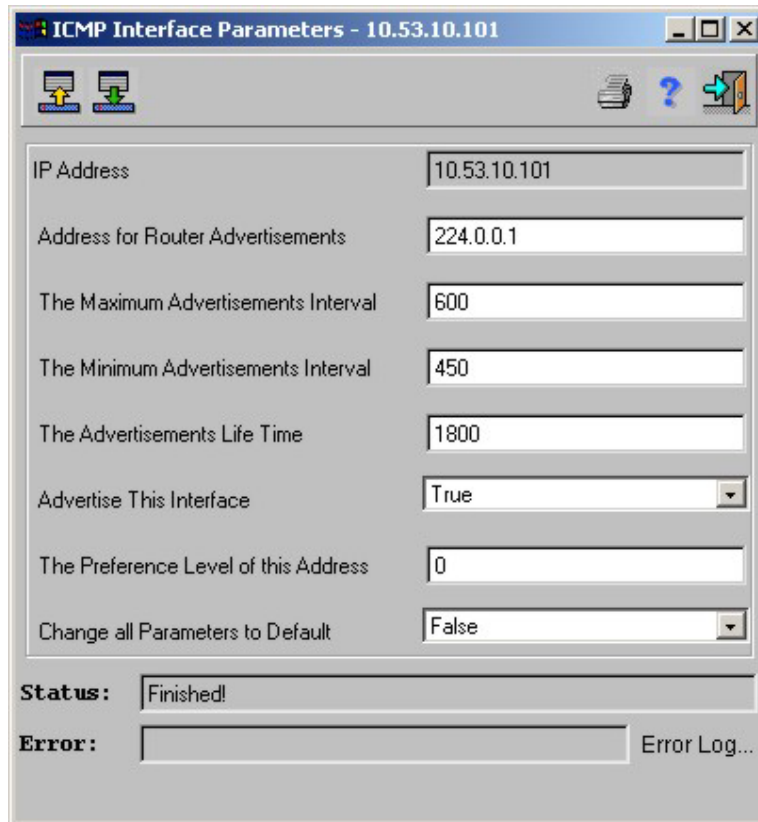
*To delete a device IP interface:*

1. Display the **IP Router Interface Parameters** window.
2. Select an entry in the table.

3. Click . The IP Address is deleted.
4. Click  to update the device.

***To display the ICMP Interface Parameters window:***

1. Display the **IP Router Interface Parameters Edit** window.
2. Press the **ICMP Parameters** button. The **ICMP Interface Parameters** window opens:



The screenshot shows a window titled "ICMP Interface Parameters - 10.53.10.101". It contains the following fields and controls:

- IP Address:** 10.53.10.101
- Address for Router Advertisements:** 224.0.0.1
- The Maximum Advertisements Interval:** 600
- The Minimum Advertisements Interval:** 450
- The Advertisements Life Time:** 1800
- Advertise This Interface:** True (dropdown menu)
- The Preference Level of this Address:** 0
- Change all Parameters to Default:** False (dropdown menu)
- Status:** Finished!
- Error:** (empty text box) with an **Error Log...** button next to it.

**Figure 6- 89. ICMP Interface Parameters window**


The **ICMP Interface Parameters** window displays the following fields:

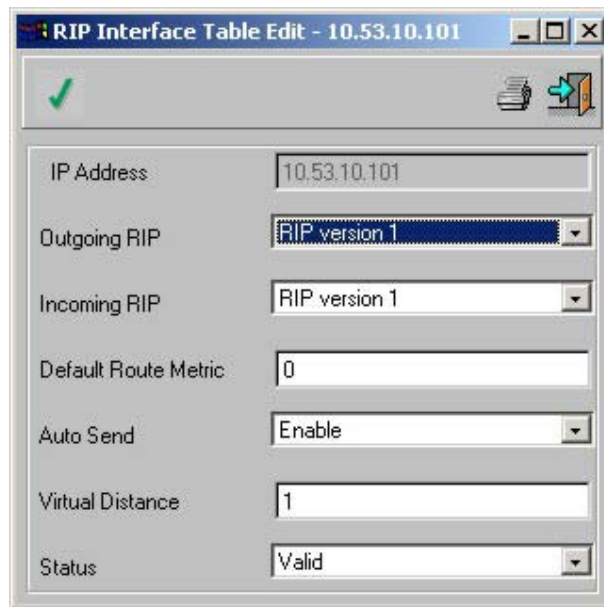
- **IP Address** – The IP address of the current interface.
- **Address for Router Advertisements**—Indicates the IP destination address for multicast Router Advertisements sent from the interface. Possible values are the all-systems multicast address, 224.0.0.1, or the limited-broadcast address, 255.255.255.255.
- **The Maximum Advertisements Interval**—Indicates the maximum time (seconds) between multicast Router Advertisements from the interface. Possible values are between the minimum interval defined below and 1800 seconds.
- **The Minimum Advertisements Interval**—Indicates the minimum time (seconds) between sending unsolicited multicast Router Advertisements from the

interface. Possible values are between 3 seconds and the maximum interval defined above. Default value is 0.75 of the Maximum Interval.



- **The Advertisements Life-Time**—Indicates the maximum time (seconds) the advertised addresses are considered valid. Must be no less than a Maximum Interval defined above, and no greater than 9000 seconds. Default value is 0.3 of the Maximum Interval.
- **Advertise This Interface**—Indicates whether the address is advertised.
- **The Preference Level of this Address**—Indicates the preference address as a default router Default address, relative to other router addresses on the same Subnet.
- **Change all parameters to**—Resets all parameters in this window to their default values.

**To edit RIP Parameters window fields:**

1. Display the **RIP Interface Table** (Select **Router > IP > RIP > Interface Parameters**).
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **RIP Interface Table Edit** window opens.



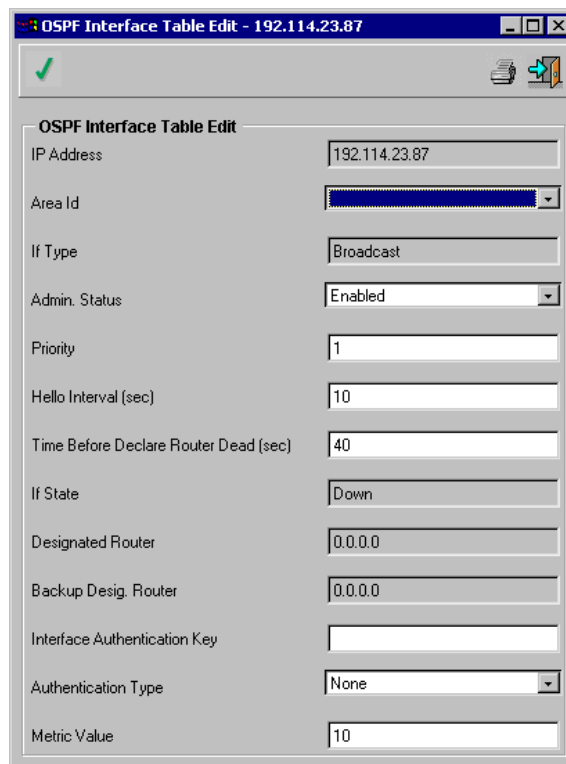
**Figure 6- 90. RIP Interface Table Edit window**

4. Edit the selected table entry fields and click . The **RIP Interface Table** opens.
5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

**To display the OSPF Interface Table Edit window:**

OSPF is supported from software version 3.03 and up.

1. Display the **IP Router Interface Parameters Edit** window.
2. Press the **OSPF Parameters** button. The **OSPF Interface Table Edit** window opens:



| OSPF Interface Table Edit             |               |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|
| IP Address                            | 192.114.23.87 |
| Area Id                               |               |
| If Type                               | Broadcast     |
| Admin. Status                         | Enabled       |
| Priority                              | 1             |
| Hello Interval (sec)                  | 10            |
| Time Before Declare Router Dead (sec) | 40            |
| If State                              | Down          |
| Designated Router                     | 0.0.0.0       |
| Backup Design. Router                 | 0.0.0.0       |
| Interface Authentication Key          |               |
| Authentication Type                   | None          |
| Metric Value                          | 10            |




**Figure 6- 91. OSPF Interface Table Edit window**

The **OSPF Interface Table Edit** window displays the following fields:

- **IP Address** – The IP address of this OSPF interface.
- **Area ID** – The IP address of the area.
- **If Type** – The interface type, such as Broadcast.
- **Admin. Status** – The administrative status of the OSPF in the router. Enabled means that the OSPF process is active on at least one interface. Disabled means the process is not active on any interface.
- **Priority** – The priority of this interface. The value 0 means that this router is not eligible to become the designated router on the current network. If more than one router has the same priority, the router ID is used.
- **Hello Interval (sec)** – The amount of seconds between Hello packets. All routers attached to a common network must have the same Hello Interval.
- **Time Before Declare Router Dead (sec)** – The number of seconds a router's Hello packets have not been detected, before the router's neighbors declare the router to be down. The value must be multiple of the Hello Interval value. All routers attached to a common network must have a value specified for this parameter.
- **If State** – The OSPF interface state:
  - *Down* – The OSPF interface is down.
  - *Loopback* – The OSPF interface is in the Loopback state.

- *Waiting* – The OSPF interface is currently waiting.
- *Point to Point* – The OSPF interface is in the point-to-point state.
- *Designated Router* – The OSPF interface is the designated router.
- *Backup Designated Router* – The OSPF interface is the backup designated router.
- *Other Designated Router* – Other routers are the designated and backup routers.
- **Designated Router** – The IP address of the designated router.
- **Backup Design. Router** – The IP address of the backup designated router.
- **Interface Authentication Key** – The interface authentication key.
- **Authentication Type** – The interface authentication type. The options are *None* or *Password*.
- **Metric Value** – The metric for this type of service on the interface.

***To edit OSPF Parameter fields:***

1. Display the **OSPF Interface Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **OSPF Interface Table Edit** window opens.
4. Edit the selected table entry fields and click . The **OSPF Interface Table** opens.
5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## **RIP**

The **RIP** menu has the following menu options:

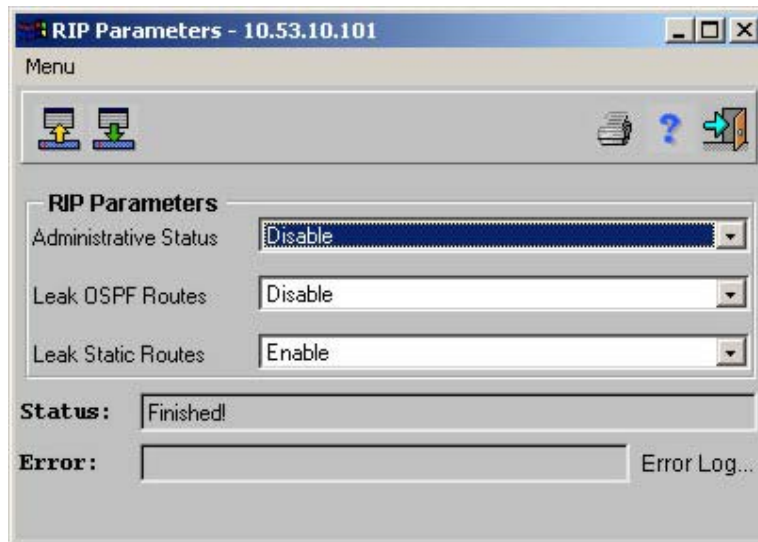
- Parameters.
- Interface Parameters.
- RIP Filter

### ***Parameters***

***To display RIP Parameters:***

Select **Router > IP > RIP > Parameters**. The ***RIP Parameters*** window opens:






**Figure 6- 92. RIP Parameters window**

The **RIP Parameters** window displays the following:

- **Administrative Status** – The RIP administrative status in the router. Enabled means the RIP process is active on at least one interface. Disabled means the process is not active on any interfaces.
- **Leak OSPF Routes** – Controls redistribution of routes from OSPF to RIP. When this parameter is enabled, all routes learned via OSPF are advertised into RIP.
- **Leak Static Routes** – Controls redistribution of routes from static routes to RIP. When this parameter is enabled, all static routes learned via static are advertised into RIP.

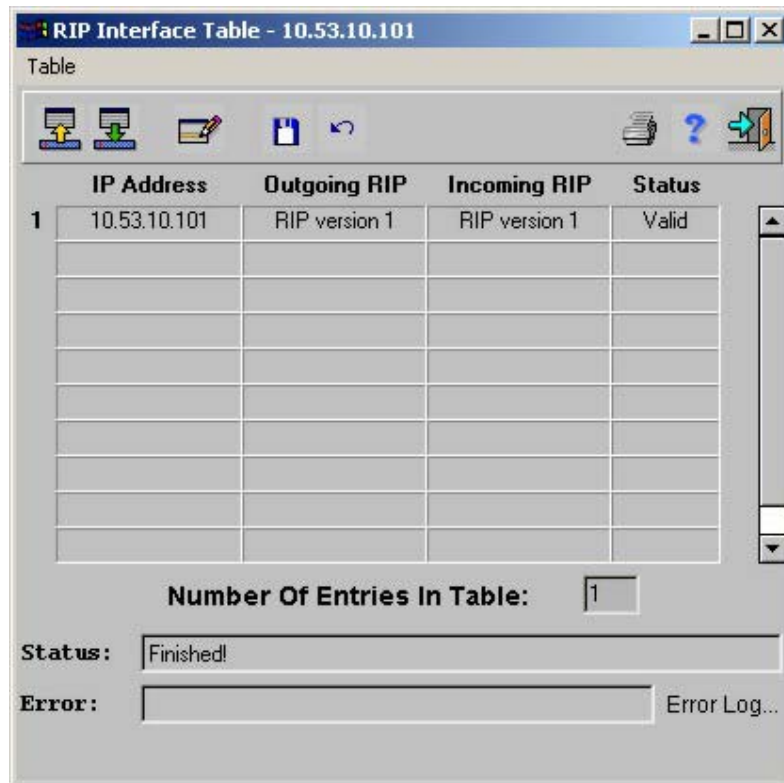
***To edit RIP Parameter fields:***

1. Display the **RIP Parameters** window.
2. Edit fields to *Enable* or *Disable*.
3. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***RIP Interface Parameters***

***To display the RIP Interface Table:***

Select **Router > IP > RIP > Interface Parameters**. The *RIP Interface Table* opens:




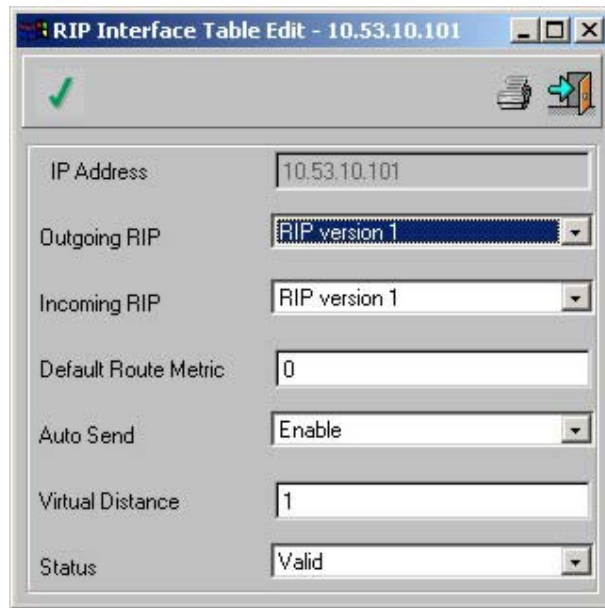
**Figure 6- 93. RIP Interface Table window**

The **RIP Interface Table** displays the following fields:

- **IP Address** – Current IP address interfaces.
- **Outgoing RIP** – The type of RIP being sent.
  - RIP Software version 1 – Sending RIP updates compliant with RFC 1058.
  - RIP Software version 2 – Multicasting RIP2 updates.
  - Do Not Send – No RIP updates are sent.
- **Incoming RIP** – The type of RIP being received.
  - RIP Software version 1 – Accepting RIP1.
  - RIP Software version 2 – Accepting RIP2.
- **Status** – The RIP status in the router is either valid or invalid.

*To edit RIP Interface Table fields:*



1. Display the **RIP Interface Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **RIP Interface Table Edit** window opens.



**Figure 6- 94. RIP Interface Table Edit window**

The **RIP Interface Table Edit** window display the following fields:

- **Default Route Metric** – Metric for the default route entry in RIP updates originated on this interface. Zero indicates that no default route is originated.
- **Auto Send** – When this parameter is enabled, this device advertises RIP messages in the default metric only. This allows some stations to learn the default router address. If the device detects another RIP message, Auto Send is disabled. Enable this parameter to minimize network traffic when the device is the only router on the network.
- **Virtual Distance** – Virtual number of hops assigned to the interface. This fine-tunes the RIP routing algorithm.

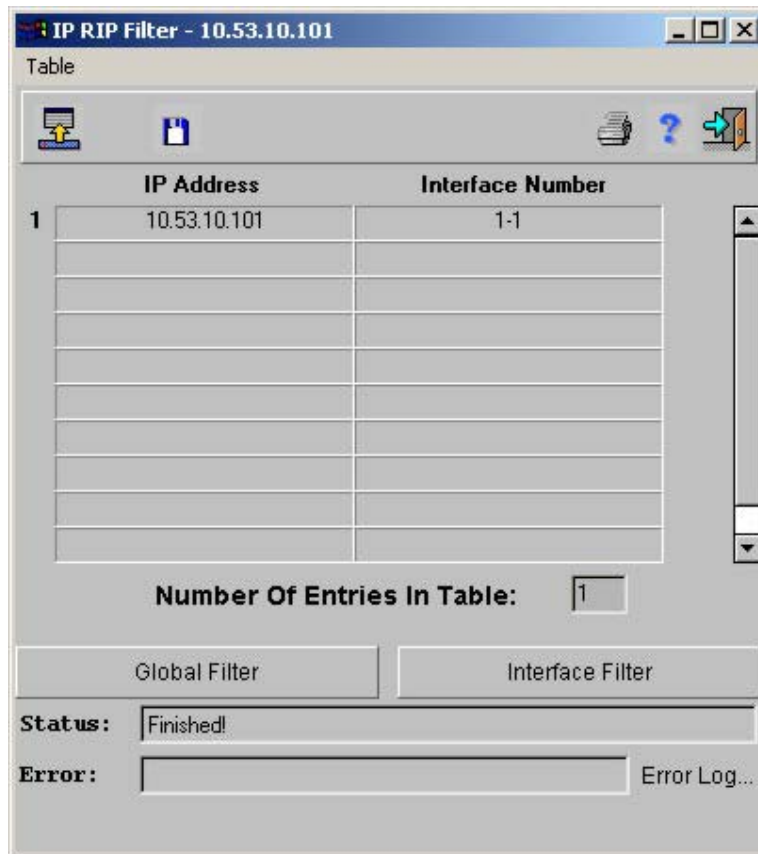
4. Edit the required fields. The IP Address field cannot be modified.
5. Click .
6. Close the **RIP Interface Table Edit** window. The **RIP Interface Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## ***RIP Filters***

IP RIP filtering is a device feature that improves aggregate routing performance. Defining IP RIP filters reduces the RIP table size to the relevant IP subnets, allowing for a faster table lookup and relearning memory for other purposes. RIP filters are supported from software version 3.03 and up.

***To display the RIP filters:***

Select **Router > IP > RIP > RIP Filters**. The *IP RIP Filter* window opens:



**Figure 6- 95. IP RIP Filter window**

The **IP RIP Filter** window displays the following fields:

- **IP Address** – The Interface IP address.
- **Interface Number** – The pre-assigned Interface number.

There are two added filters:

- **IP RIP Global Filter** – Defines the parameters for IP RIP Global Filters including the type, network address, bits matched, and filter actions.
- **IP Interface RIP Filter** – Defines the parameters for IP Interface RIP Filters including the type, validity, network address, bits matched, and filter actions.

**To display IP RIP Global Filter Table:**

1. Display the **IP RIP Filter** window.
2. Click **Global Filter**. The **IP RIP Global Filter Table** opens:

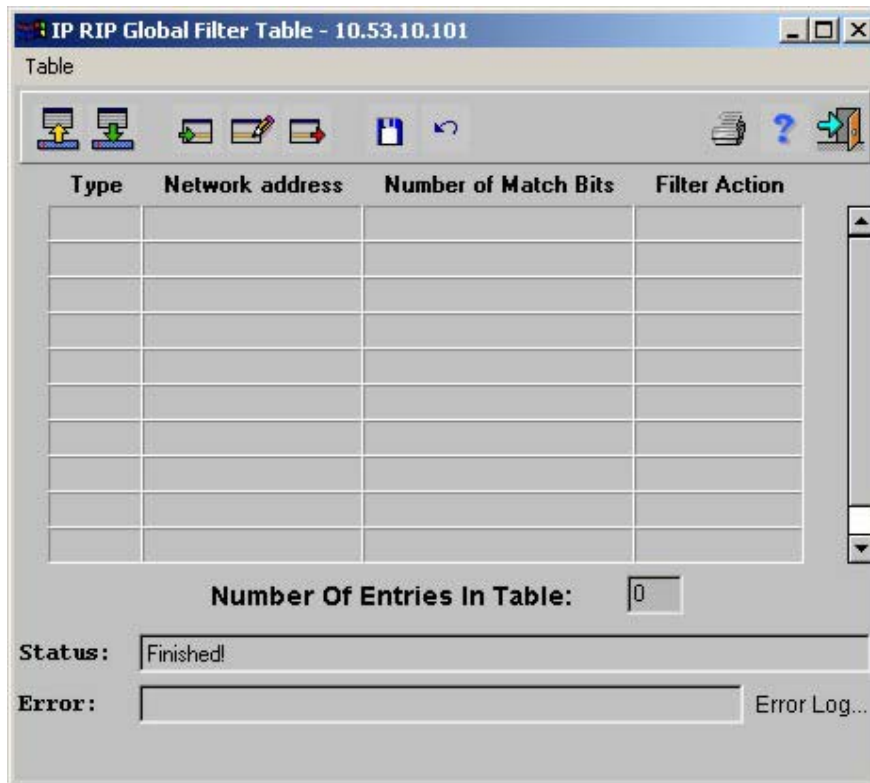


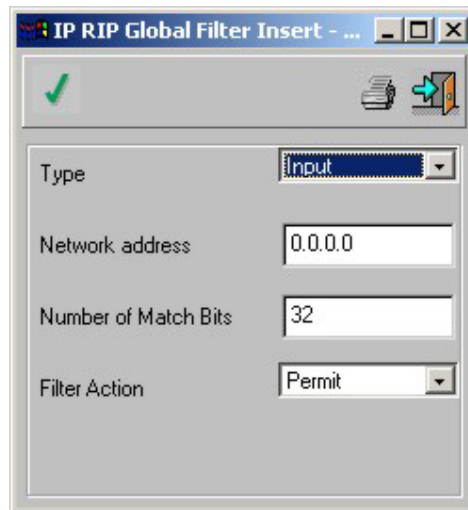
Figure 6- 96. IP RIP Global Filter Table window

The **IP RIP Global Filter Table** displays the following fields:



- **Type** – The filters type is for input or output transmissions.
- **Network Address** – The selected interface IP address.
- **Number of Match Bits** – The number of bits to match the network IP address. A value less than 32 represents a wildcard.
- **Filter Action** – This parameter is used to fine-tune other filters. For example set a filter to block all RIPS messages with net address 192.114 and set another filter entry to permit all RIP messages with the network 192.114.25. All RIP messages with the network 192.114 that do not end in 25 are blocked.
  - Permit – Whether the indicated packets should be forwarded.
  - Deny – Whether the indicated packets should be blocked

**To add a global RIP filter:**


1. Display the **IP RIP Global Filter Table**.
2. Click . The **IP RIP Filter Global Insert** window opens:

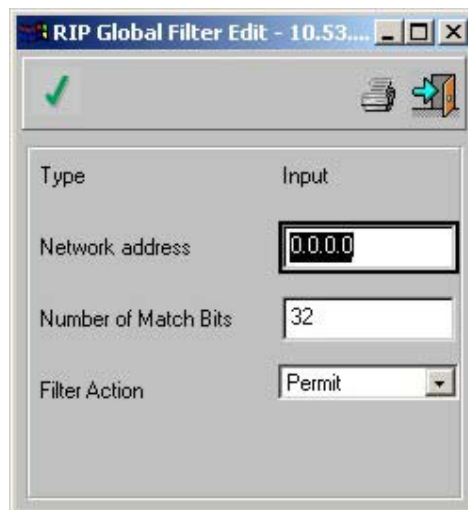


**Figure 6- 97. IP RIP Global Filter Insert window**



3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **RIP Global Filter Insert** window. The **IP RIP Global Filter Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To edit a global RIP filter:***



1. Display the **IP RIP Global Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **RIP Global Filter Edit** window opens:



**Figure 6- 98. RIP Global Filter Edit window**

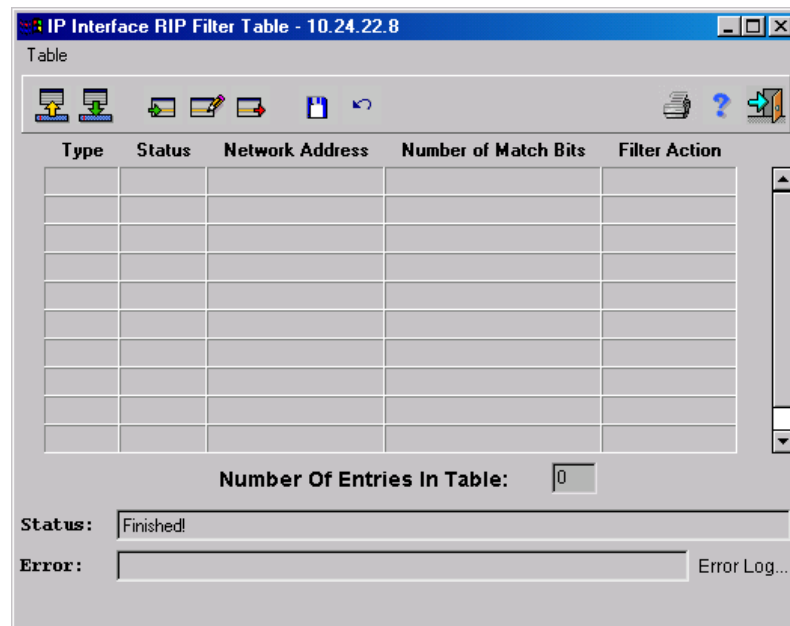
4. Modify the required fields.
5. Click .
6. Close the **RIP Global Filter Edit** window. The **IP RIP Global Filter Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To delete a global RIP filter:***

1. Display the **IP RIP Global Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To display IP Interface RIP Filter Table:***

1. Display the **IP Interface RIP Filter Table**.
2. Select a filter in the table.
3. Click **Interface Filter**. The **IP Interface RIP Filter Table** opens:



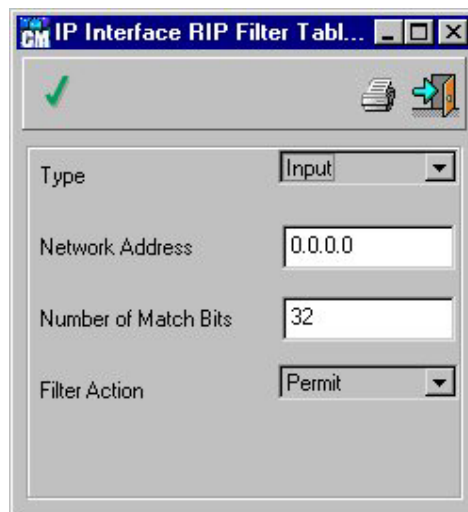
**Figure 6- 99. IP Interface RIP Filter Table window**

The **IP Interface RIP Filter Table** displays the following fields:

- **Type** – The filter is for input or output.
- **Status** – The filter is valid or not.
- **Network Address** – The IP address network.
- **Number of Match Bits** – The number of bits to match the network IP address. A value less than 32 represents a wildcard.
- **Filter Action** – This parameter is used to fine-tune other filters. For example set a filter to block all RIP messages with net address 192.114 and set another filter entry to permit all RIP messages with the network 192.114.25. All RIP messages with the network 192.114 that do not end in 25 are blocked.
  - Permit – Whether the indicated packets should be forwarded.
  - Deny – Whether the indicated packets should be blocked.



***To add a RIP interface filter:***

1. Display the **IP Interface RIP Filter Table**.
2. Click . The **IP Interface RIP Filter Table Insert** window opens:



The image shows a window titled "IP Interface RIP Filter Table Insert". At the top left is a green checkmark icon, and at the top right are icons for a printer and a document with an arrow. The main area contains four fields: "Type" with a dropdown menu showing "Input", "Network Address" with a text box containing "0.0.0.0", "Number of Match Bits" with a text box containing "32", and "Filter Action" with a dropdown menu showing "Permit".




**Figure 6- 100. IP Interface RIP Filter Table Insert window**

3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **IP Interface Filter RIP Table Insert** window. The **IP Interface RIP Filter Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.



***To edit a RIP interface filter:***

1. Display the **IP Interface RIP Filter Table**.



2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **IP Interface Filter RIP Table Edit** window opens. The **RIP Global Filter Edit** is identical to the **IP Interface RIP Filter Table Insert** window.
4. Modify the required fields.
5. Click .
6. Close the **IP Interface Filter RIP Table Edit** window. The **IP Interface RIP Filter Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To delete a RIP interface filter:***

1. Display the **IP Interface RIP Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The filter is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## **OSPF II**

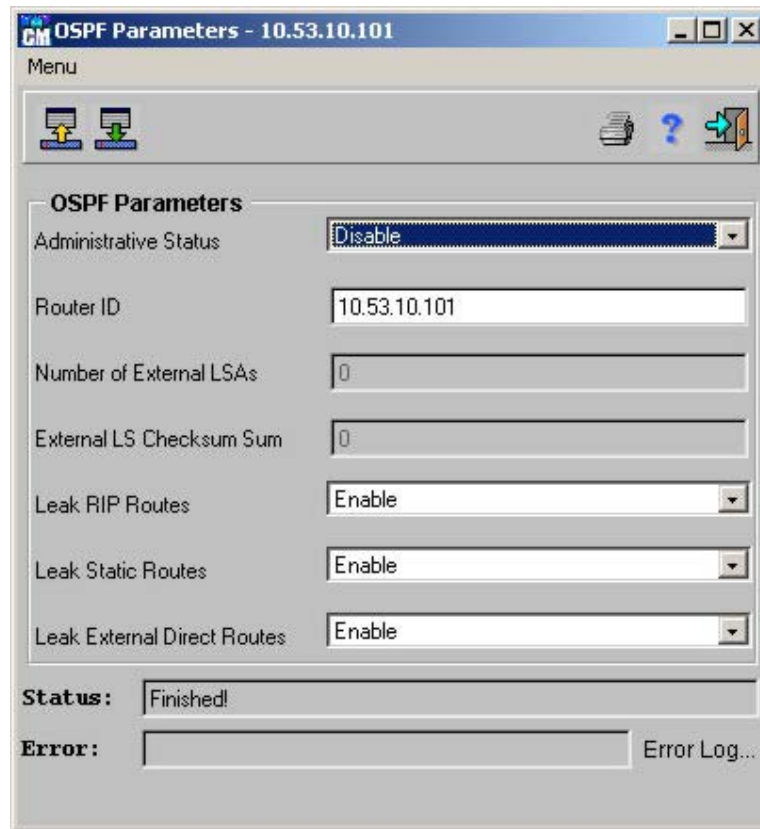
The **OSPF II** menu has the following menu options:

- Parameters
- Interface Parameters
- Area Table
- Link State Database
- External Link State Database
- Neighbors Table

### ***Parameters***

***To display OSPF parameters:***

Select **Router > IP > OSPF II > Parameters**. The *OSPF Parameters* window opens:




**Figure 6- 101. OSPF Parameters window**

The **OSPF Parameters** window displays the following fields:

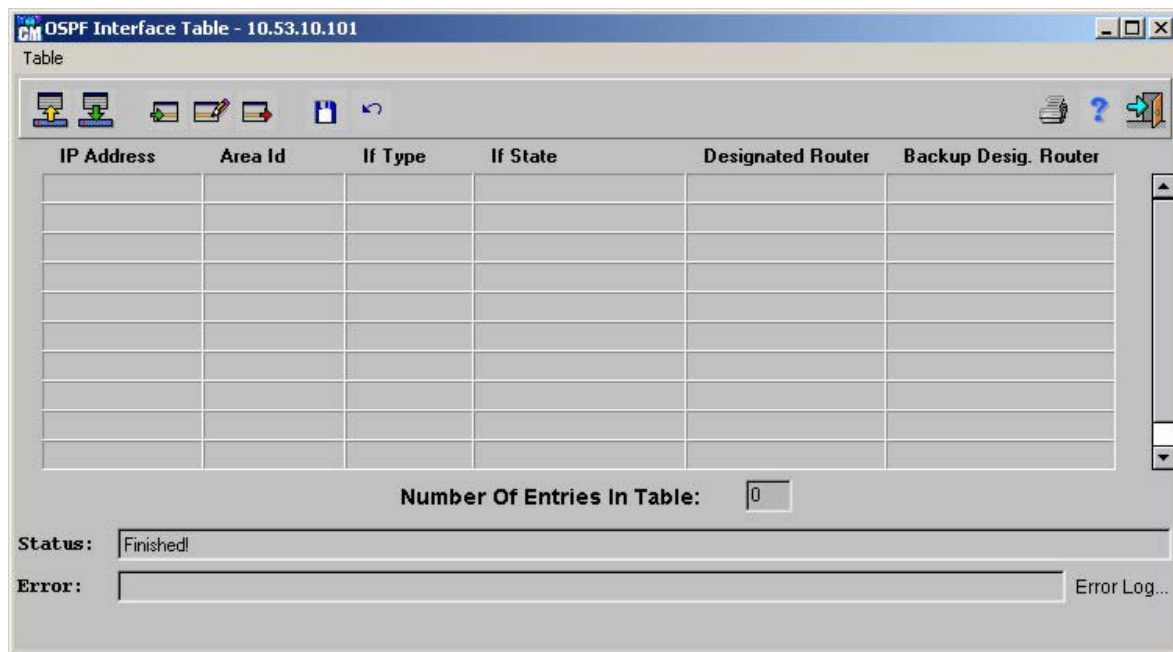
- **Administrative Status** – The OSPF administrative status in the router. The field options are the following:
  - Enable – The OSPF process is active on at least one interface.
  - Disable – The process is not active on any interface.
- **Router ID** – The router ID number. To ensure uniqueness the router ID must be equal to one of the router IP addresses. By default, the router ID takes the IP Interface Address. Reset the device to allow changes in the router ID to take effect.
- **Number of External LSAs** – The number of external Link-State Advertisements in the link-state database.
- **External LS Checksum Sum** – The sum of LS checksums of external LS advertisements contained in the LS database. Use this sum to determine if there has been a change in a router LS database, and to compare the LS database of two routers.
- **Leak RIP Routes** – Controls the route redistribution from RIP into OSPF. When this parameter is enabled, all routes inserted into the IP routing table via SNMP are advertised into OSPF as external routes.
- Controls route redistribution from static routes to RIP. When this parameter is enabled, all static routes learned via static are advertised into RIP.
- Controls direct route redistribution that is external to OSPF into OSPF. If this parameter is enabled all external routes are advertised into OSPF as external routes.

**To edit OSPF parameters:**

1. Display the **OSPF Parameters** window.
2. Modify the required fields.
3. Click . When the *Status* field displays “Finished!”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

**OSPF Interface Parameters****To display the OSPF Interface Table:**

Select **Router > IP > OSPF II > Interface Parameters**. The *OSPF Interface Table* opens:




**Figure 6- 102. OSPF Interface Table window**

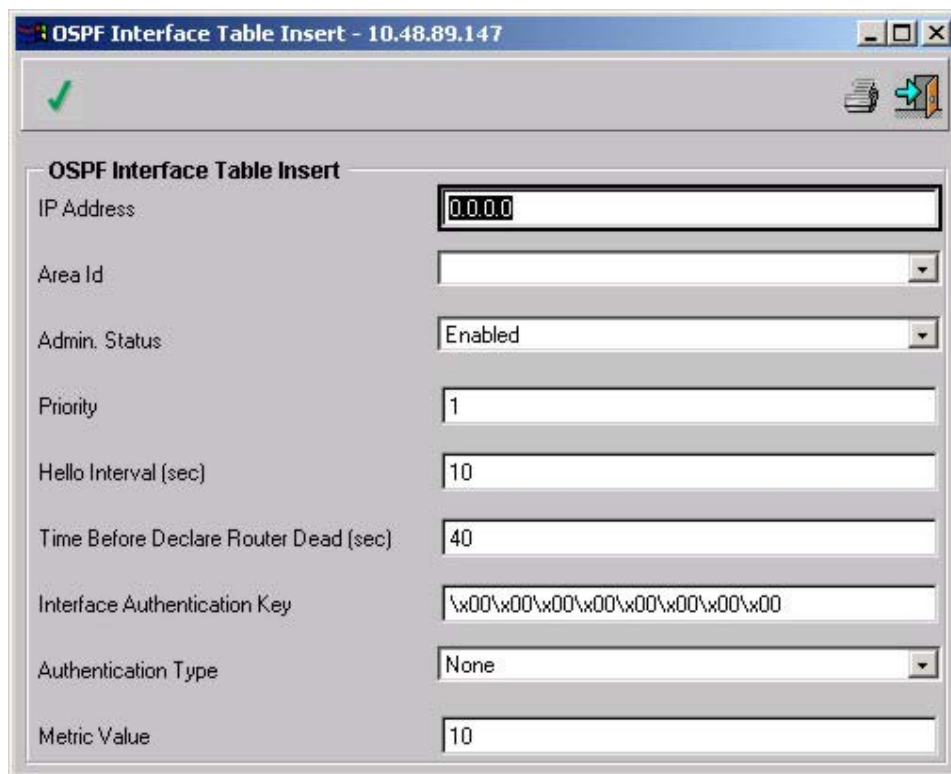
The **OSPF Interface Table** displays the following fields:

- **IP Address** – The OSPF interface IP address.
- **Area ID** – The area IP address.
- **If Type** – The interface type, such as Broadcast.
- **If State** – The OSPF interface states are the following:
  - Down – The OSPF interface is down.
  - Loopback – The OSPF interface is in a Loopback state.
  - Waiting – The OSPF interface is currently waiting.
  - Point to Point – The OSPF interface is in a point to point state.
  - Designated Router – The OSPF interface is the designated router.
  - Backup Designated Router – The OSPF interface is the backup designated router.

- Other Designated Router – Other routers are the designated and backup routers.
- **Designated Router** – The designated router IP address.
- **Backup Design. Router** – The backup designated router IP address.

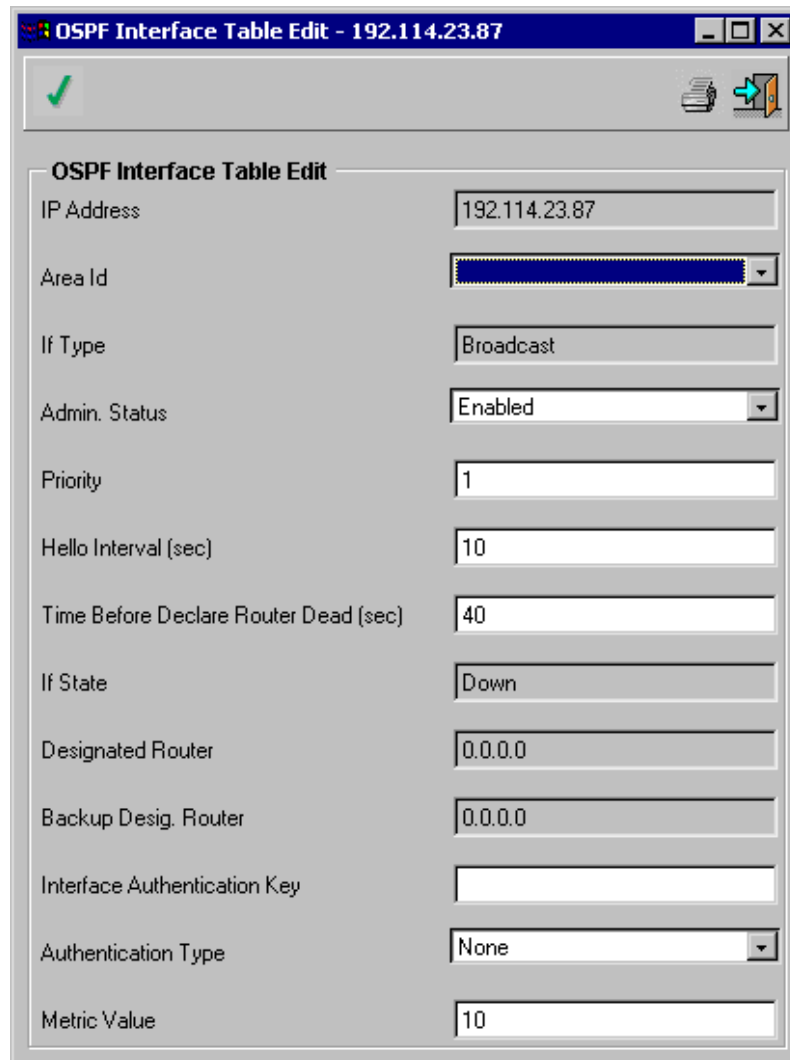
***To edit the OSPF Interface Table:***

1. Display the **OSPF Interface Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **OSPF Interface Table Edit** window opens:



The image shows a window titled "OSPF Interface Table Insert - 10.48.89.147". The window contains a form with the following fields and values:

| OSPF Interface Table Insert           |                                  |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| IP Address                            | 0.0.0.0                          |
| Area Id                               |                                  |
| Admin. Status                         | Enabled                          |
| Priority                              | 1                                |
| Hello Interval (sec)                  | 10                               |
| Time Before Declare Router Dead (sec) | 40                               |
| Interface Authentication Key          | \x00\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00\x00 |
| Authentication Type                   | None                             |
| Metric Value                          | 10                               |





| OSPF Interface Table Edit             |               |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|
| IP Address                            | 192.114.23.87 |
| Area Id                               |               |
| If Type                               | Broadcast     |
| Admin. Status                         | Enabled       |
| Priority                              | 1             |
| Hello Interval (sec)                  | 10            |
| Time Before Declare Router Dead (sec) | 40            |
| If State                              | Down          |
| Designated Router                     | 0.0.0.0       |
| Backup Desig. Router                  | 0.0.0.0       |
| Interface Authentication Key          |               |
| Authentication Type                   | None          |
| Metric Value                          | 10            |

**Figure 6- 103. OSPF Interface Table Edit window**

The **OSPF Interface table Edit** displays the following additional parameters:

- **Admin Status** – The OSPF administrative status in the router. Enabled means that the OSPF process is active on at least one interface. Disabled means the process is not active on any interface.
- **Priority** – The priority of this interface. The value 0 means that this router is not eligible to become the designated router on the current network. If more than one router has the same priority, the router ID is used.
- **Hello Interval (sec)** – The amount of seconds between Hello packets. All routers attached to a common network must have the same Hello Interval.
- **Time Before Declare Router Dead (sec)** – The number of seconds a router Hello packet has not been detected, before the router neighbors declare the router to be down. The value must be a multiple of the Hello Interval value. All routers attached to a common network must have a value specified for this parameter.
- **Interface Authentication Key** – The interface authentication key.
- **Authentication Type** – The interface authentication type. For example, a password could be used for authentication.

- **Metric Value** – The metric for this type of service on the interface.
4. Edit the required fields. The IP Address field cannot be modified.
  5. Click .
  6. Close the **OSPF Interface Table Edit** window. The **OSPF Interface Table** opens.
  7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*” the fields are confirmed as modified.

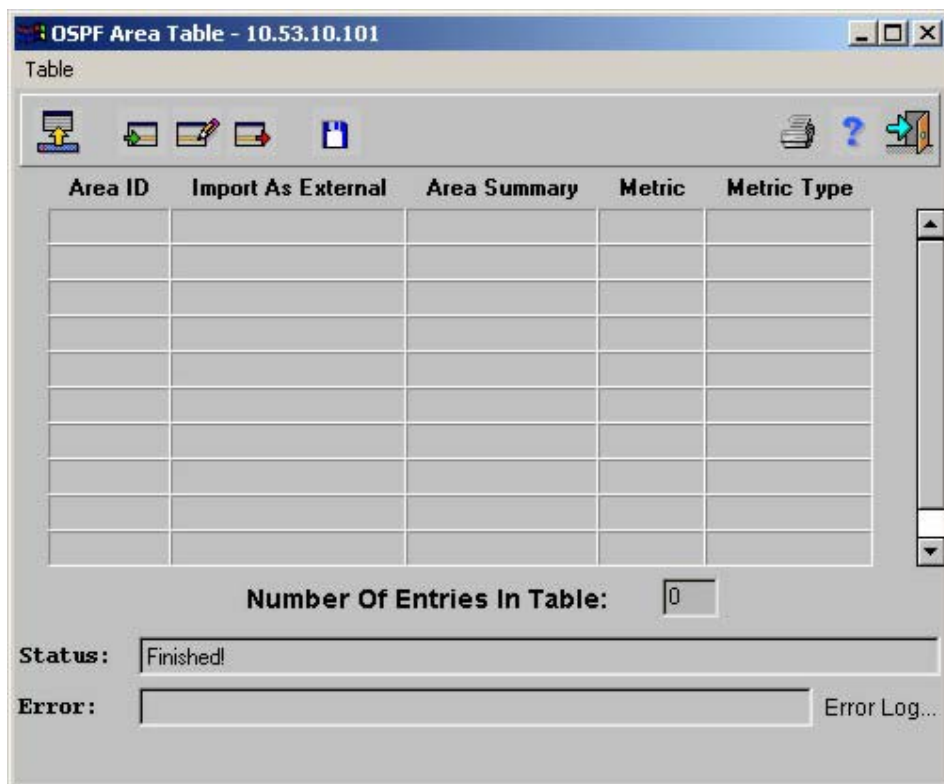
## Area Table

**Note:** A device configured to support OSPF does not support virtual links.

A device supports up to 120 IP interfaces and up to 362 neighbors on one Area. OSPF supports leaks to RIP1 and RIP2.

### To display the OSPF Area Table:

Select **IP > OSPF II > Area Table**. The *OSPF Area Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 104. OSPF Area Table window**

The **OSPF Area Table** displays the following parameters:

- **Area ID** – The area IP address.

- **Import as External** – The area support for importing as external link state advertisement.
- **Area Summary** – Controls the import of summary LSAs into stub areas. This variable has no effect on other areas.
  - **No Area Summary** – The router neither originates nor distributes summary LSAs into the stub area. It relies on its default route.
  - **Send Area Summary** – The router both summarizes and distributes summary LSAs.
- **Metric** – The metric for this type of service on the interface.
- **Metric Type** – The metric protocol type.



**To add an OSPF area:**

1. Display the **OSPF Area Table**.
2. Click . The **OSPF Area Table Insert** window opens.






The image shows a window titled "OSPF Area Table Insert - 10.53.10.101". It contains a green checkmark icon in the top left and a printer icon in the top right. The main area has several fields: "Area ID" with an empty text box, "Import As External" with a dropdown menu showing "Import External", "Area Summary" with a dropdown menu showing "Send Area Summary", "Metric" with a text box containing "1", and "Metric Type" with a dropdown menu showing "OSPF Metric".

**Figure 6- 105. OSPF Area Table Insert window**



3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **OSPF Area Table Insert** window. The **OSPF Area Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

**To edit an OSPF Area Table entry:**

1. Display the **OSPF Area Table**.
2. Select an in the table.
3. Click . The **OSPF Area Table Edit** window opens. The **OSPF Area Table Edit** is identical to the **OSPF Area Table Insert** window.

4. Edit the required fields. The Area ID field cannot be edited.
5. Click .
6. Close the **OSPF Area Table Edit** window. The **OSPF Area Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To delete an OSPF Table entry:***

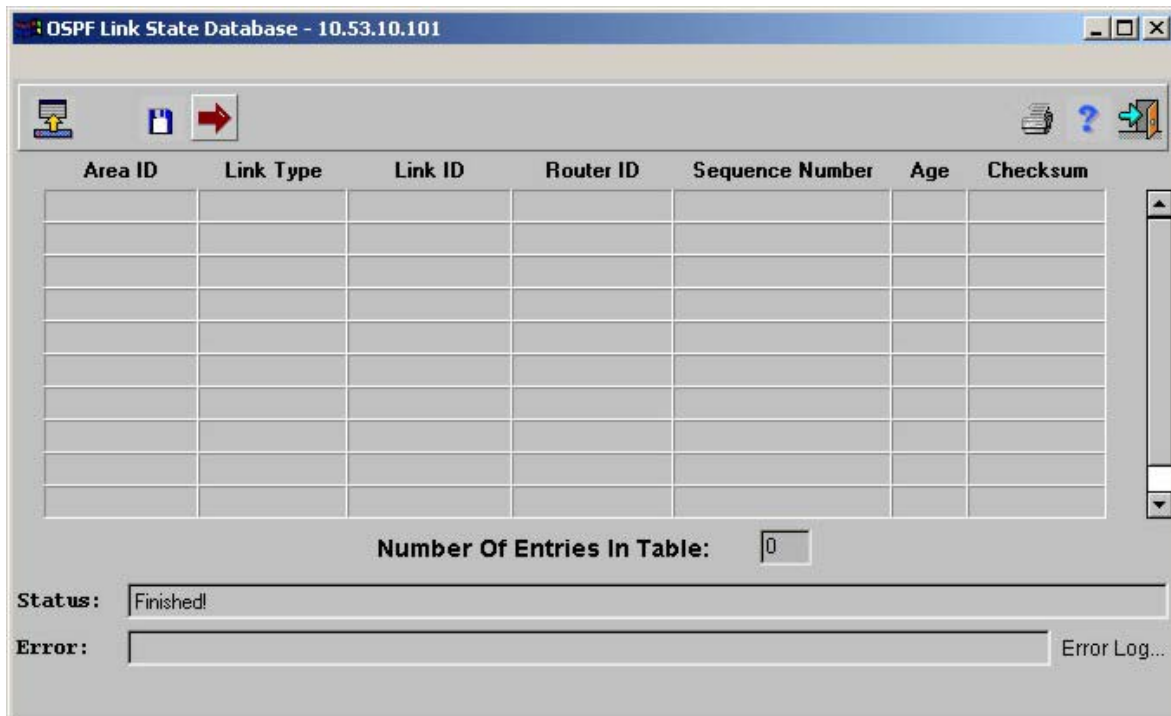
1. Display the **OSPF Area Table Edit** window.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The area is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***Link State Database***

This is a read-only command. The database cannot be modified.

***To display the Link State Database:***

Select **Router > IP > OSPF II > Link State Database**. The *Link State Database* window opens:



| Area ID | Link Type | Link ID | Router ID | Sequence Number | Age | Checksum |
|---------|-----------|---------|-----------|-----------------|-----|----------|
|         |           |         |           |                 |     |          |
|         |           |         |           |                 |     |          |
|         |           |         |           |                 |     |          |
|         |           |         |           |                 |     |          |
|         |           |         |           |                 |     |          |
|         |           |         |           |                 |     |          |
|         |           |         |           |                 |     |          |
|         |           |         |           |                 |     |          |
|         |           |         |           |                 |     |          |

Number Of Entries In Table:

Status:

Error:  Error Log...



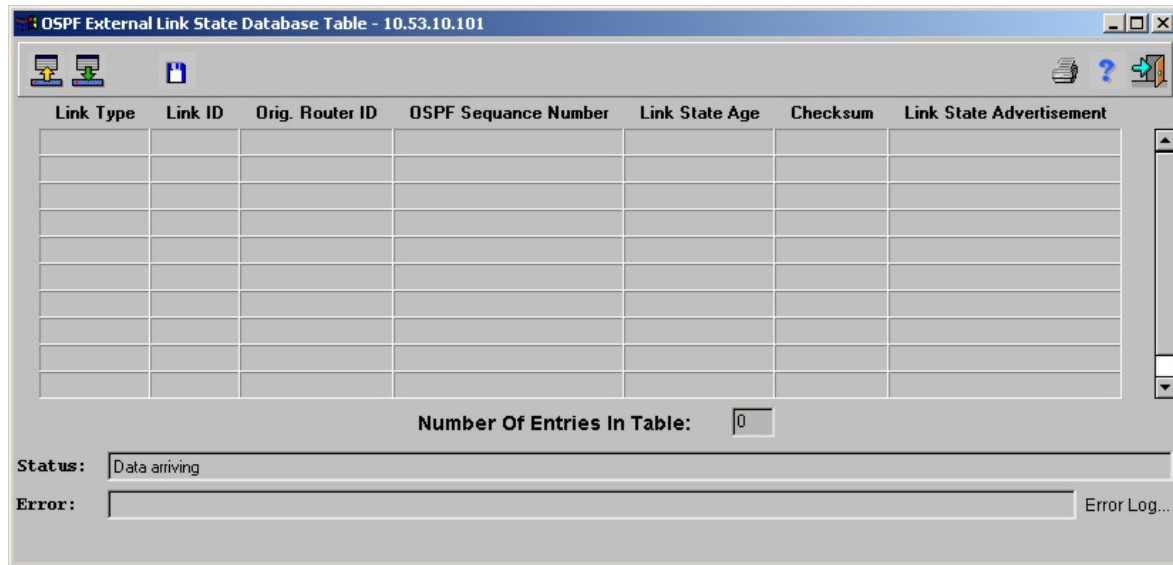
**Figure 6- 106. OSPF Link State Database window**

The **Link State Database** window displays the following parameters:

- **Area ID** – The link IP address.
- **Link Type** – Each link state advertisement has a specific format. The link is a Router Link, Network Link, External Link, Summary Link or Stub Link.
- **Link ID** – Identifies the routing domain piece described by the advertisement. It is either a router ID or an IP address.
- **Router ID** – Identifies the originating router in the autonomous system.
- **Sequence Number** – The number for the link. This parameter is used to detect old and duplicate links state advertisements. The larger the sequence number the more recent the advertisement.
- **Age** – The link age state advertisement in seconds.
- **Checksum** – This parameter is a checksum of the advertisement complete contents, excluding the Age value.

### **External Link State Database**

Select **Router > IP > OSPF II > External Link State Database**. The *OSPF External Link State Database Table* opens:

**Figure 6- 107. OSPF External Link State Database Table window**

The **OSPF External Link State Database Table** displays the following parameters:

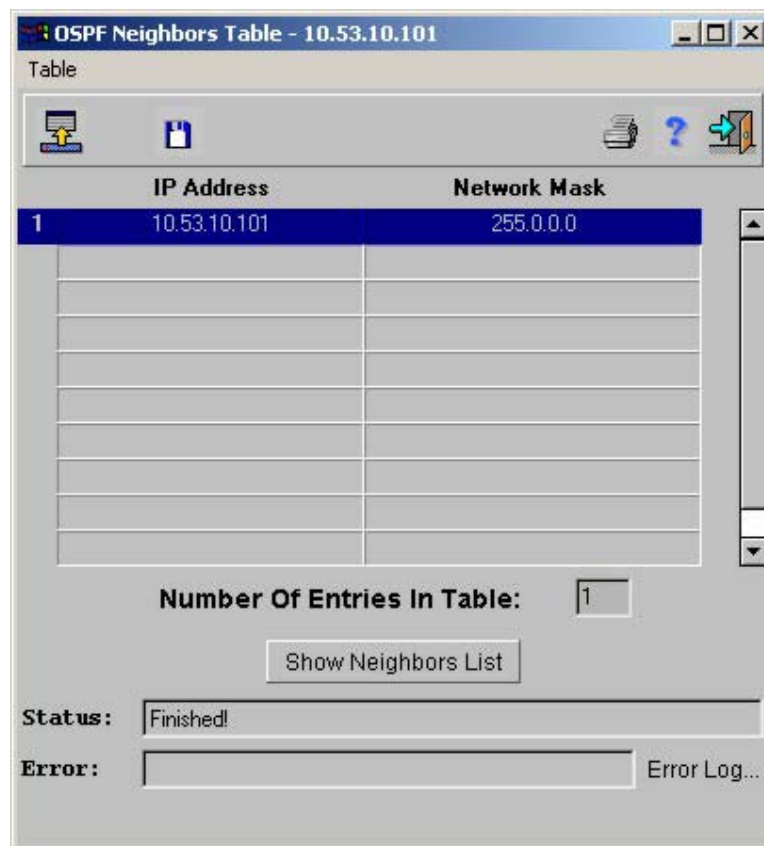
- **Link Type** – Each link state advertisement has a specific format. The link is a Router Link, Network Link, External Link, Summary Link or Stub Link.
- **Link ID** – Identifies the routing domain piece described by the advertisement. It is either a router ID or an IP address.
- **Orig. Router ID** – Identifies the originating router in the autonomous system.

- **OSPF Sequence Number** – The number for the link. This parameter is used to detect old and duplicate links state advertisements. The larger the sequence number the more recent the advertisement.
- **Link State Age** – The link state advertisement age, in seconds.
- **Checksum** – The complete advertisement contents checksum, excluding the Age.
- **Link State Advertisement** – The link state advertisement, containing the header and contents.

## **Neighbors Table**

*To display the OSPF Neighbors Table:*

Select **Router > IP > OSPF II > Neighbors Table**. The *OSPF Neighbors Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 108. OSPF Neighbors Table window**

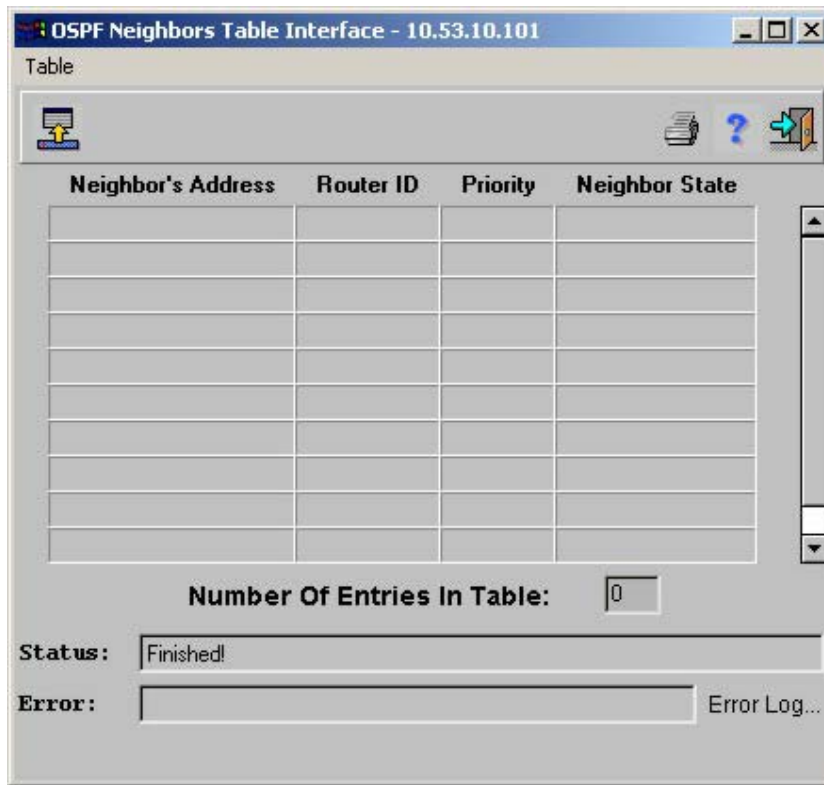
The **OSPF Neighbors Table** displays the following parameters:

- **IP Address** – The neighbor interface IP address.
- **Network Mask** – The neighbor network address interface.

*To display a selected OSPF neighbor list:*

1. Display the **OSPF Neighbors Table**.

2. Select a row in the **OSPF Neighbors Table** and click the **Show Neighbor List** button. The read-only **OSPF Neighbors Table Interface** window opens:



**Figure 6- 109. OSPF Neighbors Table Interface window**

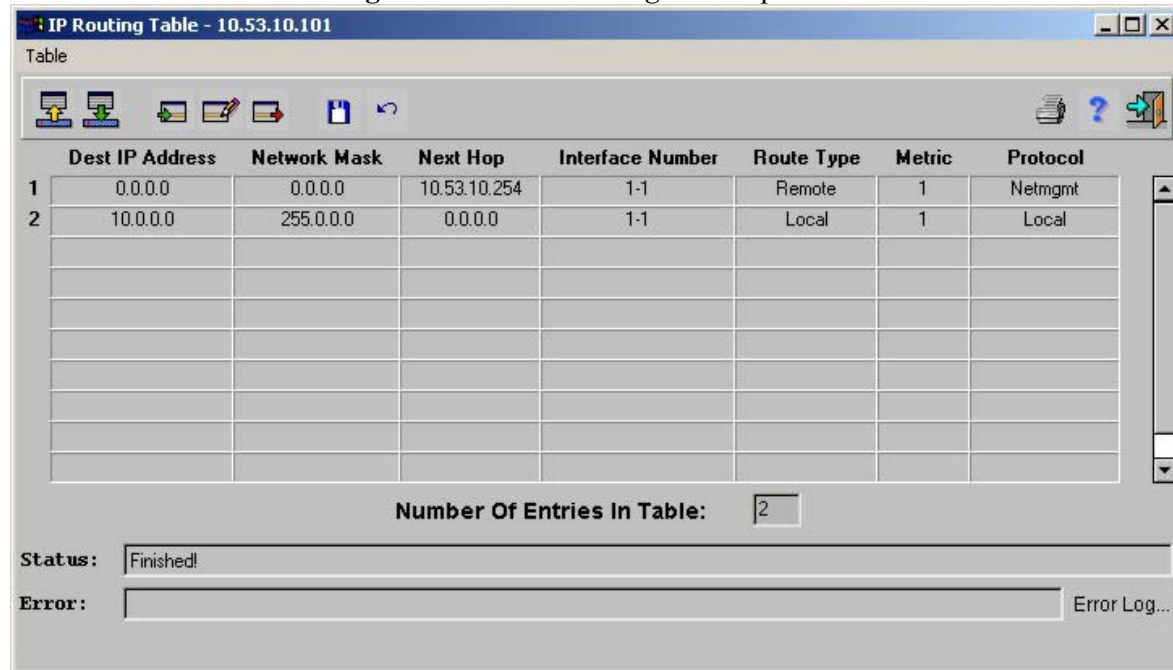
The **OSPF Neighbors Table Interface** displays the following parameters:

- **Neighbor's Address** – The neighbor IP address.
- **Router ID** – A unique neighboring router identifier in the autonomous system.
- **Priority** – The priority of this neighbor. A priority of 0 means that this neighbor is not eligible to become the designated router on this network.
- **Neighbor State** – The relationship with neighbor state. The possible values are:
  - Down
  - Attempt
  - Ini
  - Two Way
  - Exchange Start
  - Exchange
  - Loading
  - Full

## Routing Table

*To display the IP Routing Table*

Select **Router > IP > Routing Table**. The *IP Routing Table* opens:




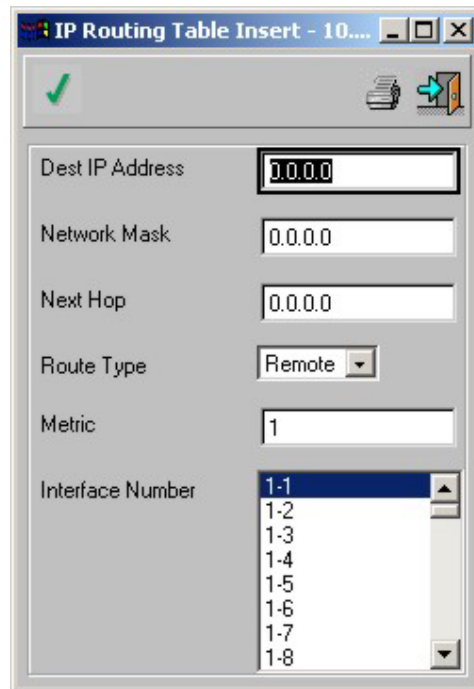
**Figure 6- 110. IP Routing Table window**

The **IP Routing Table** displays the following parameters:

- **Dest IP Address** – The destination IP address of this router.
- **Network Mask** – The destination network mask of this route.
- **Next Hop** – Address of the next system in this route, central to the interface.
- **Interface Number** – The central interface Index through which the next hop of this route is reached.
- **Route Type** – How remote routing is handled.
- **Metric** – Number of hops to the destination network.
- **Protocol** – Through which protocol the route is known.



**To add an IP Routing entry:**

1. Display the **IP Routing Table**.
2. Click . The **IP Routing Table Insert** window opens:




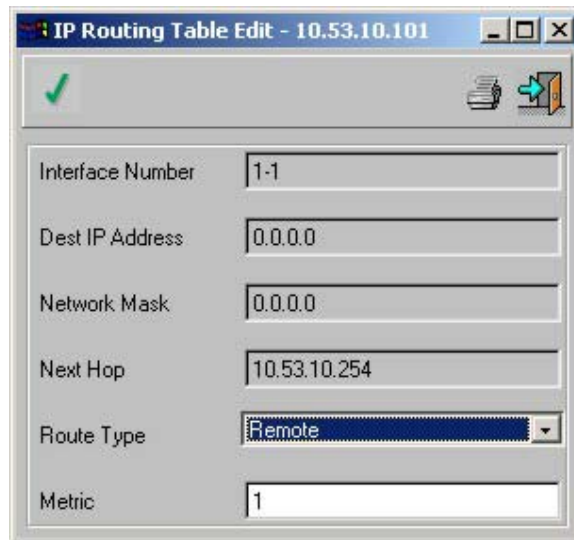
The image shows a window titled "IP Routing Table Insert - 10...". It contains several input fields and a list box. At the top left is a green checkmark icon. At the top right are icons for a document and a right-pointing arrow. The fields are: "Dest IP Address" with value "0.0.0.0", "Network Mask" with value "0.0.0.0", "Next Hop" with value "0.0.0.0", "Route Type" with a dropdown menu showing "Remote", and "Metric" with value "1". The "Interface Number" field is a list box with values "1-1", "1-2", "1-3", "1-4", "1-5", "1-6", "1-7", and "1-8", with "1-1" selected.

**Figure 6- 111. IP Routing Table Insert window**

3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **IP Routing Table Insert** window. The **IP Routing Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To edit an IP Routing entry:***

1. Display the **IP Routing Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **IP Routing Table Edit** window opens:



**Figure 6- 112. IP Routing Table Edit window**

4. Edit the required fields.



**Note:** The *Edit* command is available for remote routers only.

5. Click .

6. Close the **IP Routing Table Edit** window. The **IP Routing Table** opens.

7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

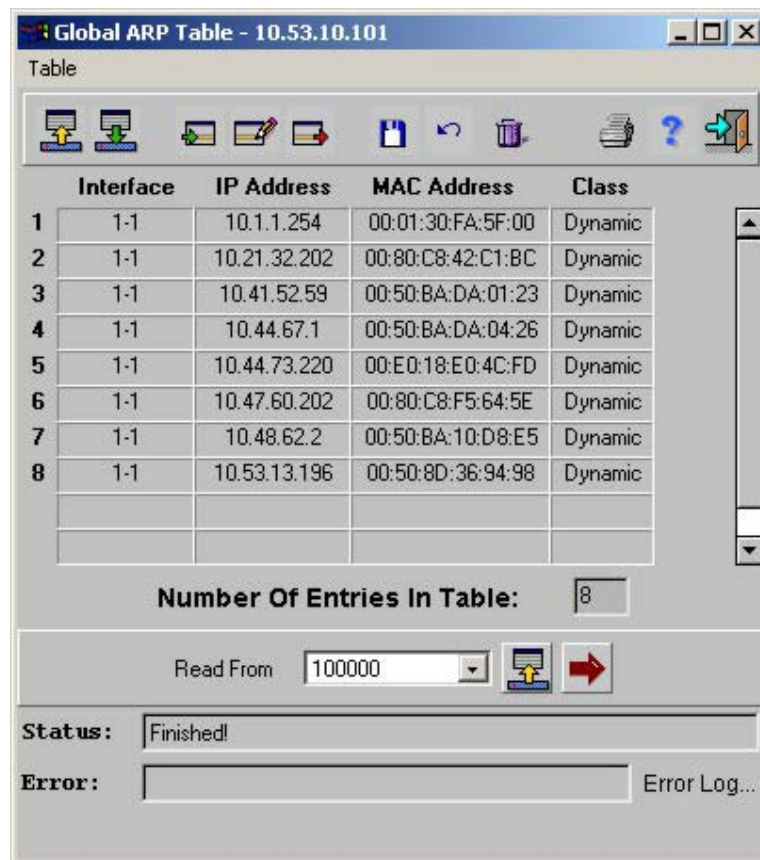
**To delete an IP Routing entry:**

1. Display the **IP Routing Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## ARP Table

**To display the Global ARP Table:**

Select **Router > IP > ARP table**. The *Global ARP Table* opens:



Global ARP Table - 10.53.10.101

Table

|   | Interface | IP Address   | MAC Address       | Class   |
|---|-----------|--------------|-------------------|---------|
| 1 | 1-1       | 10.1.1.254   | 00:01:30:FA:5F:00 | Dynamic |
| 2 | 1-1       | 10.21.32.202 | 00:80:C8:42:C1:BC | Dynamic |
| 3 | 1-1       | 10.41.52.59  | 00:50:BA:DA:01:23 | Dynamic |
| 4 | 1-1       | 10.44.67.1   | 00:50:BA:DA:04:26 | Dynamic |
| 5 | 1-1       | 10.44.73.220 | 00:E0:18:E0:4C:FD | Dynamic |
| 6 | 1-1       | 10.47.60.202 | 00:80:C8:F5:64:5E | Dynamic |
| 7 | 1-1       | 10.48.62.2   | 00:50:BA:10:D8:E5 | Dynamic |
| 8 | 1-1       | 10.53.13.196 | 00:50:8D:36:94:98 | Dynamic |
|   |           |              |                   |         |
|   |           |              |                   |         |

Number Of Entries In Table: 8

Read From: 100000

Status: Finished!


Error: Error Log...

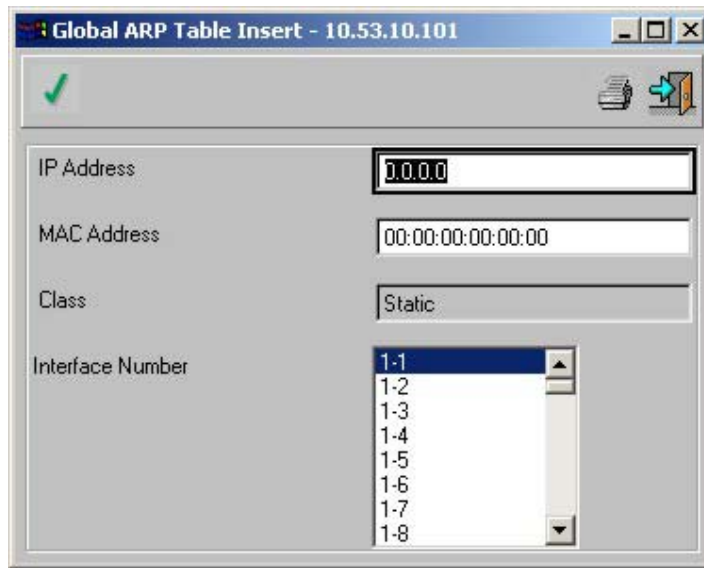
Figure 6- 113. Global ARP Table window

The **Global ARP Table** displays the following parameters:



- **Interface** – The interface number on which the station resides.
- **IP Address** – The station IP address.
- **MAC Address** – The station MAC address.
- **Class** – Entry type:
  - **Dynamic** – The entry is learned from the ARP protocol. If the entry is not active for a predetermined time, the node is deleted from the table.
  - **Static** – The entry is configured by the network management station and is permanent.

*To add a Global ARP Table entry:*


1. Display the **Global ARP Table**.
2. Click . The **Global ARP Table Insert** window opens:

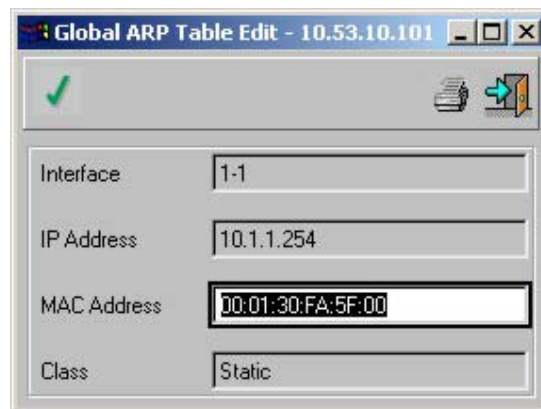


**Figure 6- 114. Global ARP Table Insert window**

3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **Global ARP Table Insert** window. The **Global ARP Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.



**To edit a Global ARP Table entry:**

1. Display the **Global ARP Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **Global ARP Table Edit** window opens:





**Figure 6- 115. Global ARP Table Edit window**



4. Edit the required fields.
5. Click .
6. Close the **Global ARP Table Edit** window. The **Global ARP Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

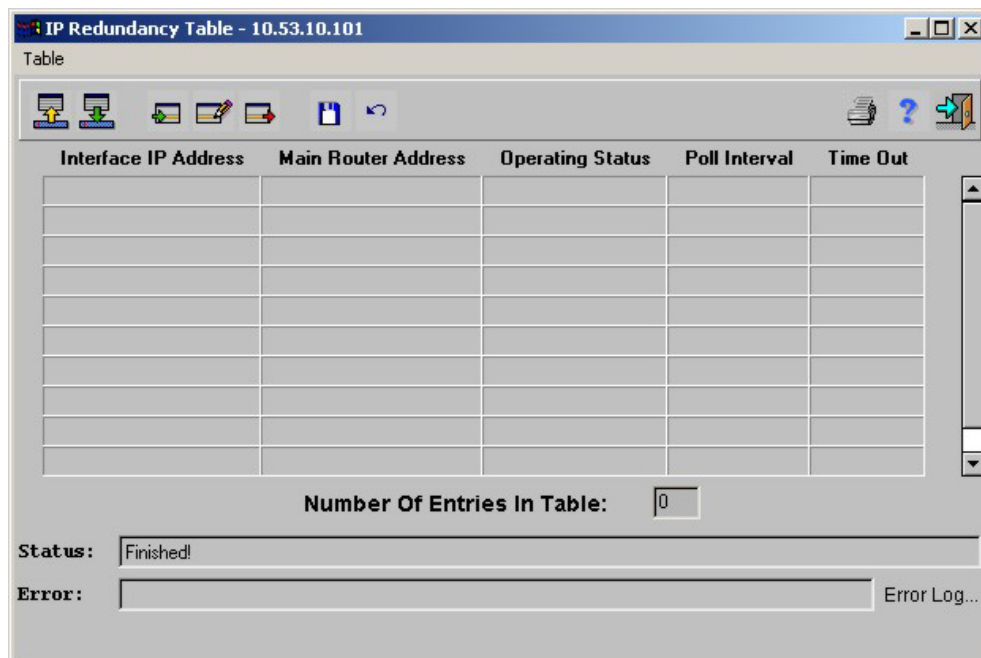
***To delete a Global ARP Table entry:***

1. Display the **Global ARP Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## IP Redundancy

***To display the IP Redundancy Table:***

Select **Router > IP > IP Redundancy**. The *IP Redundancy Table* opens:




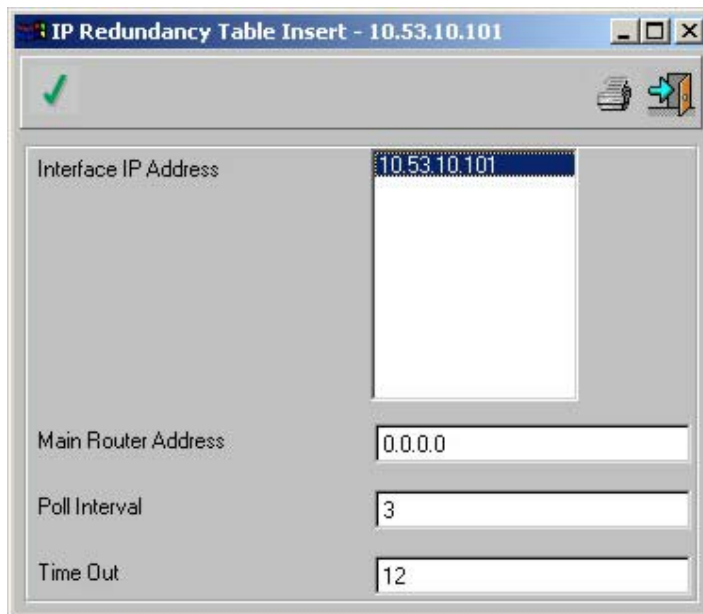
**Figure 6- 116. IP Redundancy Table window**

The IP Redundancy Table displays the following parameters:

- **Interface IP Address** – The IP address on which the redundancy feature is running.
- **Main Router Address** – The router IP address that the device is backing up.
- **Operating Status** – The entry status:
  - Active – The backup router is active on this interface.
  - Inactive – The backup router is not active on this interface.
- **Poll Interval** – This router-polling interval, in seconds. If the interval is 0 then the router is not polled.
- **Time Out** – The interval in seconds during which the router must signal. If the router does not signal within this interval it is considered non-operational. If Time Out is equal to 0, the device ignores the row.



*To add an IP Redundancy Table entry:*

1. Display the **IP Redundancy Table**.
2. Click . The **IP Redundancy Table Insert** window opens:




The image shows a window titled "IP Redundancy Table Insert - 10.53.10.101". It has a green checkmark icon in the top left and a printer icon in the top right. The window contains four input fields: "Interface IP Address" with the value "10.53.10.101", "Main Router Address" with the value "0.0.0.0", "Poll Interval" with the value "3", and "Time Out" with the value "12".

|                      |              |
|----------------------|--------------|
| Interface IP Address | 10.53.10.101 |
| Main Router Address  | 0.0.0.0      |
| Poll Interval        | 3            |
| Time Out             | 12           |



**Figure 6- 117. IP Redundancy Table Insert window**

3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **IP Redundancy Table Insert** window. The **IP Redundancy Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

*To edit an IP Redundancy Table entry:*

1. Display the **IP Redundancy Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click , and edit the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **IP Redundancy Table Edit** window. The **IP Redundancy Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.]

***To delete an IP Redundancy Table entry:***

1. Display the **IP Redundancy Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## **DHCP**

The central DHCP server acts as a relay for DHCP and BootP requests originating from remote IP subnets.

To configure the IP Router to accept DHCP requests, the ranges of available IP addresses are defined in the *Address Range Table* for every IP interface. Several ranges can be configured for each IP interface. All valid addresses available on this IP subnet interface can be specified for use, except for the IP interface address itself. The DHCP Menus has the following menu options:

- DHCP Parameters
- DHCP Address Change
- DHCP Allocation Table
- DHCP Relays Table

### ***DHCP Parameters***

The DHCP Parameters Window contains information for enabling DHCP on the device.

***To display the DHCP Parameters:***

Select **Router > IP > DHCP > DHCP Parameters**. The *DHCP Parameters Window* is displayed.

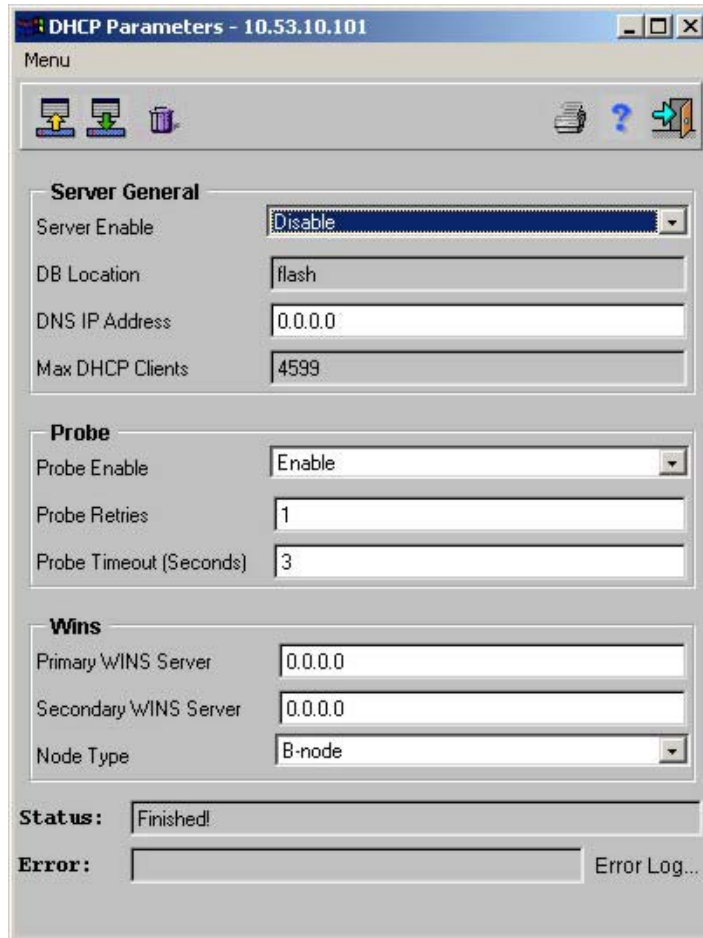



Figure 6- 118. DHCP Parameters Window

The **DHCP Parameters Window** contains the following fields:

- **Server Enable**—Enables DHCP on the device. The possible field values are:
  - *Enable*—Indicates that DHCP is enabled on the device. If DHCP is enabled, the device does not relay DHCP requests, unless the request is from device router. This is the default value.
  - *Disable*—Indicates that DHCP is disabled on the device. If DHCP is disabled, the device relays DHCP requests to the DHCP server.
- **Next Server Address**—Indicates the DHCP server IP address. The device acts as a DHCP relay if this parameter is not equal to 0.0.0.0.
- **Relay Security Threshold**—Indicates that DHCP requests are relayed only if their SEC field is greater or equal to the threshold value. This allows local DHCP servers to answer first.
- **DNS IP address**—Indicates this parameter is the DNS server IP address, and enables a consistent DHCP client name updates.
- **Probe Enable**—Enables the DHCP probe before allocating the address. The possible values are:
  - *Enable*—Enables the DHCP Probe.
  - *Disable*—Disables the DHCP Probe.

- **Probe Retries**—Indicates the amount of time (seconds) the DHCP probes before deciding that no other network device has an IP address which DHCP will allocate.
- **Probe Timeout**—Indicates the amount of time (seconds) the probe waits before issuing a new trail or deciding that no other network device has a IP address which DHCP will allocate.
- **Primary WINS Server**—Indicates the primary WINS server IP address.
- **Secondary WINS Server**—Indicates the backup WINS server IP address.
- **Node Type**—Indicates the NetBios type defines how resources are identified and accessed. There are four options:
  - *Broadcast*—Uses broadcast to resolve names. Default when WINS servers are not in place.
  - *Point-to-Point*—Uses point-to-point communications with WINS servers to resolve names.
  - *Mixed*—Uses the broadcast type first, if routers are crossed, point-to-point is used.
  - *Hybrid*—Uses point-to-point for name queries first. If this fails (i.e., the WINS server fails), broadcast is used to resolve names until the hybrid polling feature learns that the WINS server is functioning again.

***To modify the DHCP Parameters:***

1. Display the **DHCP Parameters Window**.
2. Edit the required fields.
3. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***DHCP Address Range***

The **DHCP Address Range Table** contains information for allocating DHCP addresses.

***To display the DHCP Address Range:***

Select **Router > IP > DHCP > DHCP Address Range**. The *DHCP Address Range* Table is displayed:

Table

| IP Addr If | IP Addr From | IP Addr To | Default Router | Lease Time | Probe Enable | Total Addr No. | Free Addr No. | DHCP Addr No. |
|------------|--------------|------------|----------------|------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
|            |              |            |                |            |              |                |               |               |
|            |              |            |                |            |              |                |               |               |
|            |              |            |                |            |              |                |               |               |
|            |              |            |                |            |              |                |               |               |
|            |              |            |                |            |              |                |               |               |
|            |              |            |                |            |              |                |               |               |
|            |              |            |                |            |              |                |               |               |
|            |              |            |                |            |              |                |               |               |
|            |              |            |                |            |              |                |               |               |
|            |              |            |                |            |              |                |               |               |

Number Of Entries In Table:

Status:

Error:


Error Log...

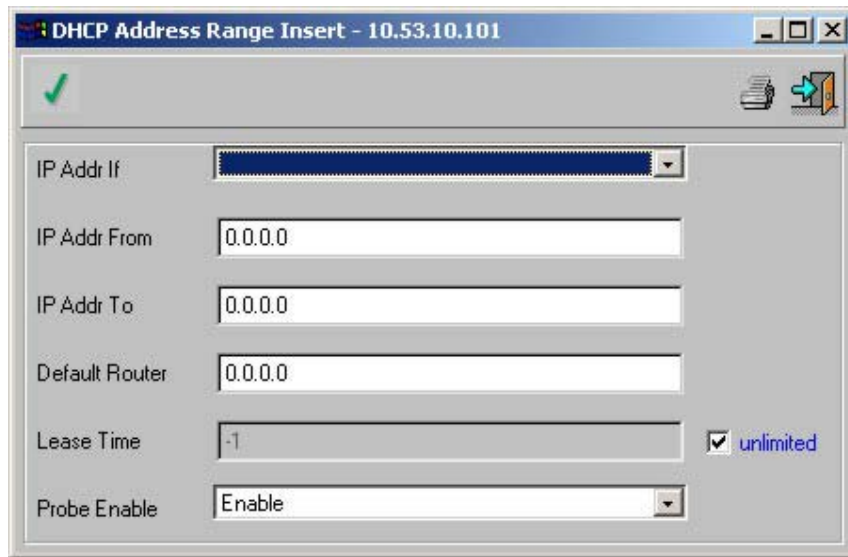
Figure 6- 119. DHCP Address Range Table

The **DHCP Address Range Table** contains the following fields:



- **IP Address Interface**—Indicates the interface IP address.
- **IP Address From**—Indicates the first IP address allocated.
- **IP Address**—Indicates the last IP address allocated.
- **Default Router**—The IP default gateway Address.
- **Lease Time**—Indicates the parameter is used to gain the maximum lease-time for a new IP address. Set this field to 0xffffffff for automatic allocation.
- **Probe Enable**—Enables automatic ICMP echo request probes of a used address before reallocation. This parameter is used to verify that the address is currently not in use by a client. The possible field values are:
  - **Enable**—Enables automatic ICMP echo request probes of a used address before reallocation.
  - **Disable**—Disables automatic ICMP echo request probes of a used address before reallocation.
- **Total Addresses Number**—Indicates the total number of available IP Addresses to choose from, including those currently in use.
- **Free Addresses Number**—Indicates the number of available IP Addresses for new allocation.
- **DHCP Addresses Number**—Indicates the number of IP Addresses currently being used by DHCP.

**To add a DHCP Address Range:**


1. Display the **DHCP Address Range Table**.
2. Click . The **DHCP Address Range Insert window** is displayed.

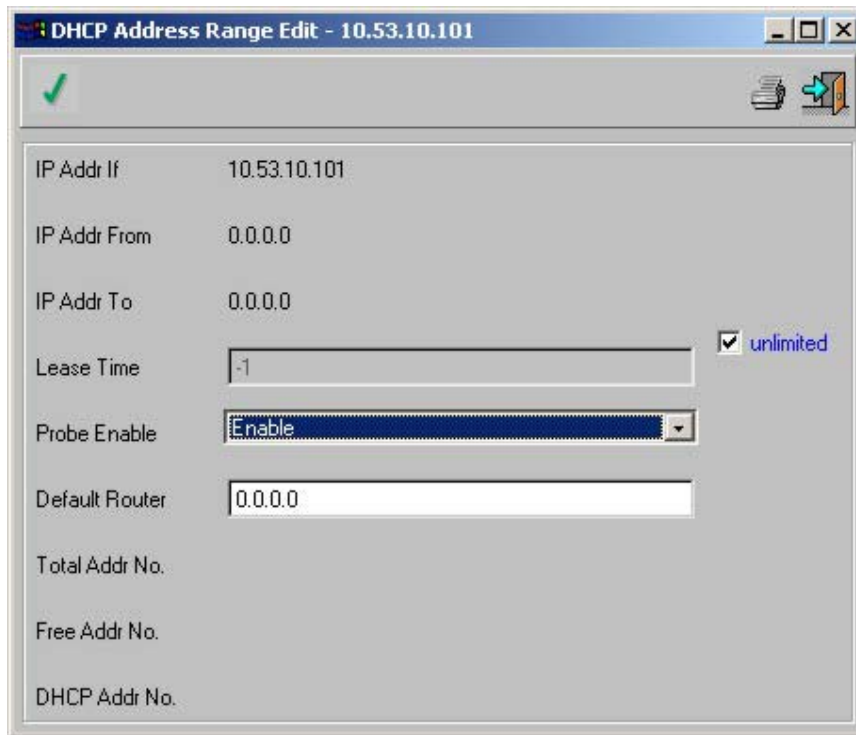


**Figure 6- 120. DHCP Address Range Insert Window**



3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the DHCP Address Range Insert window. The **DHCP Address Range** window is displayed.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To modify a DHCP Address Range:***



1. Display **the DHCP Address Range Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **DHCP Address Range Edit** window is displayed.



**Figure 6- 121. DHCP Address Range Edit Window**

4. Edit the Lease-Time, the Probe Enable, and the Default Router fields.
  - **Lease Time**—Set a value lower than 4,294,967,294 (136 years) for dynamic allocation.
  - **Unlimited**—Indicates the allocation mechanism is automatic. -1 appears in the Address Range table.
5. Click .
6. Close the **DHCP Address Range Edit** window. The **DHCP Address Range** window is displayed.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

**To delete add a DHCP Address Range:**

1. Display the **DHCP Address Range Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

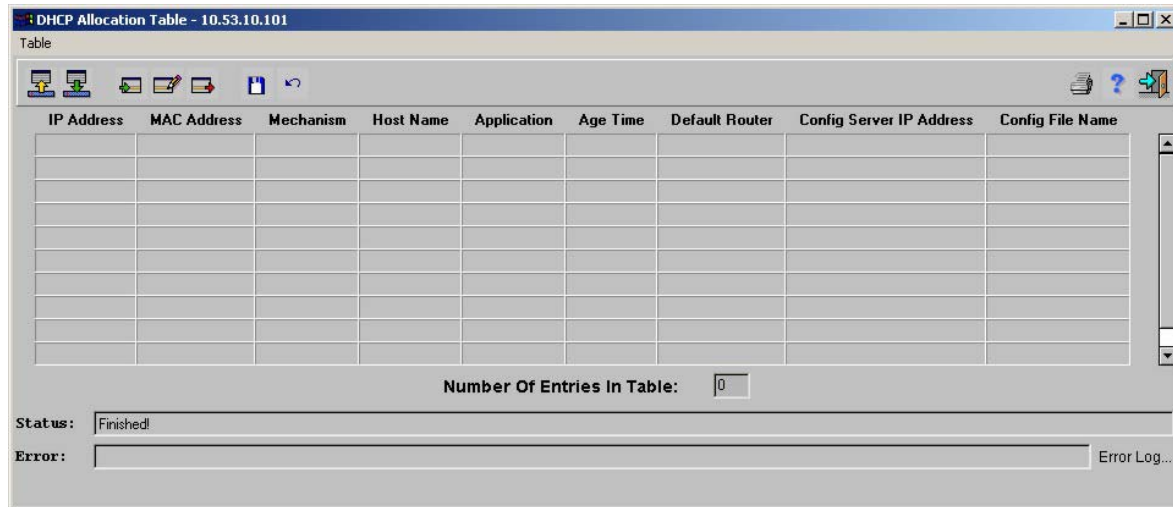


## DHCP Allocation Table

The DHCP Allocation Table contains about IP address that are allocated by DHCP.

### To display the DHCP Allocation Table:

Select **Router > IP > DHCP > DHCP Allocation table**. The *DHCP Allocation Table* is displayed:



| IP Address | MAC Address | Mechanism | Host Name | Application | Age Time | Default Router | Config Server IP Address | Config File Name |
|------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|----------|----------------|--------------------------|------------------|
|            |             |           |           |             |          |                |                          |                  |
|            |             |           |           |             |          |                |                          |                  |
|            |             |           |           |             |          |                |                          |                  |
|            |             |           |           |             |          |                |                          |                  |
|            |             |           |           |             |          |                |                          |                  |
|            |             |           |           |             |          |                |                          |                  |
|            |             |           |           |             |          |                |                          |                  |
|            |             |           |           |             |          |                |                          |                  |
|            |             |           |           |             |          |                |                          |                  |

Number Of Entries In Table: 0


Status: Finished!

Error:  Error Log...

**Figure 6- 122. DHCP Allocation Table**

The DHCP Allocation Table contains the following fields:


- **IP Address**—Indicates the IP Address allocated by the DHCP server.
- **MAC Address**—Indicates the MAC Addresses are stored in canonical bit order to match incoming DHCP requests. To match all incoming requests from host company devices centrally attached to the server, enter an all zero MAC Address.
- **Mechanism**—Indicates the server allocates IP Addresses. The DHCP server supports three mechanisms for IP allocation.
  - *Automatic allocation*—Indicates the DHCP server selects a permanent IP Address from a predefined range when a new client requests configuration.
  - *Dynamic allocation*—Indicates the DHCP server allocates an IP Address for a limited period. During this period, the Address is guaranteed this allocation, and the Dynamic allocation mechanism attempts to return to the same network each time the client requests an address.
  - *Manual allocation*—Indicates the network administrator assigns an IP Address to a client.

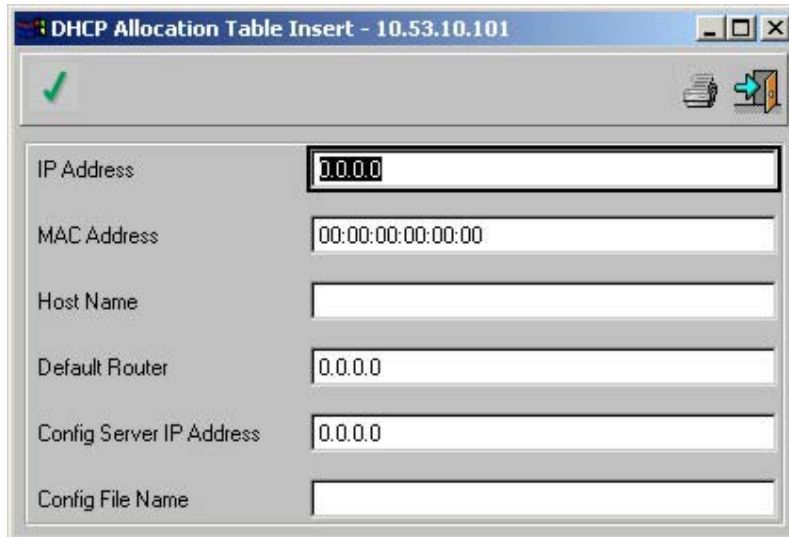
**Note:** The DHCP Address Allocation Edit option supports the Manual allocation mechanism only. Therefore, if Automatic or Dynamic allocation is defined for a particular DHCP server, its mechanism value is changed to Manual allocation after editing this server and clicking  in the Edit window

- **Host Name**—Indicates the host identity requesting the address.

- **Application**—Indicates the application that allocated the IP Address. The application is either DHCP or RIP.
- **Age Time**—Indicates the IP Address age time.
- **Default Router**—Indicates the default gateway IP Address.
- **Configuration Server IP Address**—Indicates the server address containing the TFTP configuration file to which the device relays the configuration file download request.
- **Configuration File Name**—Indicates the path and the configuration file name on the server.



**To add a DHCP Allocation Table entry:**

1. Display the **DHCP Allocation Table**.
2. Click . The **DHCP Allocation Table Insert** window is displayed.




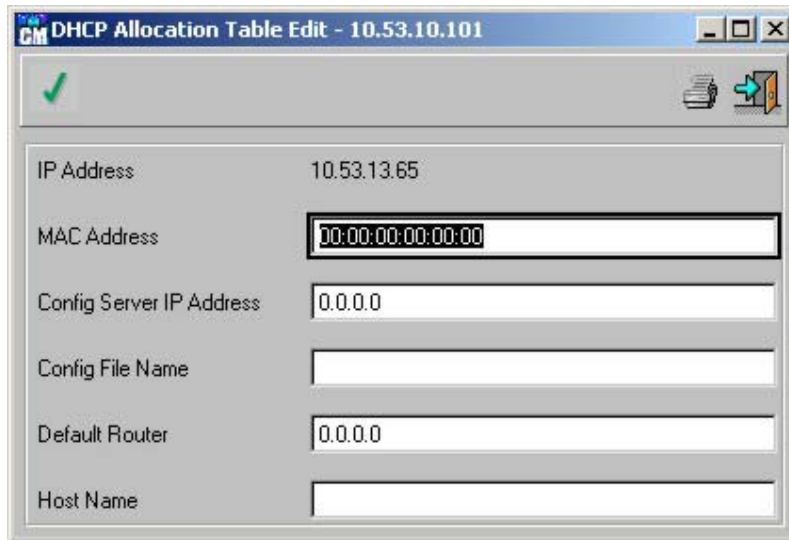
**Figure 6- 123. DHCP Allocation Table Insert Window**

The host is checked against the host name requesting the address. If the name of that Host and the value entered in the *Host Name* field of this window are identical, the IP is granted. This enhances device security.

3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **DHCP Allocation Table Insert** window. The **DHCP Allocation Table** is displayed.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.



**To modify a DHCP Allocation Table entry:**

1. Display the **DHCP Allocation Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **DHCP Allocation Table Edit** window is displayed:





|                          |                   |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| IP Address               | 10.53.13.65       |
| MAC Address              | 00:00:00:00:00:00 |
| Config Server IP Address | 0.0.0.0           |
| Config File Name         |                   |
| Default Router           | 0.0.0.0           |
| Host Name                |                   |

**Figure 6- 124. DHCP Allocation Table Edit Window**

4. Edit the fields.
5. Click .
6. Close the **DHCP Allocation Table Edit** window. The **DHCP Allocation Table** is displayed.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To delete a DHCP Allocation Table entry:***

1. Display the **DHCP Allocation Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## DHCP Relays Table

The **DHCP Relays Table** provides information for establishing a DHCP Configuration with multiple DHCP servers to ensure redundancy. IP Address are controlled and distributed one by one to avoid storming the device.

### To display the DHCP Relays Table:

Select **Router > IP > DHCP > DHCP Relays Table**. The *DHCP Relays Table* window opens:

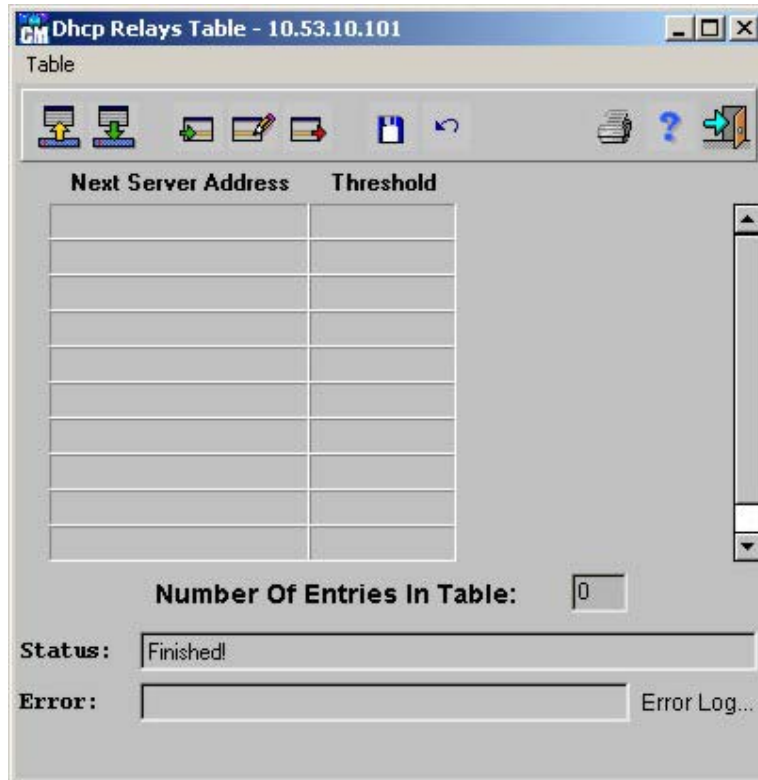



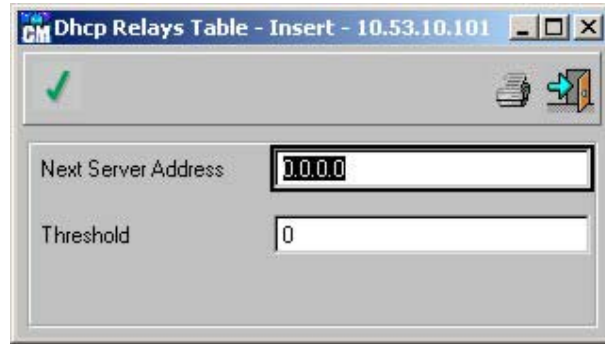
Figure 6- 125. DHCP Relays Table window

The **DCHP Relay Table** contains the following fields:



- **Next Server Address**—Indicates that DHCP requests are relayed only if their SEC field is greater or equal to the threshold value. This allows local DHCP Servers to answer first. The default value is 0.
- **Threshold**—Specifies the IP address of a configuration server. DHCP servers act as a DHCP relay if this parameter is not equal to 0.0.0.0.

### To add a DHCP Relay Table entry:



1. Display the **DCHP Relay Table**.
2. Click . The **DCHP Relay Table Insert** window is displayed.



**Figure 6- 126. DHCP Relay Table - Insert**

3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **DCHP Relay Table Insert** window. The **DCHP Relay Table** is displayed.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To modify a DHCP Relay Table entry:***

1. Display the **DCHP Relay Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **DCHP Relay Table** window is displayed.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## **VRRP**

### ***Configuring VRRP***

The *Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)* dynamically assigns responsibility for virtual routers to the VRRP routers on a LAN. This allows several routers on a multi-access link to utilize a single virtual IP address.

VRRP routers are configured to run the VRRP protocol with other routers attached to a LAN. In a VRRP setup, one router is elected as the master router with the other routers function as redundant routers. The router election process provides a fail-over for forwarding responsibility if the Master router is unavailable.

The *VRRP Operation Table* sets VRRP routing parameters. To open the *VRRP Operation Table*:

Select **Router > IP > VRRP > VRRP Operations Table**. The *VRRP Operation Table* opens.

| IfIndex | VRID | Oper State | Admin State | Priority | Master IP Address | Primary IP Address | Authentication Type | Advertisement Interval | Preempt Mode |
|---------|------|------------|-------------|----------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------|--------------|
|         |      |            |             |          |                   |                    |                     |                        |              |
|         |      |            |             |          |                   |                    |                     |                        |              |
|         |      |            |             |          |                   |                    |                     |                        |              |
|         |      |            |             |          |                   |                    |                     |                        |              |
|         |      |            |             |          |                   |                    |                     |                        |              |
|         |      |            |             |          |                   |                    |                     |                        |              |
|         |      |            |             |          |                   |                    |                     |                        |              |
|         |      |            |             |          |                   |                    |                     |                        |              |
|         |      |            |             |          |                   |                    |                     |                        |              |
|         |      |            |             |          |                   |                    |                     |                        |              |

Number Of Entries In Table: 0

Status: Finished!

Error: Error Log...


**Figure 6- 127. VRRP Operational Table**

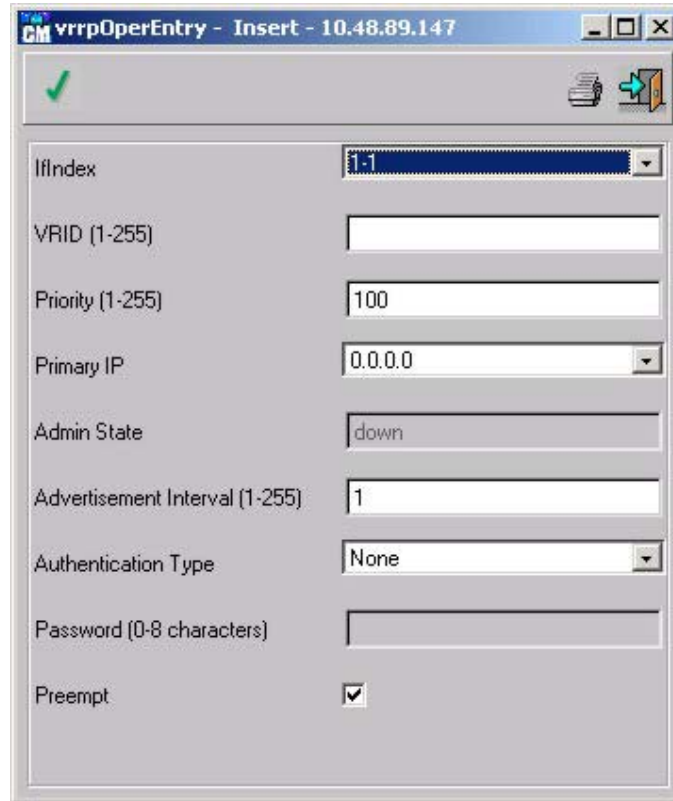
The *VRRP Operation Table* contains the following fields:

- **IfIndex**—Specifies the specific interface attached to the VRRP router.
- **VRID**—Identifies the Virtual Router Identifier.
- **Oper State**—Indicates the current router state. The possible field values are:
  - ♦ *Master*—Indicates that the router functions as the forwarding router for the IP addresses associated with the virtual router. The Master router responds to ARP requests, forwards packets with *Virtual MAC Address* (VMAC) as the destination MAC, and accepts packets associated with the virtual IP addresses.
  - ♦ *Initialize*—Indicates that the router waits for a startup event. When the startup event is received, the router transits to the appropriate state.
  - ♦ *Backup*—Indicates that the router acts as backs up to the master router. The router continuously monitors if the Master router is available. The Master router is monitored by the periodic advertisements the master sends or by specific messages sent from the master announcing that it is going down.
- **Admin State**—Indicates the router Administrative state.
  - ♦ *Up*—Indicates the router is currently up.
  - ♦ *Down*—Indicates the router is currently down. The Admin State must be set to *Down* when defining VRRP Routers.
- **Priority**—Indicates the router priority. The range is 0-255, where the default is 100. The VRRP Priority value may determine if a higher priority VRRP router overrides a lower priority VRRP router. The VRRP router that owns the IP address associated with the virtual router **MUST** have priority of 255.
- **Master IP Address**—Indicates the main virtual IP address. If the Master IP address becomes unavailable, a dynamic IP address takes over.
- **Primary IP Address**—Identifies the virtual IP address associated with the (virtual router) VRRP router that becomes the Master router, should the current (virtual router) Master router fail. The field default is 0.0.0.0. If the default primary IP address is selected as 0.0.0.0, the lowest numeric IP address is used.
- **Authentication**—Indicates the authentication type that occurs when VRRP protocols are exchanged. The possible field values are:
  - ♦ *None*—Specifies that no authentication process takes place.
  - ♦ *Password*—Specifies that passwords are used to authenticate VRRP protocol exchanges.


- **Advertisement Interval**—Indicates the rate at which advertisements are sent. The field value is in seconds.
- **Preempt Mode**—Determines if a higher priority VRRP router overrides a lower priority VRRP router. The possible field values are:
  - ♦ *Checked*—Allows higher priority VRRP routers to override lower priority routers.
  - ♦ *Unchecked*—Blocks higher priority VRRP routers from overriding lower priority routers.

**Adding VRRP Routers:**


1. Open the *VRRP Operation Table*.
2. Click . The *VRRPOperEntry Insert* window opens.



**Figure 6- 128. vrrpOperEntry – Insert window**

3. Define the *IfIndex*, *VRID (1-255)*, *Primary IP Address*, *Advertisement Interval (1-255)*, *Priority (0-255)*, *Authentication*, *Password*, and *Preempt* fields.
4. Click . The new VRRP interface is added, and the device is updated.


**Editing the VRRP Table Entry:**

1. Open the *VRRP Operation Table*.
2. Click . The *VRRPOperEntry – Edit* window opens.



The screenshot shows a web-based configuration window titled "vrrpOperEntry - Edit - 10.48.89.147". The window has a green checkmark icon in the top left and a save icon in the top right. The form contains the following fields and values:

|                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| IfIndex                        | 1-1                                 |
| VRID (1-255)                   | 2                                   |
| Priority (1-255)               | 100                                 |
| Primary IP                     | 0.0.0.0                             |
| Master IP                      | 0.0.0.0                             |
| State                          | initialize                          |
| Admin State                    | down                                |
| Advertisement Interval (1-255) | 1                                   |
| Authentication Type            | None                                |
| Password (0-8 characters)      |                                     |
| Preempt                        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |

**Figure 6- 129. vrrpOperEntry – Edit window**

3. Modify the *VRID (1-255)*, *Primary IP Address*, *Advertisement Interval (1-255)*, *Priority (0-255)*, *Authentication*, *Password*, and/or *Preempt* fields.
4. Click . The new VRRP interface is added, and the device is updated.

**Deleting a VRRP Entry:**

1. Open the *VRRP Operation Table*.
2. Select a *VRRP Table* entry.
3. Click .
4. Click . The VRRP entry is deleted, and the device is updated.

**Adding Virtual IP Addresses**

The *VRRP Association Table* enables associating selected interfaces with virtual routers based on the virtual router ID and the IP address. To open the *VRRP Association Table*:

Select **Router > IP > VRRP > VRRP Association Table**. The *VRRP Association Table* opens.






**Figure 6- 130. VRRP Association Table**

The *VRRP Association Table* contains the following fields:

- **IfIndex**—Specifies the interface to which the VRRP ID and IP address is attached.
- **VRID**—Identifies the Virtual Router Identifier attached to the selected interface.
- **IP Address**—Indicates virtual router IP address that is attached to the interface.


***Adding a VRRP Interface:***

1. Open the *VRRP Association Table*.
2. Click . The *VRRP AssoIPAddrEntry – Insert* window opens.





**Figure 6- 131. vrrpAssoIpAddrEntry – Insert window**

3. Define the *IfIndex*, *VRID*, and *IP Address* fields.

4. Click . The VRRP interface is defined, and the device is updated.

***Deleting a VRRP Association Table Entry:***

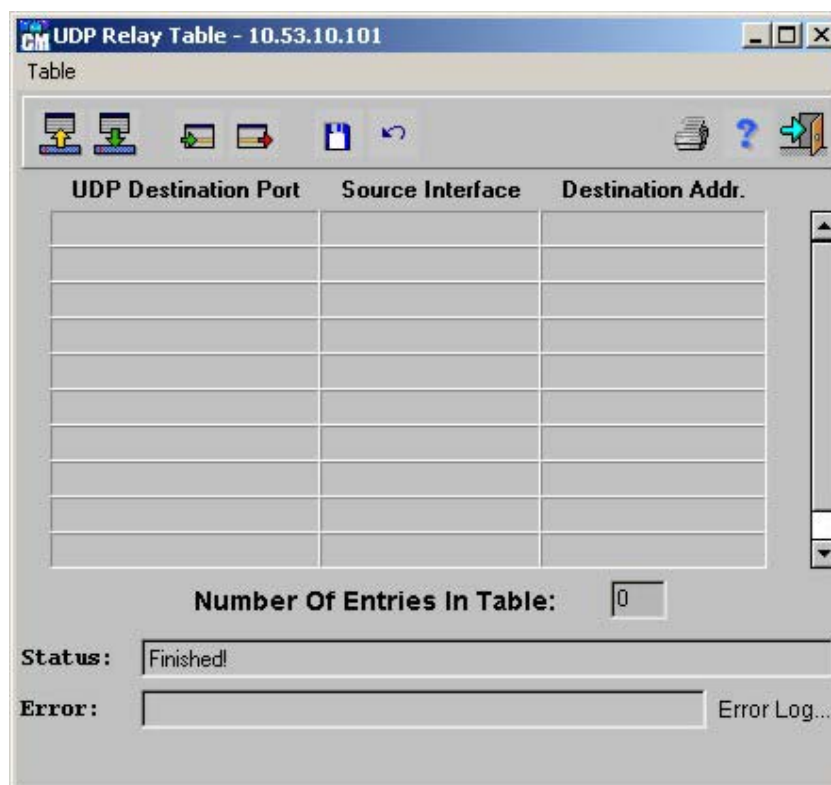
1. Open the *VRRP Association Table*.
2. Select a *VRRP Association Table* entry.
3. Click .
4. Click . The *VRRP Association Table* entry is deleted, and the device is updated.

## UDP Relay

A device supports UDP Relay to allow UDP packets to reach other networks. This feature enables browsing from NT workstations to NT-servers on different networks.

***To display the UDP Relay Table:***

Select **Router > IP > UDP Relay**. The *UDP Relay Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 132. UDP Relay Table window**

The **UDP Relay Table** displays the following parameters:

- **UDP Destination Port** – The destination UDP port ID number of UDP packets to be relayed. The following table lists UDP Port allocations.

**Note:** UDP Ports 137 and 138 are the most commonly used.

**UDP Ports**

| UDP Port # | Acronym                | Application                      |
|------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 7          | ECHO                   | Echo                             |
| 11         | USERS                  | Active Users                     |
| 13         | DAYTIME                | Daytime                          |
| 15         | NETSTAT                | Netstat                          |
| 17         | QUOTE                  | Quote Of The Day                 |
| 19         | CHARGEN                | Character Generator              |
| 37         | TIME                   | Time                             |
| 42         | NAMESERVER             | Host Name Server                 |
| 43         | NICNAME                | Who Is                           |
| 53         | DOMAIN                 | Domain Name Server               |
| 67         | BOOTPS                 | Bootstrap Protocol Server        |
| 68         | BOOTPC                 | Bootstrap Protocol Client        |
| 69         | TFTP                   | Trivial File Transfer            |
| 111        | SUNRPC                 | Sun Microsystems Rpc             |
| 123        | NTP                    | Network time                     |
| 137        | NetBiosNameService     | NT Server to Station Connections |
| 138        | NetBiosDatagramService | NT Server to Station Connections |
| 139        | NetBios SessionService | NT Server to Station Connections |
| 161        | SNMP                   | Simple Network Management        |
| 162        | SNMP                   | Simple Network Management Traps  |
| 513        |                        | Unix Rwho Daemon                 |
| 514        | Syslog                 | System Log                       |
| 525        | Timed                  | Time Daemon                      |

**Table 6- 1. UDP Ports**


- **Source Interface** – The input IP interface that relays UDP packets. If this field is 255.255.255.255, UDP packets from all interfaces are relayed. The following address ranges are invalid
  - 0.0.0.0 to 0.255.255.255
  - 127.0.0.0 to 127.255.255.255
- **Destination Addr.** – The IP interface that receives UDP frame relays. If this field is 0.0.0.0, UDP packets are discarded. If this field is 255.255.255.255, UDP packets are flooded to all IP interfaces.

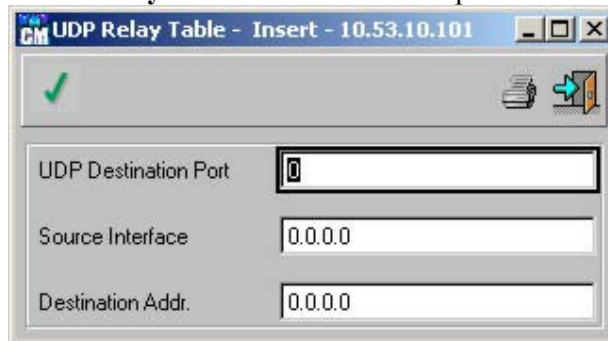
An example of UDP Relay table use: To relay all UDP packets to interface 7.7.7.7 arriving at UDP port 138, while discarding those packets which come from the Source IP Addresses 1.1.1.1 and 2.2.2.2, type in these table entries:

| Port | Source  | Destination |
|------|---------|-------------|
| 138  | 1.1.1.1 | 0.0.0.0     |



|     |                 |         |
|-----|-----------------|---------|
| 138 | 2.2.2.2         | 0.0.0.0 |
| 138 | 255.255.255.255 | 7.7.7.7 |

**To add a UDP Relay Table entry:**



1. Display the **UDP Relay Table**.
2. Click . The **UDP Relay Table Insert** window opens:

A screenshot of the 'UDP Relay Table - Insert - 10.53.10.101' window. The window has a title bar with the text 'CM UDP Relay Table - Insert - 10.53.10.101'. Inside, there is a green checkmark icon in the top left and a printer icon in the top right. Below these are three input fields: 'UDP Destination Port' with the value '0', 'Source Interface' with the value '0.0.0.0', and 'Destination Addr.' with the value '0.0.0.0'.

**Figure 6- 133. UDP Relay Table - Insert window**

3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **UDP Relay Table Insert** window. The **UDP Relay Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

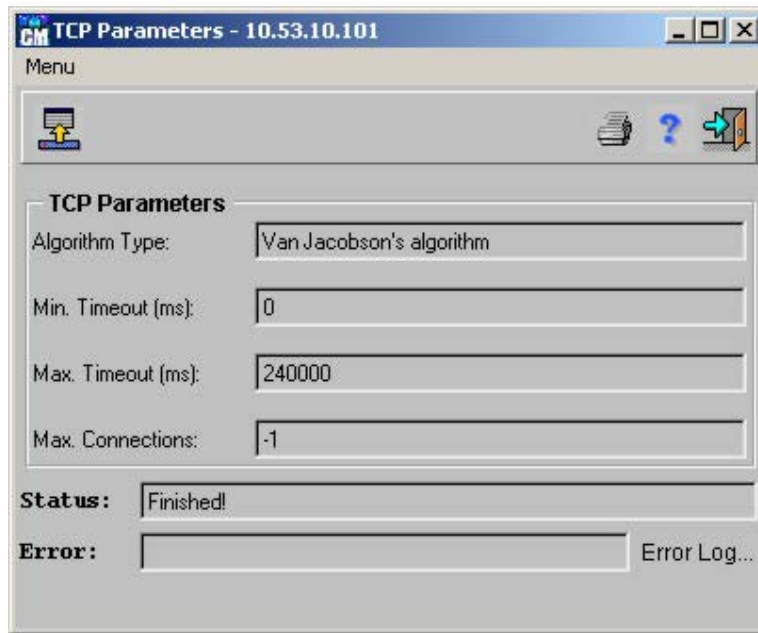
**To delete a UDP Relay Table entry:**

1. Display the **UDP Relay Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## TCP General Parameters

**To display the TCP Parameters Table:**

Select **Router > IP > TCP General Parameters**. The *TCP Connections Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 134. TCP Parameters window**

The **TCP Parameters** window displays the following parameters:

- **Algorithm Type** – The Algorithm used to determine the timeout value used for re-transmitting unacknowledged octets.
- **Min. Timeout (ms)** – The minimum value permitted by a TCP implementation for the re-transmission timeout, measured in milliseconds.
- **Max. Timeout (ms)** – The maximum value permitted by a TCP implementation for the re-transmission timeout, measured in milliseconds.
- **Max. Connections** – The limit on the total number of TCP connections the entity can support. In entities where the maximum number of connections is dynamic, this object contains the value –1.

## TCP Connections Table

*To display the TCP Connections Table:*

Select **Router > IP > TCP Connection Table**. The *TCP Connections Table* opens:

|   | Local Address | Local Port | Remote Address | Remote Port | Connection State |
|---|---------------|------------|----------------|-------------|------------------|
| 1 | 0.0.0.0       | 7          | 0.0.0.0        | 0           | listen           |
| 2 | 0.0.0.0       | 23         | 0.0.0.0        | 0           | listen           |
| 3 | 0.0.0.0       | 80         | 0.0.0.0        | 0           | listen           |
| 4 | 10.53.10.101  | 80         | 10.53.13.196   | 1993        | established      |
|   |               |            |                |             |                  |
|   |               |            |                |             |                  |
|   |               |            |                |             |                  |
|   |               |            |                |             |                  |
|   |               |            |                |             |                  |
|   |               |            |                |             |                  |

Number Of Entries In Table: 4

Status: Finished!



Error: Error Log...

Figure 6- 135. TCP Connections Table window

The TCP Connections Table window displays the following parameters:

- **Local Address** – Indicates the local IP address for this TCP connection. IF the connection in the *Listen* state, the value 0.0.0.0 is used. The device accepts connections for any IP interface associated with the node.
- **Local Port** – Indicates the local port number for this TCP connection.
- **Remote Address** – Indicates the remote IP address for this TCP connection.
- **Remote Port** – The remote port number for this TCP connection.
- **Connection State** – Indicates the status of this TCP connection. The only value set by a management station is *DeleteTCB* (TCP Control Block). This is done by deleting the specific entry using the management system.

**To delete a TCP Connection Table entry:**

1. Display the **TCP Parameters** window.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## IPM

Multicast routing occurs when IP routers determine how to forward multicast IP packets, either from a specific multicast group to a source or from a nonspecific source to a multicast group.

The **IPM** menu option has the following menu options:

- Operating Parameters
- IGMP
- Filter
- PIM
- IPM Routing

### IPM Operating Parameters

The **IPM Operating Parameters** window enables IPM Routing on a device.

*To display the IPM Operating Parameters window:*

Select **Router > IPM > Operating Parameters**. The *IPM Operating parameters* window opens:

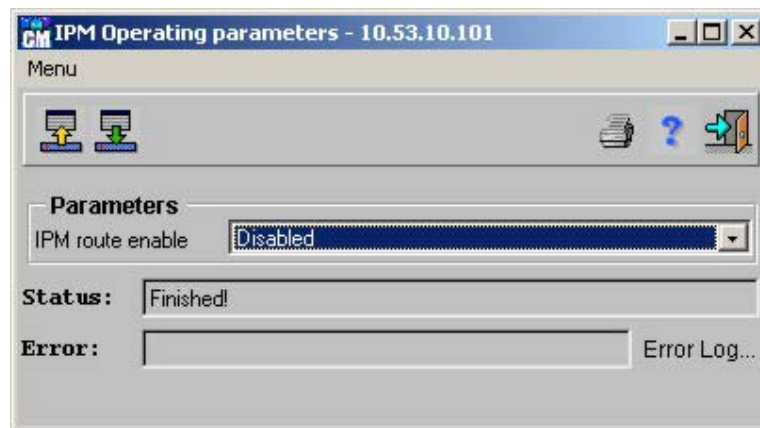



Figure 6- 136. IPM Operating parameters window

The **IPM Operating parameters** window displays the following field:

- **IPM routing enable** – Enables IPM routing on a device. *Disabled* is the default.

*To enable IPM routing on a device:*

1. Display the **IPM Operating Parameters** window.
2. Set the IPM Routing status to *Enabled*.
3. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, IPM Routing is enabled on the device.

## IGMP

The Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) establishes host memberships within a multicast group. IGMP allows devices to notify routers that they can receive multicast packets addressed to specific multicast groups.

**Note:** Ports belonging to a VLAN without IGMP membership are not forwarded multicast traffic.

The **IGMP** menu has the following menu options:

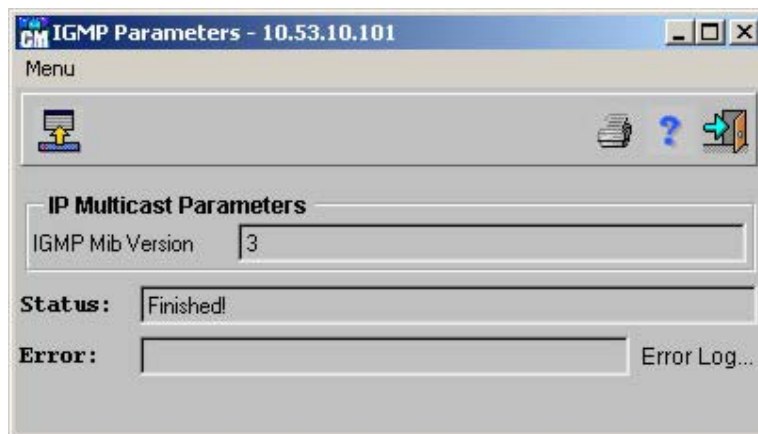
- IGMP Operating Parameters]
- IGMP Interface Table.
- IGMP Cable Table

### ***IGMP Operating Parameters***

The **IPM Operating Parameters** window displays information regarding IGMP MIB software version.

**To display the IGMP Operating Parameters window:**

Select **Router > IPM > IGMP > Parameters**. The *IGMP Parameters Window* displays:



**Figure 6- 137. IGMP Parameters Window**

The **IGMP Parameters** window contains the following fields:

- **IGMP Mib Version** – Indicates the MIB software version.

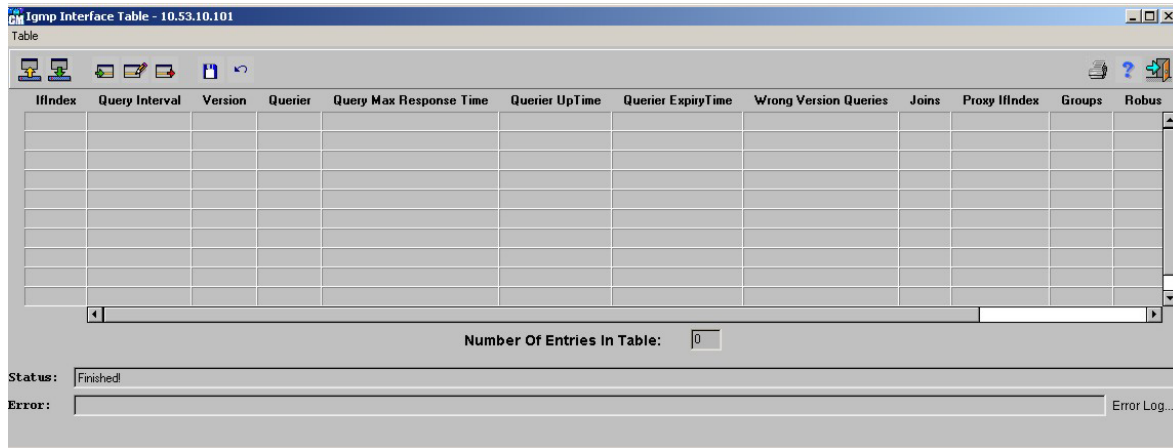
### ***IGMP Interface Table***

The **IGMP Interface Table** contains IGMP information for which IGMP is currently enabled.

**To display the IGMP Interface Table:**

Select **Router > IPM > IGMP > Interface Table**. The *IGMP Interface Table* opens:





**Figure 6- 138. IGMP Interface Table window**

The **IGMP Interface Table** displays the following fields:

- **IfIndex** – Identifies the port number for which IGMP is enabled.
- **Query Interval** – Indicates the amount of time in seconds that querier messages are transmitted. Network managers can adjust the amount of IGMP messages sent on sub-networks by adjusting the value of the Query Interval. The larger value, the less often IGMP messages are sent. The default value is 125 seconds.
- **Version** – Indicates the current software version of IGMP. The default software version is 2.

**Note:** All routers on a LAN must be configured to the same IGMP software version.


- **Querier** – Indicates the IGMP Querier on the IP subnet. The multicast router with the lowest IP address is the multicast querier.
- **Query Max Response Time** – Indicates the maximum response time for advertising IGMP queries. Query Max Response time adjusts the amount of traffic on a per sub-network basis. Varying the response time effects the burstiness of network traffic. The higher the value the longer period of time passes between host responses. The default value is 10 seconds.

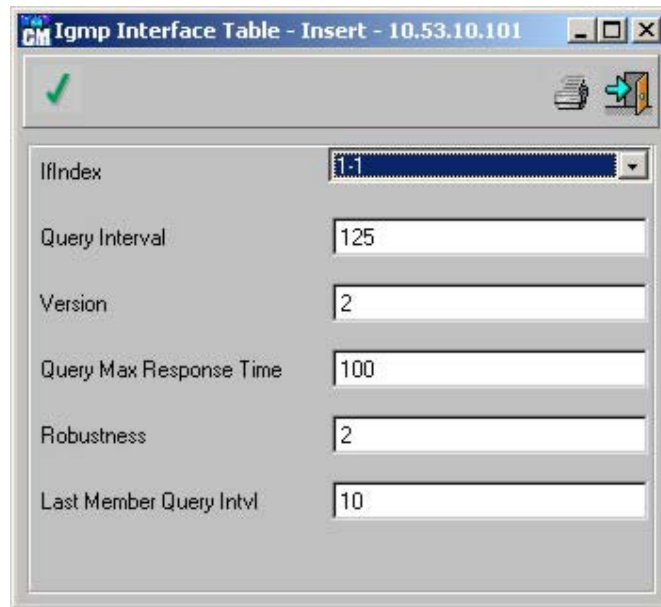
**Note:** The Query Max Response Time must be less than the Query Interval.

- **Querier UpTime** – Indicates the amount of time in ticks since the querier was last changed.
- **Querier Expiry Time** – Indicates the amount of time in ticks before the Querier Present timer expires. If the local system is the Querier the value is 0.
- **Wrong Version Queries** – Indicates the amount of queries received with the IGMP software version that do not match the IGMP interface's software version. If queries are received with a different software version the Wrong Software version Queries indicates a configuration error.
- **Joins** – Indicates the number of times a group membership has been added to the **IGMP Cache Table**.
- **Proxy ifIndex** – Indicates that IGMP is performed by proxy. IGMP Host Membership reports are sent to the device. A value of 0 indicates that IGMP proxying is not being performed. The default is 0.



- **Groups** – The current number of entries for this port in the **IGMP Cache Table**.
- **Robustness** – Tunes packet loss on a subnet. The robustness is increased to avoid packet loss on a subnet. Possible values are 1-255. The default value is 0.
- **Last Member Query Interval** – Modifies the leave latency of the network. A reduced value reduces the amount of time needed to detect the loss of the last group member. The possible values are 0-255. The default value is 10.

**To add an IGMP Interface entry:**

1. Display the **IGMP Interface Table**.
2. Click . The **IGMP Interface Table - Insert** window opens:


The image shows a window titled "Igmp Interface Table - Insert - 10.53.10.101". It has a green checkmark icon in the top left and a printer icon in the top right. The window contains several input fields: "IfIndex" (a dropdown menu showing "1"), "Query Interval" (a text box with "125"), "Version" (a text box with "2"), "Query Max Response Time" (a text box with "100"), "Robustness" (a text box with "2"), and "Last Member Query Intvl" (a text box with "10").

**Figure 6- 139. IGMP Interface Table - Insert window**

3. Complete the fields. The fields are the same as the **IGMP Interface Table** as described above.
4. Click . The **IGMP Interface Table - Insert** window closes.
5. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*” the IGMP information is saved to the device.

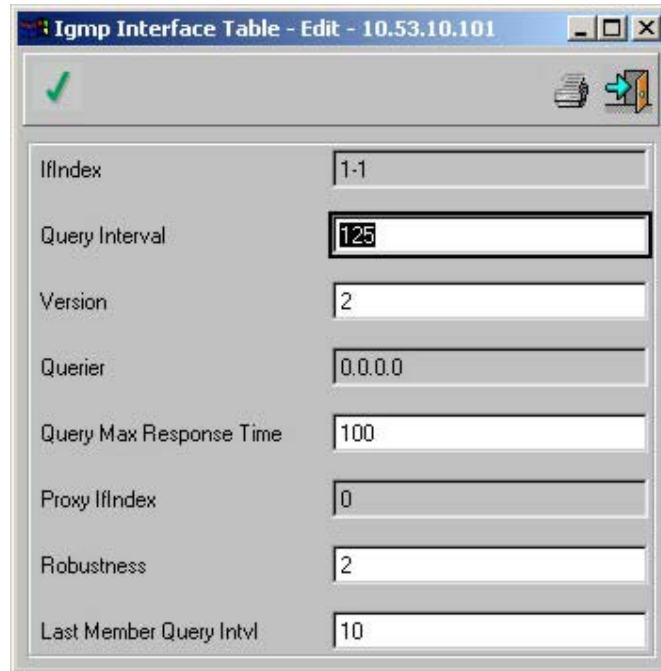
**Note:** An IGMP Interface entry can be added for an IP Address only.

**To edit an IGMP Interface entry:**

1. Display the **IGMP Interface Table**.
2. Select an entry in the **IGMP Interface Table** and click . The **IGMP Interface Table - Edit** window opens.



or

Double-click a row in the **IGMP Interface Table**. The **IGMP Interface Table-Edit** window opens:





|                         |         |
|-------------------------|---------|
| IfIndex                 | 1-1     |
| Query Interval          | 125     |
| Version                 | 2       |
| Querier                 | 0.0.0.0 |
| Query Max Response Time | 100     |
| Proxy IfIndex           | 0       |
| Robustness              | 2       |
| Last Member Query Intvl | 10      |

**Figure 6- 140. IGMP Interface Table - Edit window**

3. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **IGMP Interface Table** as described above.
4. Click . The **IGMP Interface Table - Edit** window closes.
5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the IGMP information is saved to the device.

**To delete an entry in the IGMP Interface Table:**

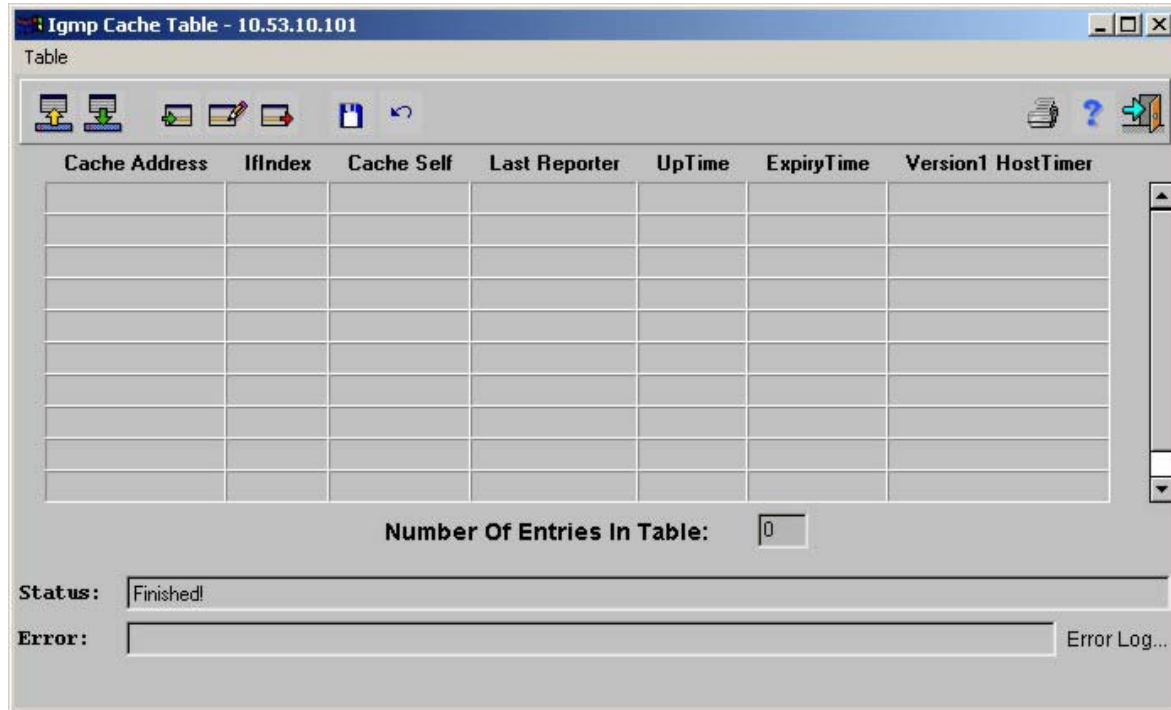
1. Display the **IGMP Interface Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted from the **IGMP Interface Table**.
4. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the entry is deleted from the device.

**IGMP Cache Table**

The **IGMP Cache Table** contains information regarding each IP Multicast group whose members are part of an interface on a physical port.

**To display the Cache Table:**

Select **Router > IPM > IGMP > Cache Table**. The *IGMP Cache Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 141. IGMP Cache Table window**

The **IGMP Cache Table** displays the following fields:

- **Cache Address** – Specifies the IP Multicast Group address to which the port is a member.
- **IfIndex** – Indicates the VLAN or port number..
- **Cache Self** – Indicates if the local system is a member of an IP Multicast Group address. If the entry is learned from a VLAN, the field specifies a physical port. If not the field entry is 0.
- **Last Reporter** – Identifies the last member to join the IP Multicast group. If no member has entered the IP Multicast group the value is 0.0.0.0.
- **UpTime** – Indicates in ticks the amount of time that has passed since the entry was created.
- **ExpiryTime** – Indicates the amount of time in ticks before the entry is aged out.
  - ♦ **Status** – Indicates the status of the entry. The possible values are:
    - Active
    - Destructed
- **Version1 HostTimer** – Indicates the amount of time before the router assumes that there are no longer IGMP members on a subnet. If no IGMP group members are reported the Software version1 Host timer is reset.

## Filter

The **Filter** menu has the following menus options:

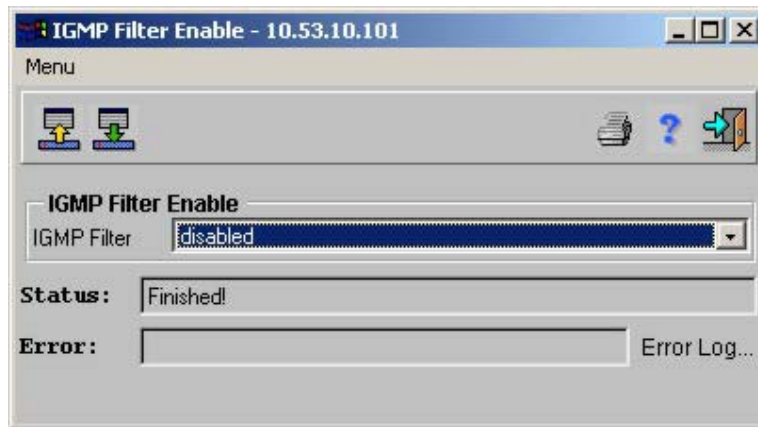
- IGMP Filter Enable
- IGMP Filter Table

### ***IGMP Filter Enable***

The **IGMP Filter Enable** window allows you to enable or disable the IGMP filter.

***To display the IGMP Filter Enable window:***

Select **Router > IPM > Filter > IGMP Filter Enable**. The *IGMP Filter Enable* opens:




**Figure 6- 142. IGMP Filter Enable window**

The **IGMP Filter Enable** window displays the following field:

- **IGMP Filter** – Enables IGMP filtering on a device. *Disabled* is the default.

***To enable IGMP filtering on a device:***

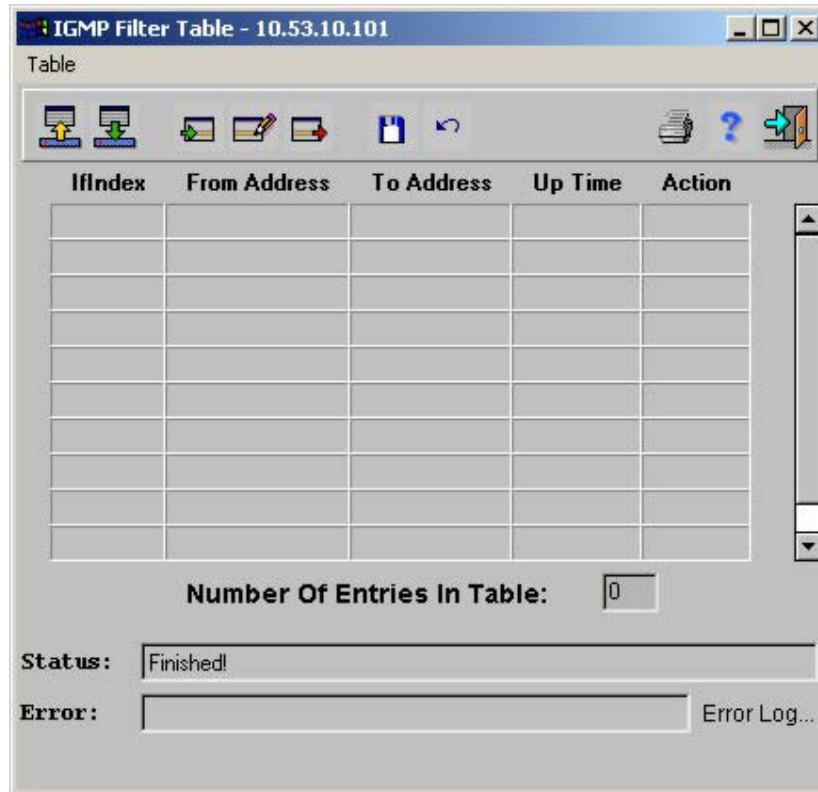
1. Display the **IGMP Filter Enable** window.
2. Set the IGMP filtering status to *Enabled*.
3. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, IGMP filtering is enabled on the device.

### ***IGMP Filter Table***

The **IGMP Filter Table** contains IGMP filter information for which IGMP is currently enabled.

***To display the IGMP Filter Table:***

Select **Router > IPM > Filter > IGMP Filter Table**. The *IGMP Filter Table* opens:




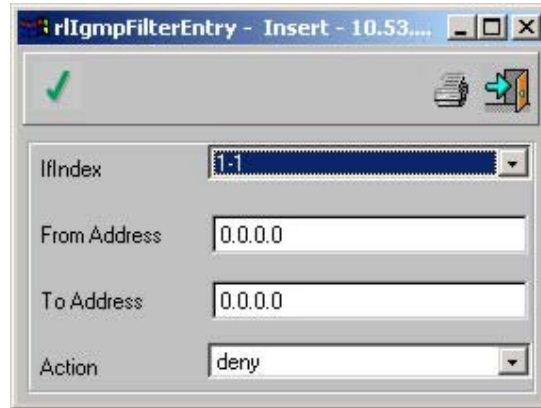
**Figure 6- 143. IGMP Filter Table window**

The **IGMP Filter Table** displays the following fields:



- **IfIndex** – Identifies the port number for which the IGMP filter is enabled.
- **From Address** – Indicates the IP address being filtered from.
- **To Address** – Indicates the IP address being filtered to.
- **Up Time** – Indicates in ticks the amount of time that has passed since the entry was created.
- **Action** – This parameter is used to fine-tune the IGMP filter.
  - Permit – Whether the indicated packets should be forwarded.
  - Deny – Whether the indicated packets should be blocked.

**To add an IGMP Filter entry:**


1. Display the **IGMP Filter Table**.
2. Click . The **IGMP Filter Entry - Insert** window opens:



**Figure 6- 144. IGMP Filter Entry - Insert window**

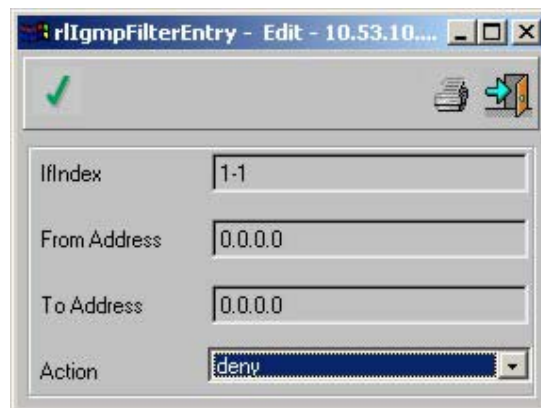
3. Complete the fields. The fields are the same as the **IGMP Filter Table** as described above.
4. Click . The **IGMP Filter Entry - Insert** window closes.
5. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*” the IGMP information is saved to the device.

***To edit an IGMP Filter entry:***


1. Display the **IGMP Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the **IGMP Filter Table** and click . The **IGMP Filter Entry - Edit** window opens.

or

Double-click a row in the **IGMP Filter Table**. The **IGMP Filter Entry - Edit** window opens:





**Figure 6- 145. IGMP Filter Entry - Edit window**

3. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **IGMP Filter Table** as described above.
4. Click . The **IGMP Filter Entry - Edit** window closes.

5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the IGMP filter information is saved to the device.

***To delete an entry in the IGMP Filter Table:***

1. Display the **IGMP Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted from the **IGMP Filter Table**.
4. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the entry is deleted from the device.

## **PIM**

Multicast routers use Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) to determine which other multicast routers should receive multicast packets. Protocol Independent Multicast-Dense Mode (PIM-DM) is used when there is a large population of receivers in a network. PIM-DM builds routing and forwarding tables on-the-fly. PIM-DM uses unicast routing information to provide routing table information and adapt to topological changes.

The **PIM** menu has the following menu options:

- Parameters
- Interface Table
- Neighbor Table
- Route Table
- Route Next Hop

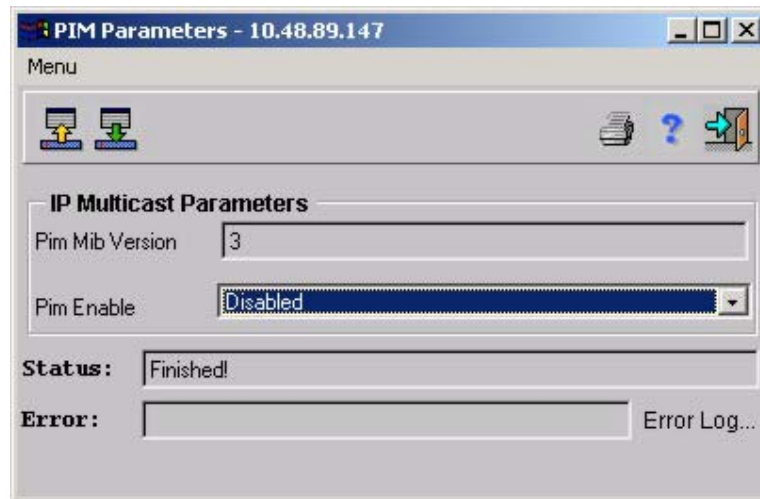
### ***Parameters***

The **PIM Parameters** window provides information regarding the PIM MIB software version currently being used for multicast routing.

***To display the PIM Parameters window:***

Select **Router > IPM > PIM > Parameters**, the *PIM Parameters* window opens:





**Figure 6- 146. PIM Parameters window**

The **PIM Parameters** window displays the following fields:

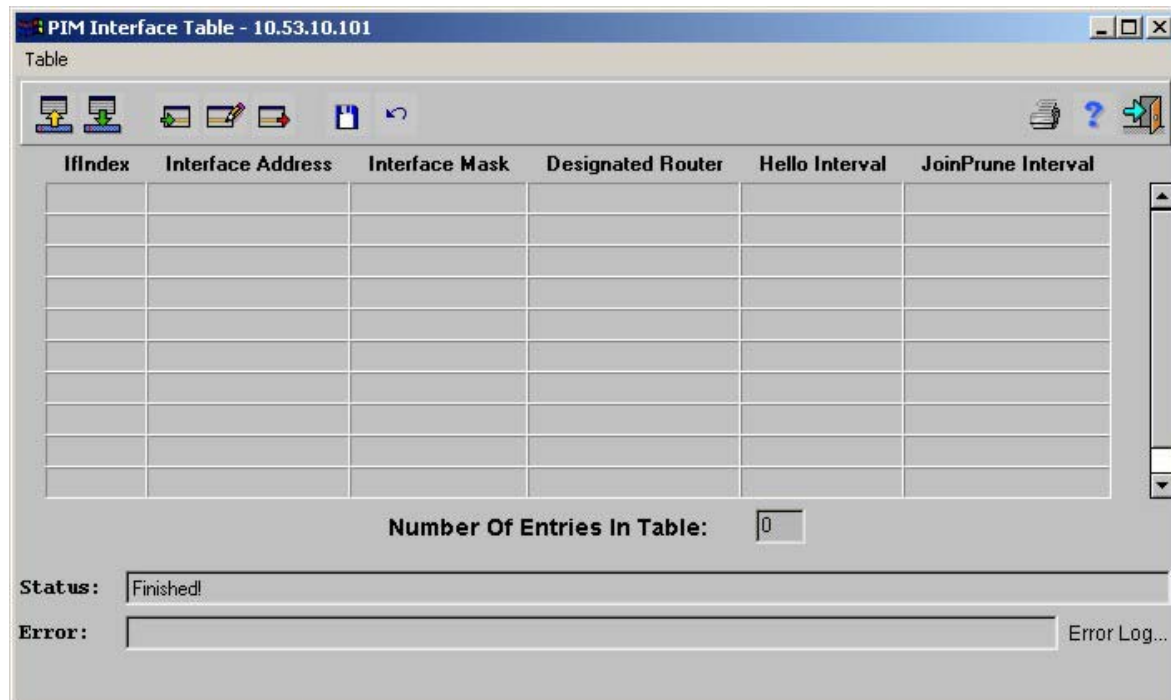
- **PIM MIB Version** – Identifies the PIM MIB software version currently being used for multicast routing.
- **PIM Enable** – Indicates whether PIM is enabled or disabled.

### ***PIM Interface Table***

The **PIM Interface Table** contains an entry for each of the router's PIM ports. The **PIM Interface Table** lists the IPM multicast group members on specific ports.

#### ***To display the PIM Interface Table:***

Select **Router > IPM > PIM > Interface Table**, the *PIM Interface Table* window opens:



**Figure 6- 147. PIM Interface Table window**

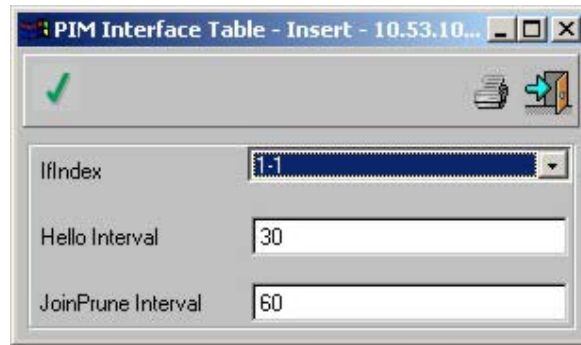
The **PIM Interface Table** displays the following fields:

- **IfIndex** – Specifies the PIM port number.
- **Interface Address** – Indicates the IP address of the PIM port.
- **Interface Mask** – Masks all or part of the IP address of PIM ports.
- **Designated Router** – Identifies the designated router on each multi-access router. The designator router polls the LAN to determine group membership. The router with the highest IP address is the designated router. If the designated router times out, a new designated router is elected from the alternate PIM routers. Designated routers are only needed for multi-access networks and not point-to-point links. Point-to-point links show a value of 0.0.0.0.
- **Hello Interval** – Indicates in seconds the amount of time ports send hello messages. PIM-DM routers keep track of neighboring interfaces based on received hello messages. Neighbor information is deleted if there it is not refreshed before expiration. The default time is 30 seconds.
- **JoinPrune Intervals** – Indicates the intervals at which Join/Prune messages are sent to the PIM router. The PIM router assumes that all downstream routers can receive multicast packets, flooding the network with multicast packets. If specific network areas do not have multicast group members, PIM-DM prunes off the forwarding branch by establishing a Prune state. The Prune state contains the source and multicast group address, and contains a timer. When the timer expires the network branch goes into a forwarding state. The default is 210 seconds.

**To add an PIM Interface Table entry:**



1. Display the **PIM Interface Table**.

- Click . **PIM Interface Table - Insert** window opens:




The screenshot shows the 'PIM Interface Table - Insert' window. It has a title bar with the text 'PIM Interface Table - Insert - 10.53.10...'. Below the title bar is a green checkmark icon and a printer icon. The main area contains three input fields: 'IfIndex' with a dropdown menu showing '1', 'Hello Interval' with a text box containing '30', and 'JoinPrune Interval' with a text box containing '60'.

**Figure 6- 148. PIM Interface Table – Insert window**

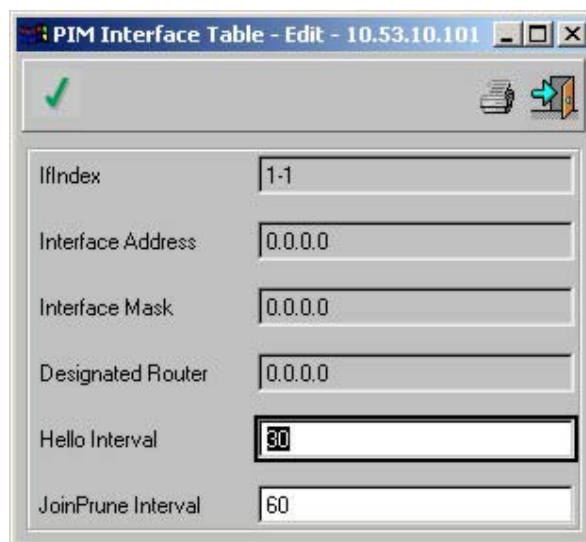
- Complete the fields. The fields are the same as the **PIM Interface Table** as described above.
- Click . The **PIM Interface Table - Insert** window closes.
- Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*” the IGMP information is saved to the device.

**To edit an PIM Interface Table entry:**

- Display the **PIM Interface Table**.
- Select an entry in the PIM Interface Table and click .



or

Double-click a row in the **PIM Interface Table**. The **PIM Interface Table - Edit** window opens:





The screenshot shows the 'PIM Interface Table - Edit' window. It has a title bar with the text 'PIM Interface Table - Edit - 10.53.10.101'. Below the title bar is a green checkmark icon and a printer icon. The main area contains six input fields: 'IfIndex' with a dropdown menu showing '1-1', 'Interface Address' with a text box containing '0.0.0.0', 'Interface Mask' with a text box containing '0.0.0.0', 'Designated Router' with a text box containing '0.0.0.0', 'Hello Interval' with a text box containing '30', and 'JoinPrune Interval' with a text box containing '60'.

**Figure 6- 149. PIM Interface Table - Edit window**

3. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **PIM Interface Table** as described above.
4. Click . The **PIM Interface Table - Edit** window closes.
5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the PIM information is saved to the device.

***To delete an entry in the PIM Interface Table:***

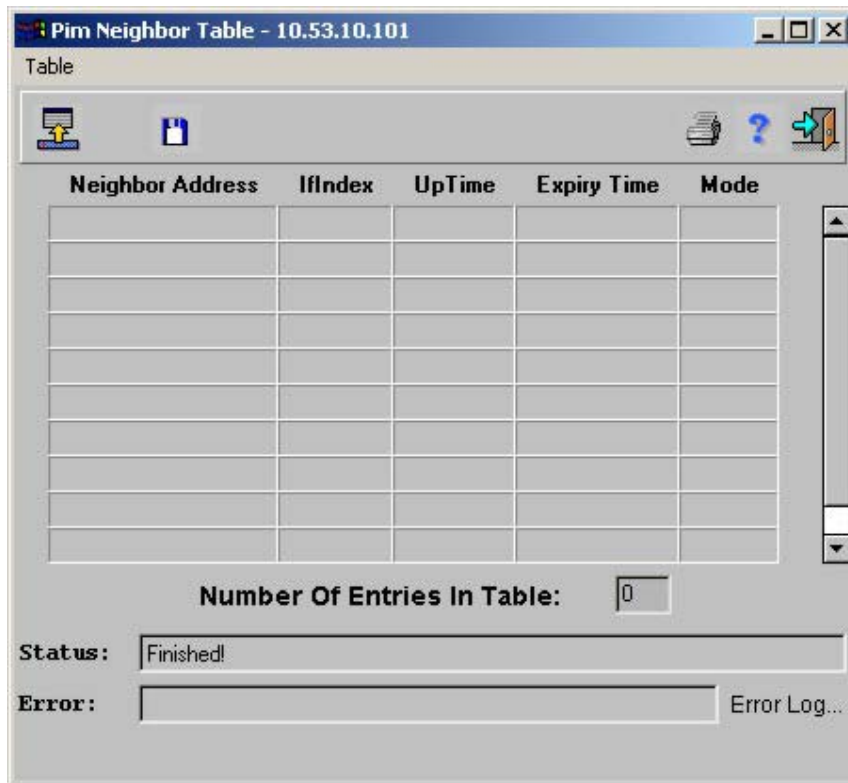
1. Display the **PIM Interface Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted from the **PIM Interface Table**.
4. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the entry is deleted from the device.

***PIM Neighbor Table***

The **PIM Neighbor Table** contains information regarding each of a router's PIM neighbors.

***To display the PIM Neighbor Table:***

Select **Router > IPM > PIM > Neighbor Table**: The *PIM Neighbor Table* window opens:



**Figure 6- 150. PIM Neighbor Table window**

The **PIM Neighbor Table** displays the following fields

- **Neighbor Address** – Specifies the IP address of the PIM neighbor.
- **IfIndex** – Indicates the Port Number.
- **UpTime** – Indicates the time lapse since the PIM neighbor became the neighbor to the local router.
- **Expiry Time** – Indicates time in ticks before the PIM neighbor is aged out.
- **Mode** – Indicates the active PIM mode of the neighbor device. The possible value for this release is:
  - PIM-DM – The neighbor is currently operating in PIM-DM mode.

### ***PIM Route Table***

Multicast routing information is gathered and stored by PIM in the **PIM Route Table**. The **PIM Route Table** contains one row for each port in a PIM mode. Each routing entry contains information about the source and multicast group, and incoming and outgoing interfaces.

#### ***To display PIM Route Table:***

Select **Router > IPM > PIM > Route Table**, the *PIM Route Table* opens:

| Group | Source | Source Mask | Upstream Assert Timer | AssertMetric | Assert MetricPref | Assert RPT Bit | Flags |
|-------|--------|-------------|-----------------------|--------------|-------------------|----------------|-------|
|       |        |             |                       |              |                   |                |       |
|       |        |             |                       |              |                   |                |       |
|       |        |             |                       |              |                   |                |       |
|       |        |             |                       |              |                   |                |       |
|       |        |             |                       |              |                   |                |       |
|       |        |             |                       |              |                   |                |       |
|       |        |             |                       |              |                   |                |       |
|       |        |             |                       |              |                   |                |       |
|       |        |             |                       |              |                   |                |       |

Number Of Entries In Table: 0

Status: Finished!

Error: Error Log...

Figure 6- 151. PIM IPM Route Table window

The **PIM IPM Route Table** displays the following fields:

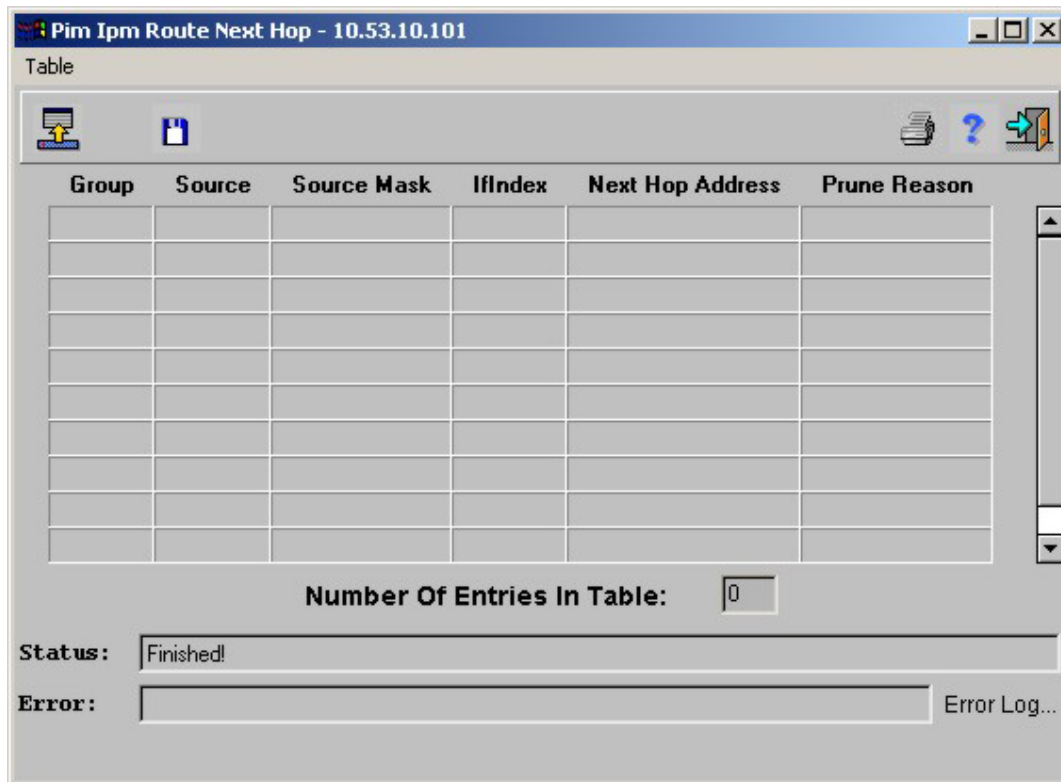
- **Group** – Specifies the IP address of the multicast group. The range is 244.0.0.0-239.255.255.255.
- **Source** – Specifies the source IP address from where the multicast packets are being sent.
- **Source Mask** – Mask all or part of the source IP address.
- **Upstream Assert Timer** – Indicates the time before the router reverts from its upstream router to its RPF neighbor. When a multicast packet is received, the router sends an assert packet on a subnet indicating what metrics were used to reach the packet's source address. The router with the best metrics becomes the forwarding router. All other upstream routes are pruned. The downstream routers also compare if the RPF with the forwarding router. This ensures that the downstream routers send their prunes and grafts to the correct neighbor. The forwarding router sends an assert message to notify the other routers that it is the forwarding router. Downstream routers select the upstream router with the smallest metrics as their RPF neighbor. If two routers have the same metrics, the router with the highest IP address is chosen. When the assert timer expires, the downstream may switch from the forwarding router to a RPF neighbor. A value of 0 indicates that the assert has not changed the upstream neighbor to a RPF neighbor.
- **AssertMetric** – Specifies the metrics advertised by the forwarding router. A value of 0 indicates that no assert was received.
- **Assert MetricPref** – Indicates the preference advertised by the forwarding router on the upstream interface. Asset MetricPref is used when upstream routers are running different Unicast protocols. A value of 0 indicates that no assert is in effect.
- **Assert RPT Bit** – Indicates the value of the RPT bit advertised by the forwarding router
- **Flags** – Specifies the PIM-specific flags pertaining to the multicast state entry.

## ***PIM IPM Route Next Hop***

The **PIM IPM Route Next Hop** window contains the next-hops information of IP multicast packets. The **PIM IPM Route Next Hop** contains an entry for each outgoing interface listed in the multicast routing table running PIM, and whose state is pruned.

*To display the PIM IPM Route Next Hop table:*

Select **Router > IPM > PIM > Route Next Hop**, the *PIM IPM Route Next Hop* window opens:



**Figure 6- 152. PIM IPM Route Next Hop window**

The **PIM IPM Route Next Hop** window displays the following fields:

- **Group** – Specifies the IP address of the next-hop multicast group.
- **Source** – Specifies the source IP address of the multicast packet.
- **Source Mask** – Masks all or part of the source IP address.
- **IfIndex** – Identifies the outgoing port.
- **Next Hop Address** – The IP address of the next-hop.
- **Prune Reason** – Indicates the reason the downstream interface was pruned. The possible values are:
  - Prune – Indicates that the downstream interface was pruned in response to a prune message.
  - Assert – Indicates that the downstream interface was pruned due to PIM assert processing.

## IPM Routing

The **IPM Routing** menu has the following menu options:

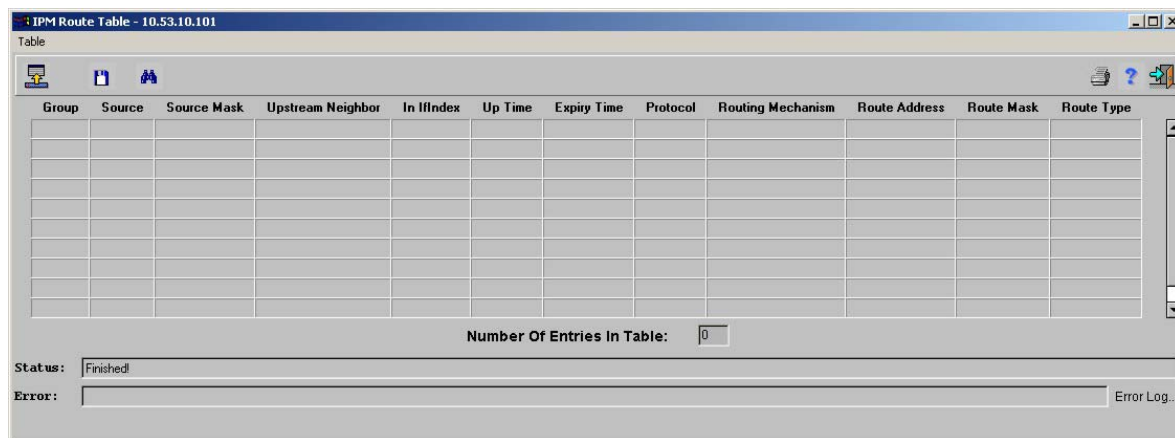
- Route Table
- Route Next Hop Table

### ***IPM Routing Table***

The **IPM Routing Table** contain multicast routing information of IP packets sent from a specific source to IP multicast groups known to the IPM router.

***To display the IPM Routing Table:***

Select **Router > IPM > IPM Routing > Route Table**. The *IPM Route Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 153. IPM Route Table window**

The **IPM Route Table** displays the following fields:

- **Group** – Identifies the IP address of the multicast group.
- **Source** – Identifies the source IP address of the device to which the multicast information applies.
- **Source Mask** – Masks all or parts of the source IP address.
- **Upstream Neighbor** – Specifies the IP address of the next upstream device from which packets to the IP address are received. The value 0.0.0.0 indicates that the value is unknown.
- **In IfIndex** – Indicates the port number to which multicast packets being sent are received. The value 0 indicates that incoming packets can be received on multiple interfaces.
- **Up Time** – Indicates the time lapse since the router learned the multicast information.
- **Expiry Time** – Indicates the time in ticks before the entry expires. A value of 0 indicates that the entry has not expired.
- **Protocol** – Identifies the type of protocol used to learn the multicast information. The possible values are:



- Other – Indicates that none of the below listed protocols are used to learn multicast forwarding information.
- Local – Indicates that a manually configured protocol was used to learn the multicast information.
- Netmgmt – Indicates that the Network Management Protocol was used to learn the multicast information.
- MOSPF – Indicates that Multicast extended OSPF was used to learn the multicast information.
- PIMsparseDense – Indicates that Protocol Independent Multicast was used to learn the multicast information.
- CBT – Indicates that CBT was used to learn the multicast information.
- PIM-SM – Indicates that Protocol Independent Multicast-Sparse Mode was used to learn the multicast information.
- PIM-DM – Indicates that Protocol Independent Multicast-Dense Mode was used to learn the multicast information.
- IGMP – Indicates that the Internet Group Multicast Protocol was used to learn the multicast information.
- BGMP – Indicates that the Border Gateway Multicast Protocol was used to learn this entry's multicast information.
- MSDP – Indicates that the Multicast Source Discovery Protocol was used to learn the multicast information.
- **Routing Mechanism** – Identifies the routing mechanism used to find the next upstream or parent interface which provided the multicast information. The possible values are:
  - Other – Indicates that none of the below listed protocols are used to find the next upstream or parent interface of the multicast information.
  - Local – Indicates that a manually configured protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface of the multicast information.
  - Netmgmt – Indicates that the Network Management Protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface of the multicast information. This route is static.
  - ICMP – Indicates that the Internet Control Message Protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface for the multicast information.
  - RIP – Indicates that the Routing Information Protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface of the multicast information.
  - OSPF – Indicates that the Open First Path First Protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface of the multicast information.
  - BGP – Indicates that the Border Gateway Protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface of the multicast information.
  - DVRMP – Indicates that the Internet Control Message Protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface of the multicast information.
- **Route Address** – Identifies the IP address used to find the upstream or parent interface of the multicast information.
- **Route Mask** – Masks all or part of the IP addresses used to find the upstream or parent interface of the multicast information.
- **Route Type** – Indicates if the route was a unicast or multicast route. The possible values are:
  - Unicast – Indicates that the route was placed in the multicast routing information base (RIB) either instead of or in addition to unicast RIB by a local configuration, for example when running PIM over RIP.

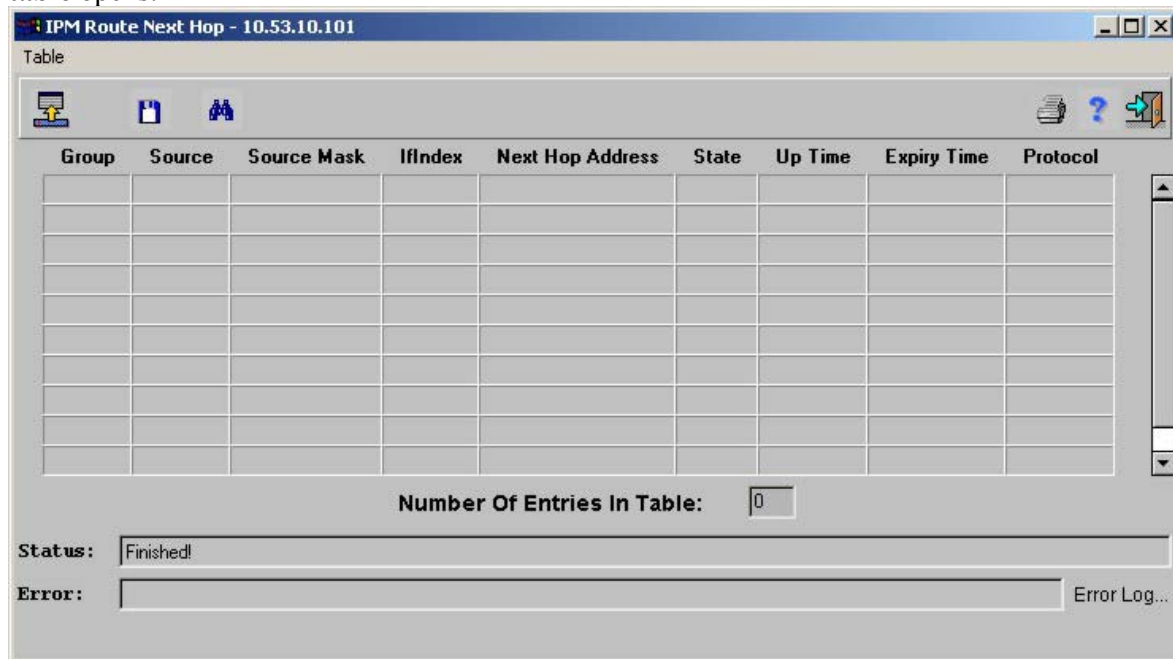
- **Multicast** – Indicates that the route was explicitly added to the multicast RIB by the routing protocol.

### ***IPM Route Next Hop***

The **IPM Route Next Hop** window contains information regarding the next-hop for forwarding multicast packets on outgoing interfaces. Each entry in the **IPM Route Next Hop** table refers to the next-hop of a specific source to a specific multicast group address.

*To display the IPM Route Next Hop table:*

Select **Router > IPM > IPM Routing > Route Next Hop Table**. The *IPM Route Next Hop table* opens:



**Figure 6- 154. IPM Route Next Hop window**

The **IPM Route Next Hop** window displays the following fields:

- **Group** – Identifies the IP multicast group from which the multicast packet is being forwarded.
- **Source** – Identifies the source IP address of the multicast packet being forwarded.
- **Source Mask** – Masks all or part of the source IP address.
- **IfIndex** – Identifies the port number of the next-hop.
- **Next Hop Address** – Indicates the IP addresses of the next-hop. This may be identical to the Group value. However, some ports may have multiple next-hop addresses from a single outgoing interface.
- **State** – Indicates if the port and next-hop are being used to forward multicast packets. The possible values are:
  - **Pruned** – The port and next hop are not being used to forward multicast packets.

- Forwarding – The port and the next hop are currently being used to forward multicast packets.
- **Up Time** – Indicates the time lapse since the router learned the multicast information.
- **Expiry Time** – Indicates the time in ticks before the entry expires. A value of 0 indicates that the entry is not expired. However, if the Hop Status is *Pruned*, the value indicates the amount of time remaining before the port and next hop revert to *Forwarding*.
- **Protocol** – Identifies the routing protocol used to find the next hop. The possible values are:
  - Other – Indicates that none of the below listed protocols are used to find the next upstream or parent interface for the next-hop.
  - Local – Indicates that a manually configured protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface for the next-hop.
  - Netmgmt – Indicates that the Network Management Protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface for the next-hop. This route is static.
  - ICMP – Indicates that the Internet Control Message Protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface for the next-hop.
  - RIP – Indicates that the Routing Information Protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface for the next-hop.
  - OSPF – Indicates that the Open First Path First Protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface for the next-hop.
  - BGP – Indicates that the Border Gateway Protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface for the next-hop.
  - DVRMP – Indicates that the Internet Control Message Protocol was used to find the next upstream or parent interface for the next-hop.

## **IPX**

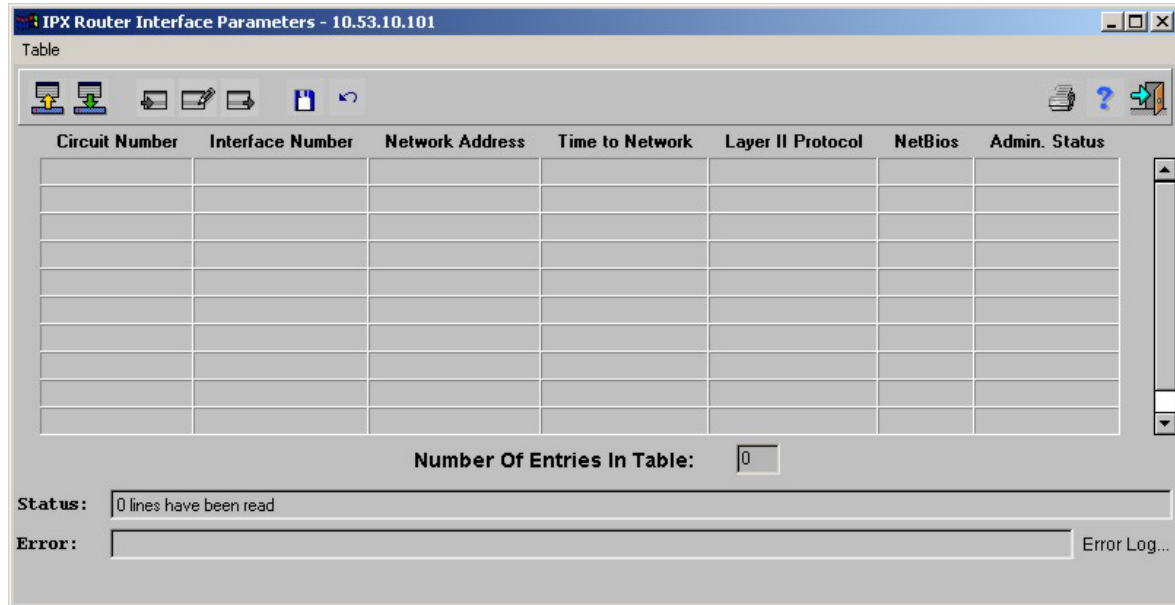
The **IPX** menu has the following menu options:

- Interface Parameters
- RIP/SAP Filters
- Routing Table
- SAP Table

### **Interface Parameters**

*To display the IPX Router Interface Parameters window:*

Select **Router > IPX > Interface Parameters**. The *IPX Router Interface Parameters* window opens:




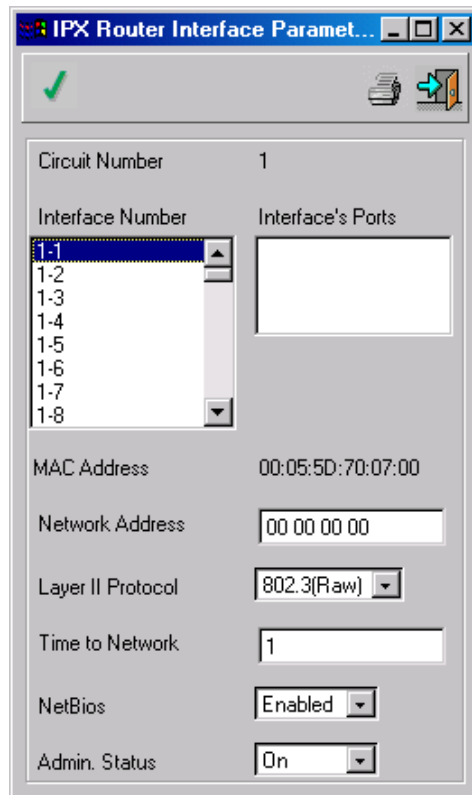
**Figure 6- 155. IPX Router Interface Parameters window**

The **IPX Router Interface Parameters** window displays the following parameters:

- **Circuit Number** – IPX circuit number.
- **Interface Number** – The IF Index used by this circuit.
- **Network Address** – IPX network address of this circuit.
- **Time To Network** – Time to net value associated with this interface, in 1/18ths of a second.
- **Layer II Protocol** – Encapsulation method associated with this interface. If the Interface Number refers to a VLAN, this must be the same encapsulation as used by the VLAN.
- **NetBios** – NetBios type 20 broadcast packets are forwarded to this interface.
- **Admin Status** – Indicates whether this circuit entry is valid, or Sleeping (currently inactive).

**To add an IPX Router Interface entry:**



1. Display the **IPX Router Interface Parameters** window:
2. Click . The **IPX Router Interface Parameters Insert** window opens:




The image shows a window titled "IPX Router Interface Paramet...". It contains a green checkmark icon in the top left and a printer icon in the top right. The main area has the following fields:

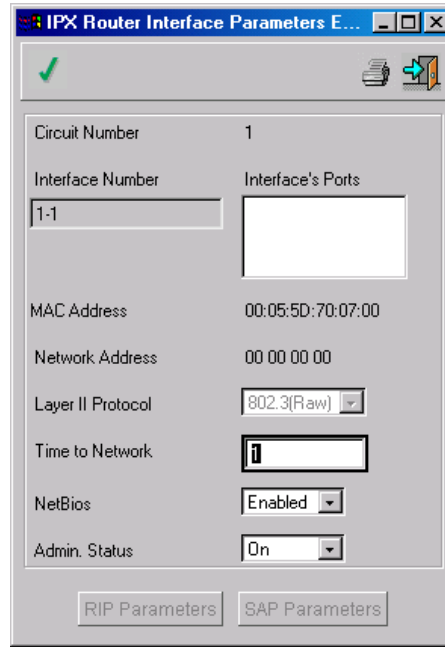
- Circuit Number: 1
- Interface Number: A list box with options 1-1, 1-2, 1-3, 1-4, 1-5, 1-6, 1-7, and 1-8. "1-1" is selected.
- Interface's Ports: An empty text box.
- MAC Address: 00:05:5D:70:07:00
- Network Address: 00 00 00 00
- Layer II Protocol: 802.3(Raw) (dropdown menu)
- Time to Network: 1
- NetBios: Enabled (dropdown menu)
- Admin. Status: On (dropdown menu)

**Figure 6- 156. IPX Router Interface Parameters Insert window**

3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **IPX Router Interface Parameters Insert** window. The **IPX Router Interface Parameters** window opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

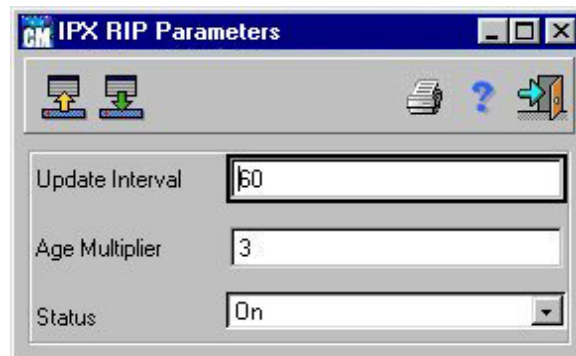
***To edit an IPX Router Interface entry:***

1. Display the **IPX Router Interface Parameters** window.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **IPX Router Interface Parameters Edit** window opens:



**Figure 6- 157. IPX Router Interface Parameters Edit window**

4. Click the **RIP Parameters** button to modify IPX RIP parameters. The **IPX RIP Parameters** window opens:




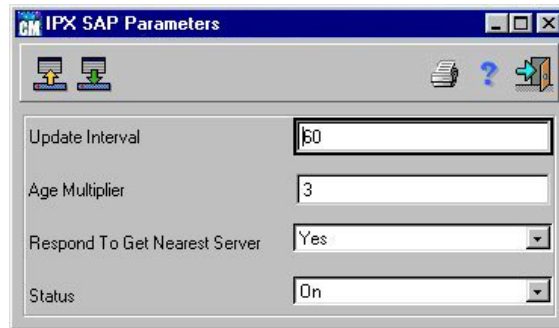
**Figure 6- 158. IPX RIP Parameters window**

The **IPX RIP Parameters** window displays the following parameters:

- **Update Interval** – RIP periodic update interval, in seconds. Set to 0 to disable periodic messages. When set to 0, all entries learned on this interface are not aged out.
- **Age Multiplier** – Holding multiplier for information received in RIP periodic updates. This value multiplied by the update interval defines how many seconds RIP information remains without being refreshed. Set to 0 to prevent the entries learned on this interface from being aged out.
- **Status** – Whether the RIP interface is active. *OFF* is inactive but not deleted.

**Note:** The Update Interval multiplied by the Age Multiplier must be less than 2 million.

5. Complete the **IPX RIP Parameters** window fields if required.
6. Click . Close the **IPX RIP Parameters** window. The **IPX Router Interface Parameters Edit** window opens.
7. Click the **SAP Parameters** button to modify IPX SAP parameters. The **IPX SAP Parameters** window opens:




**Figure 6- 159. IPX SAP Parameters window**

The **IPX SAP Parameters** window displays the following parameters:



- **Update Interval** – SAP periodic update interval, in seconds. Set to 0 to disable periodic messages. When set to 0, all entries learned on this interface are not aged out.
- **Age Multiplier** – Holding multiplier for information received in SAP periodic updates. This value multiplied by the update interval defines how many seconds SAP information remains without being refreshed. Set to 0 to prevent the entries learned on this interface from being aged out.
- **Respond to Get Nearest Server** – Defines whether the device responds to SAP “get nearest server” requests received on this circuit.
- **Status** – Defines whether the SAP interface is active. OFF is inactive but not deleted.

**Note:** *The Update Interval multiplied by the Age Multiplier must be less than 2 million*

8. Complete the **IPX SAP Parameters** window fields if required.
9. Click. Close the **IPX SAP Parameters** window. The **IPX Router Interface Parameters Edit** window is displayed.
10. Edit the fields.
11. Click .
12. Close the **IPX Router Interface Parameters Edit** window. The **IPX Router Interface Parameters** window opens.

13. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

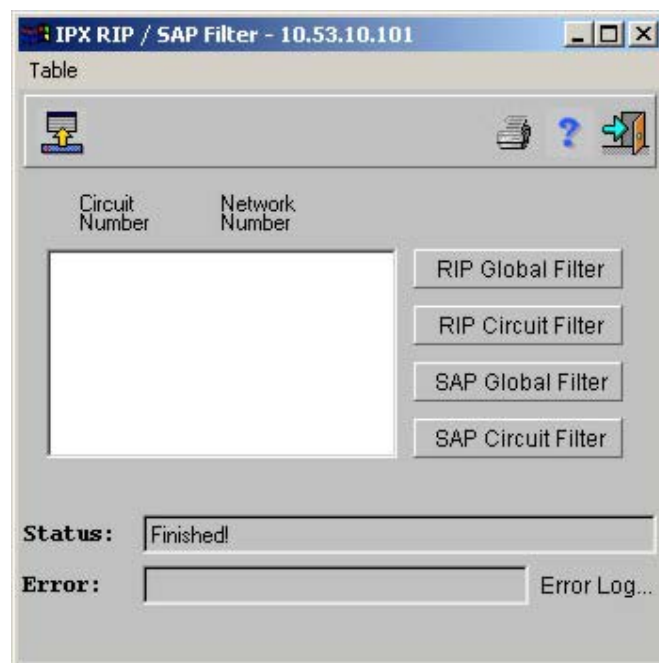
**To delete an IPX Router Interface entry:**

1. Display the **IPX Router Interface Parameters** window.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## RIP/SAP Filter

The **IPX RIP / SAP Filter** table is used to display both global and circuit (IPX interface-specific) filters, for both RIP and SAP. Circuit filters take precedence over global filters. To display the **IPX RIP / SAP Filter** table:

Select **Router > IPX > RIP / SAP Filter**. The *IPX RIP / SAP Filter* window opens:



**Figure 6- 160. IPX RIP/SAP Filter window**

The **IPX RIP/SAP Filter** window contains the following buttons that allow you to define additional parameters:

- **RIP Global Filter** – Defines the type of traffic that the filter applies to, the network addresses the filter affects, network masks, and taken on a packet.



- **RIP Circuit Filter** – Defines the type of traffic that the filter applies to, the network addresses the filter affects, network masks, and taken on a packet.
- **SAP Global Filter** – Defines the type of traffic that the filter applies to, the network addresses the filter affects, network masks, the service type, and action taken on a packet.
- **SAP Circuit Filter** – Defines the type of traffic that the filter applies to, the network addresses the filter affects, network masks, the service type, and action taken on a packet.

Press the **RIP Global Filter** button and complete the **RIP Global Filter** table fields.

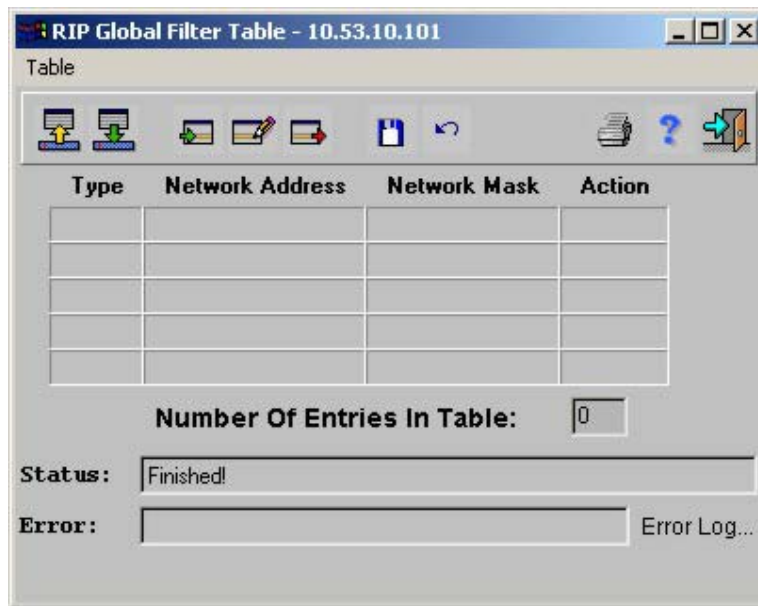
Press the **RIP Circuit Filter** button and complete the **RIP Global Circuit Fields** window fields.

Press the **SAP Global Filter** button and complete the **SAP Global Filter** table fields.

Press the **SAP Circuit Filter** button and complete the **SAP Global Circuit Fields** window fields.

*To display the RIP Global Filter Table:*

1. Display the **IPX RIP/SAP Filter** window.
2. Press the **RIP Global Filter** button. The **RIP Global Filter Table** opens:



**Figure 6- 161. RIP Global Filter Table window**

The **RIP Global Filter Table** displays the following parameters:

- **Type** – Defines whether the current filter entry works on traffic coming into or out of the device.
- **Network Address** – Type in the network pattern the filter entry is to affect. The network pattern works in conjunction with the network mask to define the filter entry.

- **Network Mask** – Type in the letters F, 8, C, E, and 0 as many times as desired to indicate which network pattern part is important. The mask must be continuous from left to right. 00000000 means all addresses, ffffffff means one address (no address range). A combination of fs and 0s indicates a specific range. This combination must have f on the left side, 0 on the right side, and a single F, 8, C, or E, or 0 between them.


For example, if the network pattern is set to 12345678, the network mask can be set to ffff0000. This indicates that only the first four network pattern numbers are checked, and the remaining numbers are irrelevant. In this example, only RIP messages with the numbers 1234 as their first four digits are affected

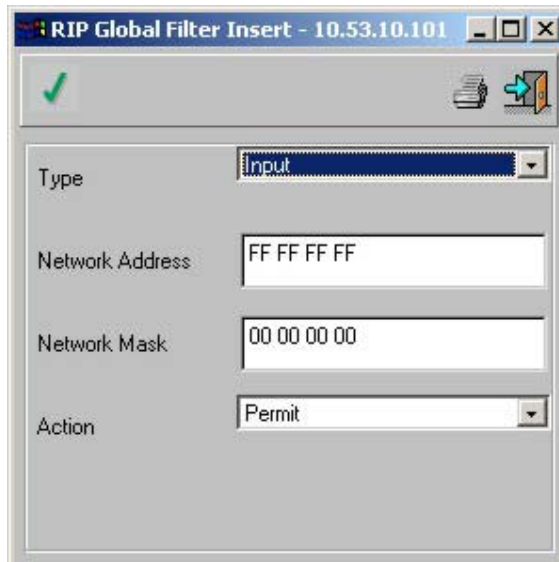
- **Action** – Defines whether the indicated packets are forwarded (permit) or blocked (denied) when the current filter entry conditions are met. The parameter is used to fine-tune other filter entries.

For example, set a filter entry to block all RIP messages with a network pattern starting with 123, and set another filter entry to permit all RIP messages with a network pattern starting with 1234. As a result, all RIP messages with a network pattern starting with 123 that do not have 4 as the fourth digit are blocked.



The default is forward, but the default can be set by creating a general filter entry with the network mask 00000000, and setting it to permit or deny.

***To add a RIP Global filter:***



1. Display the **RIP Global Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **RIP Global Filter Insert** window opens:



**Figure 6- 162. RIP Global Filter Insert window**

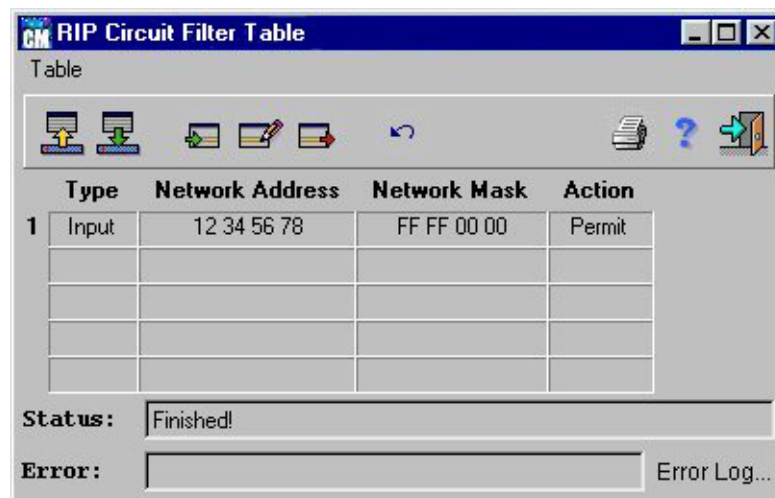
4. Complete the fields.
5. Click .
6. Close the **RIP Global Filter Edit** window. The **RIP Global Filter Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

**To delete a RIP Global filter:**

1. Display the **RIP Global Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

**To display the RIP Circuit Filter Table:**

1. Display the **IPX RIP/SAP Filter** window.
2. Press the **RIP Circuit Filter** button. The **RIP Circuit Filter Table** opens:

**Figure 6- 163. RIP Circuit Filter Table window**

The **RIP Circuit Filter Table** displays the following parameters:

- **Type** – Defines whether the current filter entry works on traffic coming into or out of the device.

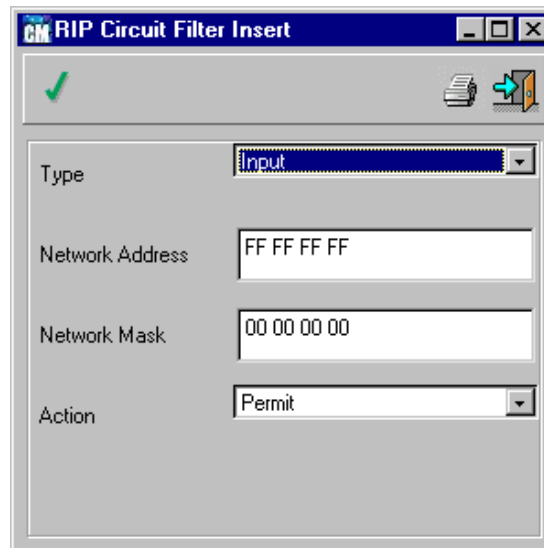
- **Network Address** – The network pattern to affect the filter entry. The network pattern works in conjunction with the network mask to define the filter entry.
- **Network Mask** – Type in the letters F, 8, C, E, and 0 as many times as desired to indicate which part of the network pattern is important. The mask must be continuous from left to right. 00000000 means all addresses, ffffffff means one address (no address range). A combination of f 0 indicates a specific range. This combination must have f on the left side, 0 on the right side, and a single F, 8, C, or E, or 0 between them.

For example, if the network pattern is set to 12345678, set the network mask to ffff0000 to indicate that only the first four numbers of the network pattern are checked, and the remaining numbers are irrelevant. In this example, only RIP messages with the numbers 1234 as their first four digits are affected.


- **Action** – Defines whether the indicated packets are forwarded (permit) or blocked (denied) when the current filter entry conditions are met. This parameter can be used to fine-tune other filter entries. For example, a filter entry can be set to block all RIP messages with a network pattern starting with 123, and set another filter entry to permit all RIP messages with a network pattern starting with 1234. As a result, all RIP messages with a network pattern starting with 123 that do not have 4 as the fourth digit are blocked.


**To add a RIP Circuit filter:**

1. Display the **RIP Circuit Filter Table**.
2. Click . The **RIP Circuit Filter Insert** window opens:




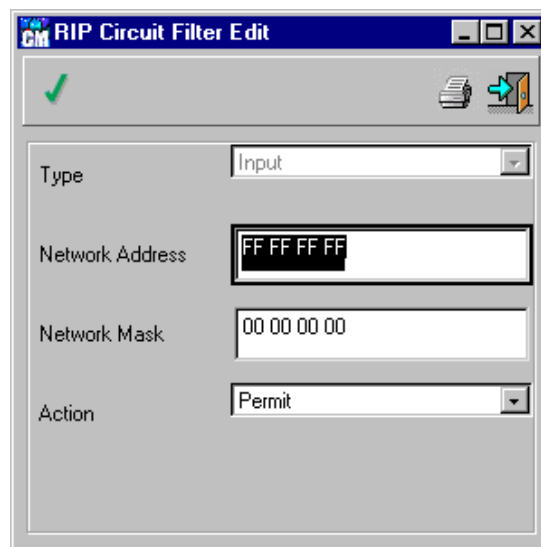
**Figure 6- 164. RIP Circuit Filter Insert window**

3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .



5. Close the **RIP Circuit Filter Insert** window. The **RIP Circuit Filter Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To edit a RIP Circuit filter:***

1. Display the **RIP Circuit Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **RIP Circuit Filter Edit** window opens:





**Figure 6- 165. RIP Circuit Filter Edit window**

4. Complete the fields.
5. Click .
6. Close the **RIP Circuit Filter Edit** window. The **RIP Circuit Filter Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

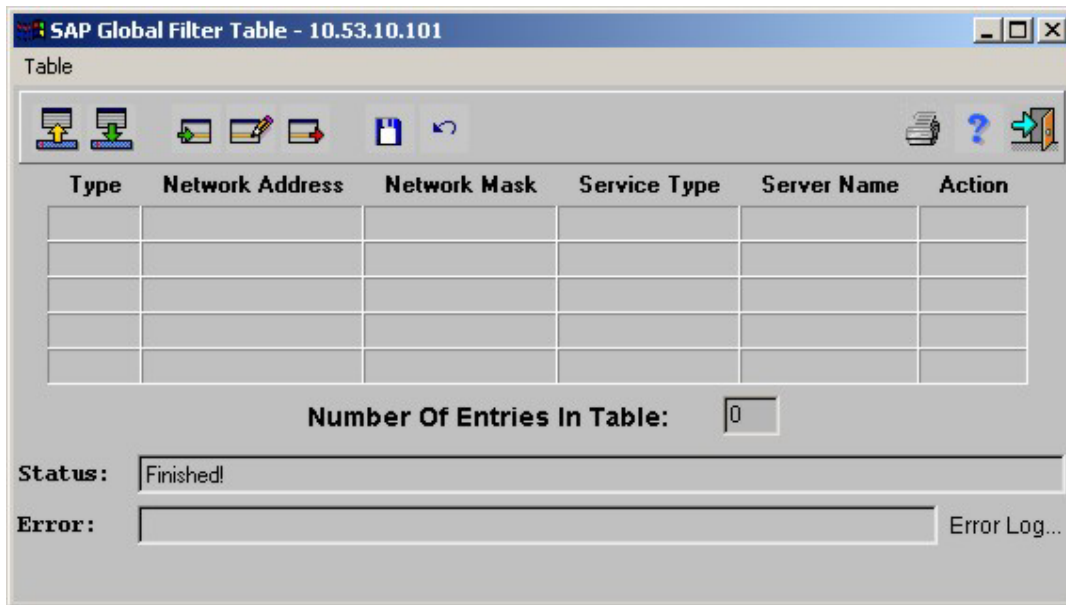
***To delete a RIP Circuit filter:***

1. Display the **RIP Circuit Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.

3. Click . The filter is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

**To display the SAP Global Filters:**

1. Display the **IPX RIP/SAP Filter** window.
2. Press the **SAP Global Filter** button. The **SAP Global Filter Table** opens:



**Figure 6- 166. SAP Global Filter Table window**

The **SAP Global Filter Table** displays the following parameters:

- **Type** – Defines whether the current filter entry works on traffic coming into or out of the device.
- **Network Address** – Type in the network pattern to affect the filter entry. The network pattern works in conjunction with the network mask to define the filter entry.
- **Network Mask** – Type in the letters F, 8, C, E, and 0 as many times as desired to indicate which part of the network pattern is important. The mask must be continuous from left to right. 00000000 means all addresses, ffffffff means one address (no address range). A combination of f 0 indicates a specific range. This combination must have f on the left side, 0 on the right side, and a single F, 8, C, or E, or 0 between them.

For example, if the network pattern is set to 12345678, the network mask can be set to ffff0000 to indicate that only the first four numbers of the network pattern are only checked, and the remaining numbers are

irrelevant. In this example, only SAP messages with the numbers 1234 as their first four digits are affected.

- **Service Type** – Type in the type of server (in hex) the filter entry affects, such as file server or print server. Value 0xFFFF applies for all types of service and is the default.
- **Service Name** – Type in the server name the filter entry affects. An asterisk (\*) at the end of the name as a wildcard designates any number of characters.

For example, \* indicates any server name, and sh\* indicates any server name starting with sh. The name may be up to 47 characters

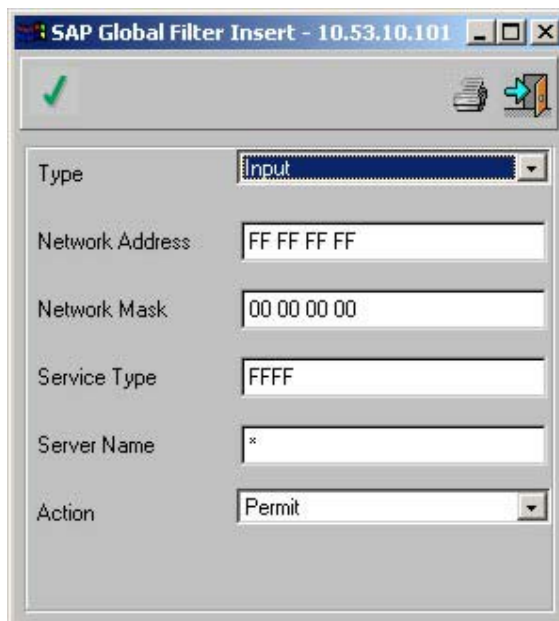
- **Action** – Defines whether the indicated packets are to be forwarded (permit) or blocked (denied) when the current filter entry conditions are met. This parameter is used to fine-tune other filter entries.

For example, a filter entry can be set to block all SAP messages with a network pattern starting with 123, and set another filter entry to permit all SAP messages with a network pattern starting with 1234. all SAP messages with a network pattern starting with 123 that do not have 4 as the fourth digit are blocked.



The default is forward, but the default can be set by creating a general filter entry with the network mask 00000000, and setting it to permit or deny.

***To add a SAP Global filter:***


1. Display the **SAP Global Filter Table**.
2. Click . The **SAP Global Filter Insert** window opens.

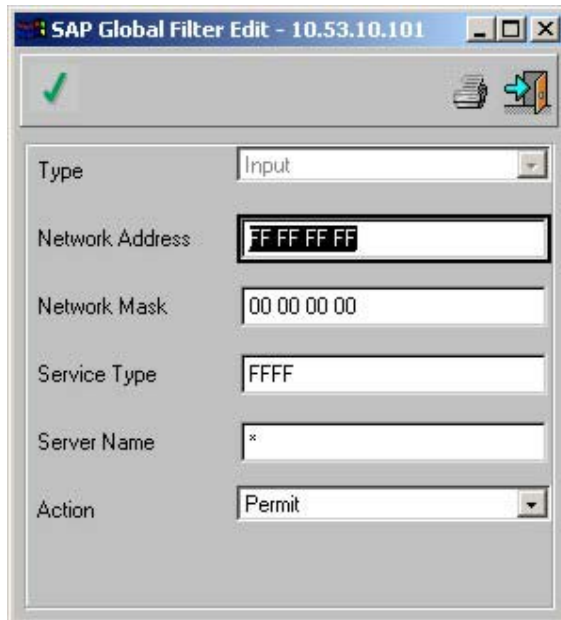


**Figure 6- 167. SAP Global Filter Insert window**

3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **SAP Global Filter Insert** window. The **SAP Global Filter Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.



***To edit a SAP Global filter:***

1. Display the **SAP Global Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **SAP Global Filter Edit** window opens:





|                 |             |
|-----------------|-------------|
| Type            | Input       |
| Network Address | FF FF FF FF |
| Network Mask    | 00 00 00 00 |
| Service Type    | FFFF        |
| Server Name     | *           |
| Action          | Permit      |

**Figure 6- 168. SAP Global Filter Edit window**

4. Edit the fields.
5. Click .
6. Close the **SAP Global Filter Edit** window. The **SAP Global Filter Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

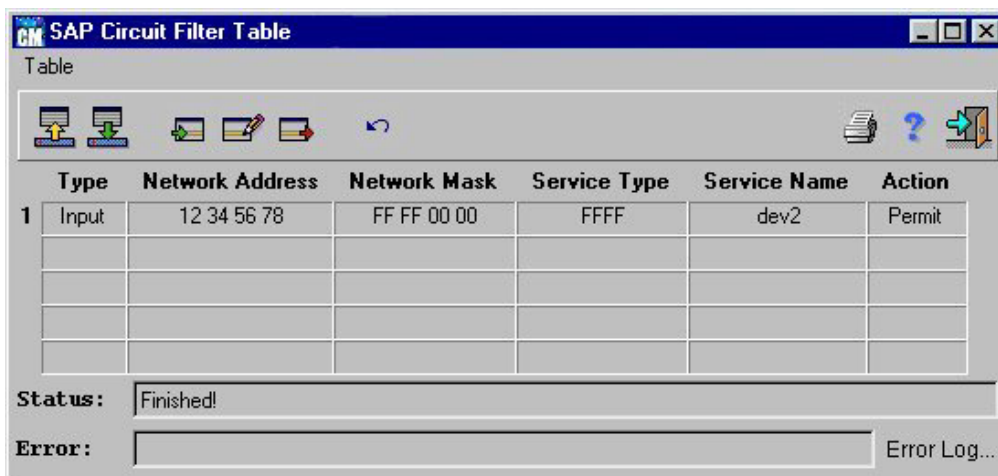
***To delete a SAP Global filter:***



1. Display the **SAP Global Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The filter is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

**To display the SAP Circuit Filters:**

1. Display the **IPX RIP/SAP Filter** window.
2. Press the **SAP Circuit Filter** button. The **SAP Circuit Filter Table** opens:



**Figure 6- 169. SAP Circuit Filter Table window**

The **SAP Circuit Filter Table** displays the following parameters:

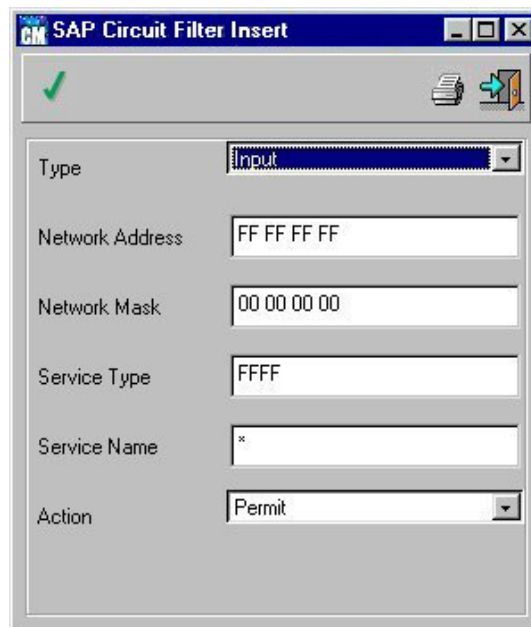
- **Type** – Defines whether the current filter entry works on traffic coming into or out of the device.
- **Network Address** – The network pattern the filter entry affects. The network pattern works in conjunction with the network mask to define the filter entry.
- **Network Mask** – Type in the letters F, 8, C, E, and 0 as many times as desired to indicate which part of the network pattern is important. The mask must be continuous from left to right. 00000000 means all addresses, ffffffff means one address (no address range). A combination of f 0 indicates a specific range. This combination must have f on the left side, 0 on the right side, and a single F, 8, C, or E, or 0 between them.

For example, if the network pattern is set to 12345678, set the network mask to ffff0000 to indicate that only the first four numbers of the network pattern are checked, and the remaining numbers are irrelevant. In this example, only RIP messages with the numbers 1234 as their first four digits are affected.


- **Service Type** – Type in the type of server (in hex) the filter entry affects, such as file server or print server. Value 0xFFFF applies for all types of service and is the default.
- **Service Name** – Type in the server name the filter entry affects. An asterisk (\*) at the end of the name as a wildcard, designating any number of characters.  
For example, \* indicates any server name, and **sh\*** indicates any server name starting with **sh**. The name may be up to 47 characters.
- **Action** – Defines whether the indicated packets are to be forwarded (permit) or blocked (denied) when the current filter entry conditions are met. This parameter can be used to fine-tune other filter entries. For example, a filter entry can be set to block all SAP messages with a network pattern starting with 123, and set another filter entry to permit all SAP messages with a network pattern starting with 1234. As a result, all SAP messages with a network pattern starting with 123 that do not have 4 as the fourth digit are blocked.  
The default is forward, but the default can be set by creating a general filter entry with the network mask 00000000, and setting it to permit or deny.

**To add a SAP Circuit filter:**

1. Display the **SAP Circuit Filter Table**.
2. Click . The **SAP Circuit Filter Insert** window opens:




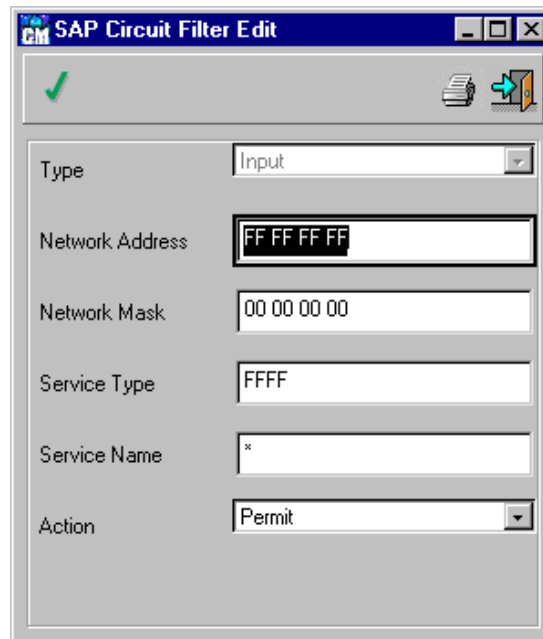
**Figure 6- 170. SAP Circuit Filter Insert window**

3. Complete the fields. For the field Service Name – Select either ASCII or Hex.
4. Click .
5. Close the **SAP Circuit Filter Insert** window. The **SAP Circuit Filter Table** opens.



6. Click . When the *Status* field displays *Finished!*, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To edit a SAP Circuit filter:***

1. Display the **SAP Circuit Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **SAP Global Filter Edit** window opens:





**Figure 6- 171. SAP Circuit Filter Edit window**

4. Edit the fields.
5. Click .
6. Close the **SAP Global Filter Edit** window. The **SAP Global Filter Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To delete a SAP Circuit filter:***

1. Display the **SAP Circuit Filter Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.

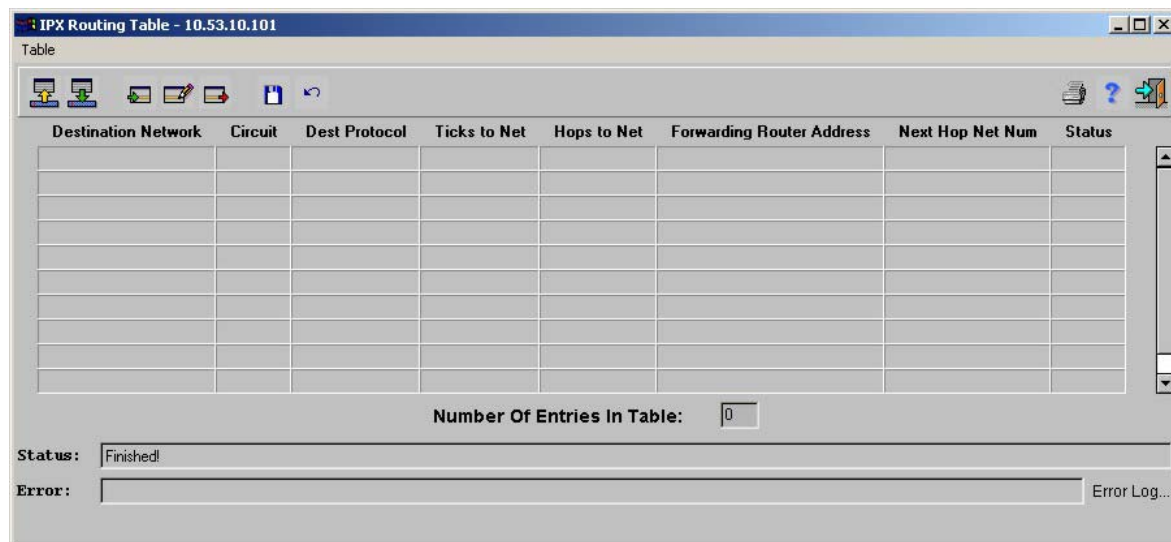
3. Click . The filter is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## IPX Routing Table

The **IPX Routing Table** contains the best route for each destination network that can be reached by the selected IPX router.

### *To display the IPX Routing Table:*

Select **Router > IPX > Routing Table**. The *IPX Routing Table* opens:




**Figure 6- 172. IPX Routing Table window**

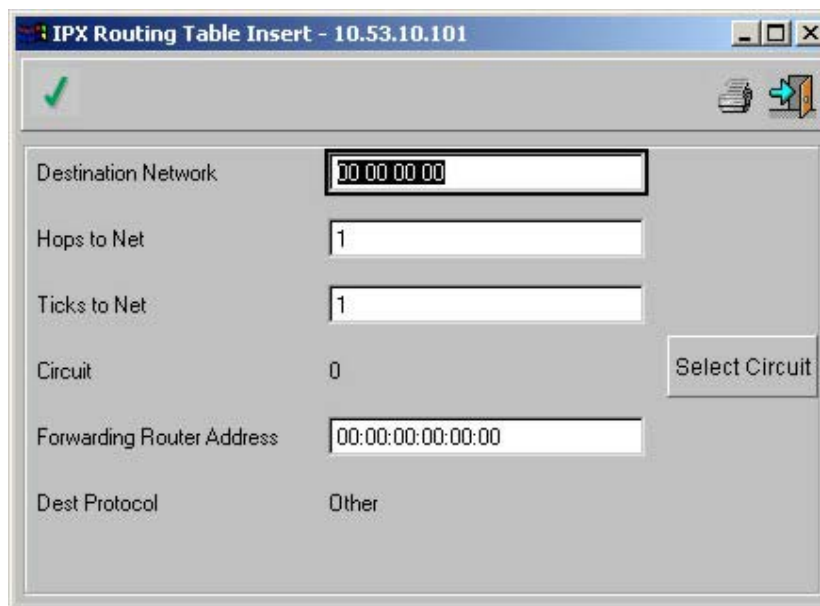
The **IPX Routing Table** displays the following parameters:

- **Destination Network** – Destination IPX network numbers in ascending order.
- **Circuit** – The circuit number used to reach the next-hop.
- **Dest Protocol** – The routing protocol from which knowledge of this destination was obtained:
  - Static – User-defined entry (SNMP).
  - Local – The entry derived from an IPX interface definition.
  - RIP – The entry learned from the RIP protocol.
- **Ticks to Net** – Time estimate required for the propagation of a packet sent along the route described by this table entry to the destination network. This estimate is given in ticks (there are 18.21 ticks in a second), and does not include delays introduced by buffers used for temporary storage of packets in routers.
- **Hops to Net** – Describes this table entry number of hops on the route to the destination network. Entries with more than 15 hops are removed from the table.

- **Forwarding Router Address** – IPX node address (12 hexadecimal digits) of the next IPX router in the route to the destination network, described by this table entry. If the destination network is one of the network segments directly connected to this IPX router, this field is all zeroes.
- **Next-hop NetNum** – Next-hop IPX network number.
- **Status** – Defines whether the RIP interface is active. OFF is inactive but not deleted.

*To add an IPX Routing Table entry:*

1. Display the **IPX Routing Table**.
2. Click . The **IPX Routing Table Insert** window opens:

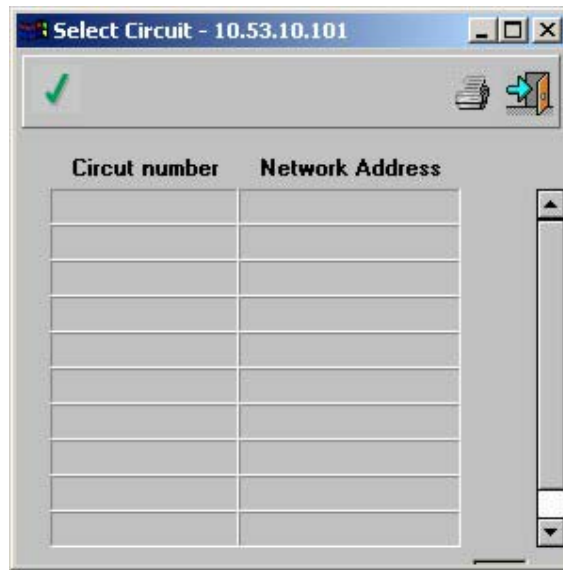


The image shows a window titled "IPX Routing Table Insert - 10.53.10.101". It contains several input fields and a button. A green checkmark icon is in the top left corner. The fields are: "Destination Network" with value "00 00 00 00", "Hops to Net" with value "1", "Ticks to Net" with value "1", "Circuit" with value "0", "Forwarding Router Address" with value "00:00:00:00:00:00", and "Dest Protocol" with value "Other". A "Select Circuit" button is located to the right of the "Circuit" field.

**Figure 6- 173. IPX Routing Table Insert window**

An IPX circuit is linked to the Destination network.




To select an IPX circuit, on the **IPX Routing Table Insert** window click the **Select Circuit** button. The **Select Circuit** window opens:




**Figure 6- 174. Select Circuit window**

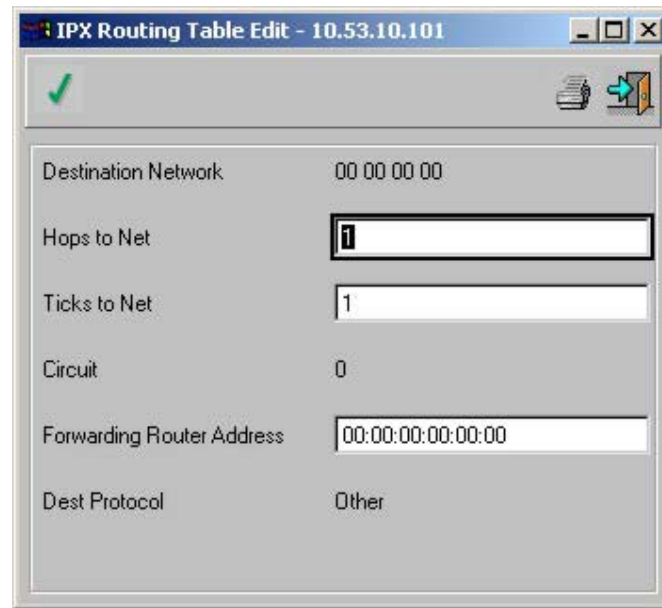
The **Select Circuit** window displays the following parameters:

- **Circuit Number** – The IPX circuit number.
- **Network Address** – The IPX circuit network address.



3. Select an entry in the table.
4. Click .
5. Close the **Select Circuit** window. **IPX Routing Table Insert** window opens.
6. Complete the fields.
7. Click .
8. Close the **IPX Routing Table Insert** window. The **IPX Routing Table** opens.
9. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

**To edit an IPX Routing Table entry:**



1. Display the **IPX Routing Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **IPX Routing Table Edit** window opens:



**Figure 6- 175. IPX Routing Table Edit window**

4. Complete the fields.
5. Click .
6. Close the **IPX Routing Table Edit** window. The **IPX Routing Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To delete an IPX Routing Table entry:***

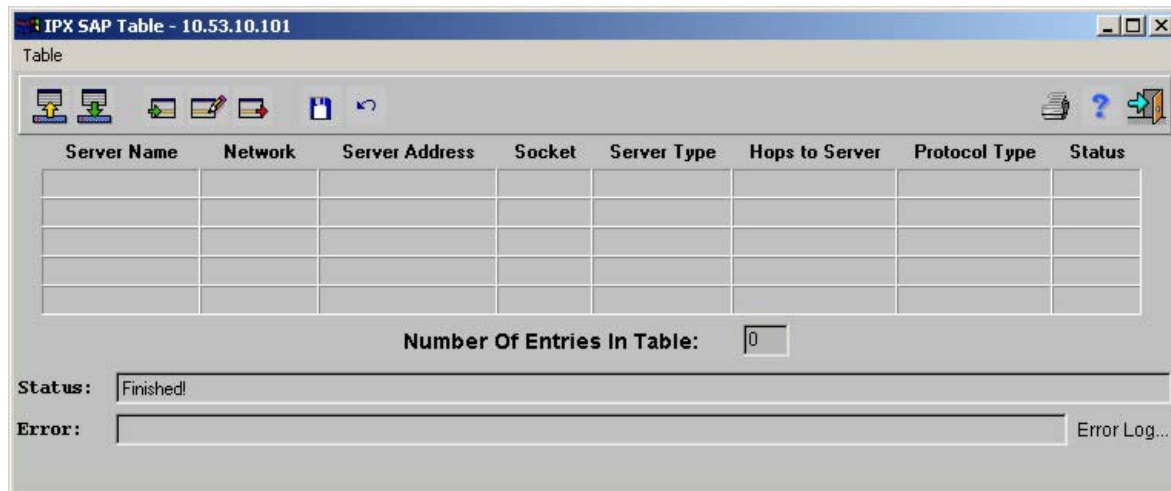
1. Display the **IPX Routing Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## **IPX SAP Table**

The **SAP Table** contains information on each server located on a destination network that can be reached by the selected IPX router.

***To display the SAP Table:***

Select **Router > IPX > SAP Table**. The *IPX SAP Table* opens:




**Figure 6- 176. IPX SAP Table window**

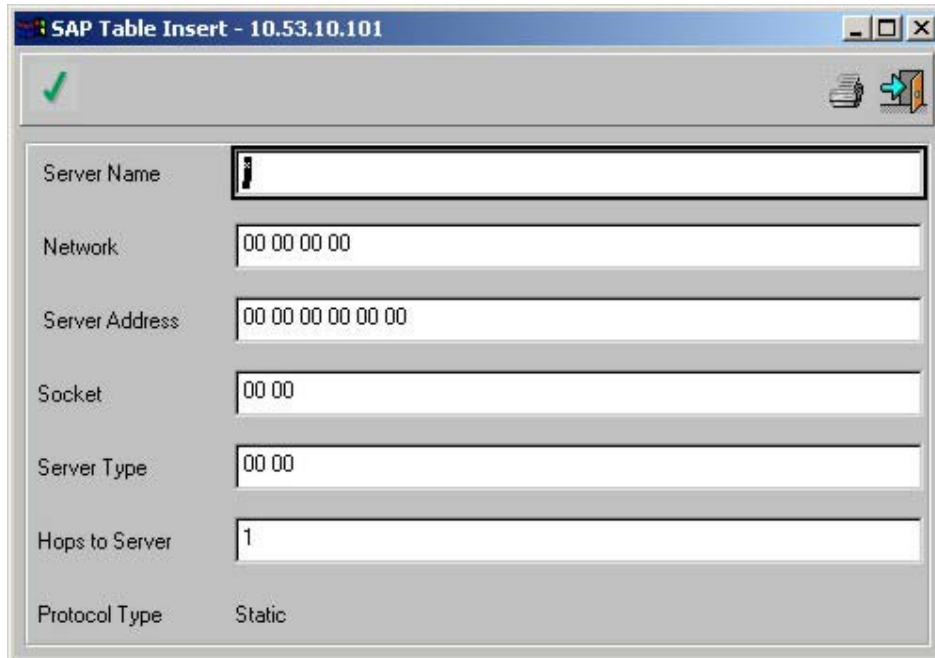
The **IPX SAP Table** displays the following parameters:

- **Server Name** – Server type and server name to identify a server. The name can include up to 47 characters.
- **Network** – Network portion (eight hexadecimal digits) from the IPX server address.
- **Server Address** – Node portion 12 hexadecimal digits) from the IPX server address.
- **Socket** – Socket portion up to four hexadecimal digits) from the IPX server address.
- **Server Type** – Type of service (assigned by Novell) provided by the server.
- **Hops to Server** – Number of hops on the route to the server, as determined by the IPX SAP routing algorithm.
- **Protocol Type** – The information source protocol.
  - Static – User-defined entry (SNMP)
  - SAP – SAP protocol.
- **Status** – Defines whether the SAP interface is active. OFF is inactive but not deleted.

**To add an IPX SAP Table entry:**



1. Display the **IPX SAP Table**.
2. Click . The **IPX Routing Table Insert** window opens:




The image shows a window titled "SAP Table Insert - 10.53.10.101". It has a green checkmark icon in the top left and a printer icon in the top right. The window contains several input fields: "Server Name" (with a cursor), "Network" (00 00 00 00), "Server Address" (00 00 00 00 00 00), "Socket" (00 00), "Server Type" (00 00), "Hops to Server" (1), and "Protocol Type" (Static).

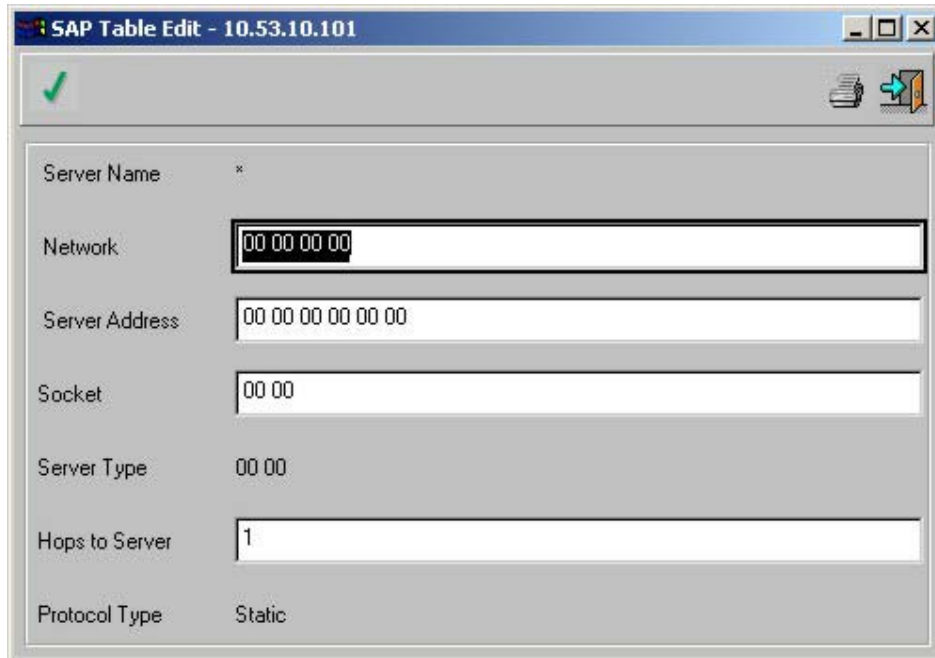
|                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| Server Name    |                   |
| Network        | 00 00 00 00       |
| Server Address | 00 00 00 00 00 00 |
| Socket         | 00 00             |
| Server Type    | 00 00             |
| Hops to Server | 1                 |
| Protocol Type  | Static            |

**Figure 6- 177. SAP Table Insert window**



3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **IPX SAP Table Insert** window. The **IPX SAP Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To edit an IPX SAP Table entry:***



1. Display the **IPX SAP Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **IPX SAP Table Edit** window opens:



**Figure 6- 178. IPX SAP Table Edit window**

4. Complete the fields.
5. Click .
6. Close the **IPX SAP Table Edit** window. The **IPX SAP Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To delete an IPX SAP Table entry:***

1. Display the **IPX SAP Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## Configuring Security Options

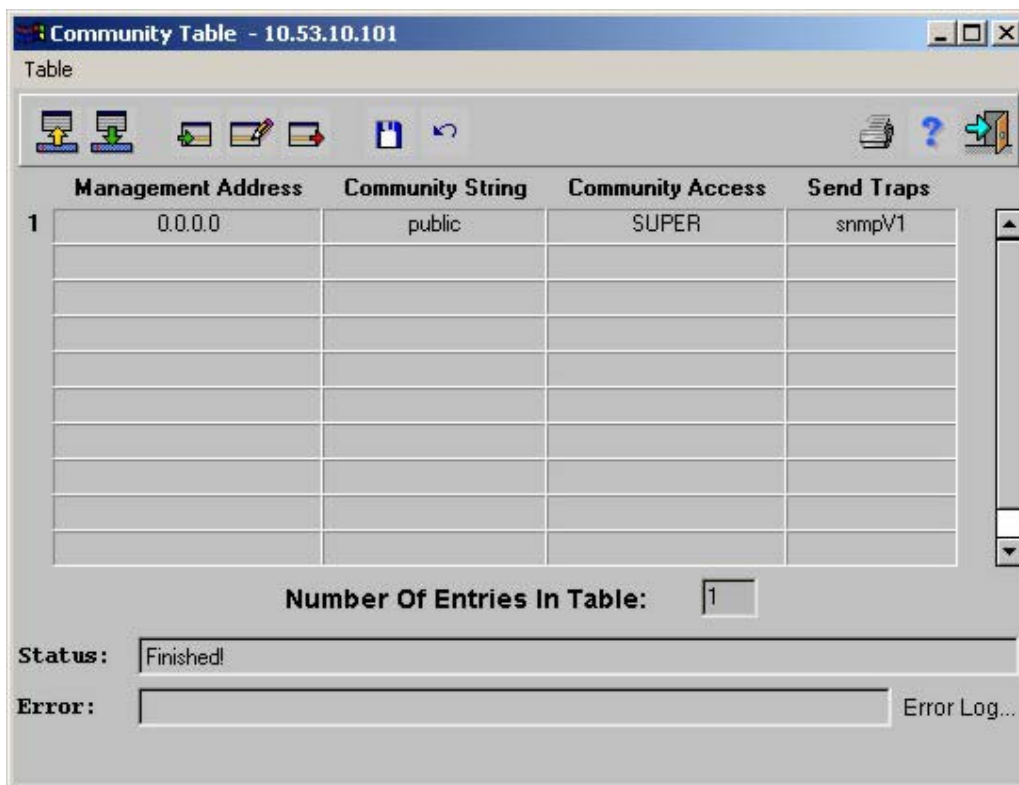
This chapter describes the **Security** menu and its options, including access setting for device management.

### Community Table

To enter the **Community Table**, *Super* access is required.

#### To display the Community Table

Select **Security > Community Table**. The *Community Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 179. Community Table window**


The **Community Table** displays the following parameters:

- **Management Address** – Management station IP address.
- **Community String** – Management station community name. This parameter operates as a password for gaining various access rights: for each device various communities with different names and access rights can be created.
- **Community Access** – Defines whether the management station access is *Read Only* or *Read Write*. Choose *Super Community* to set the name used to access the *Community Table*. The possible values are:
  - Read On

- Read Write
- Super
- **Send Traps** – Whether the management station receives traps from the device (*Enable*) or not (*Disable*).

**Note:** To change the community, Super Community access is required.



**To add a Community Table entry:**

1. Display the **Community Table**.
2. Click . The **Community Table Insert** window opens:




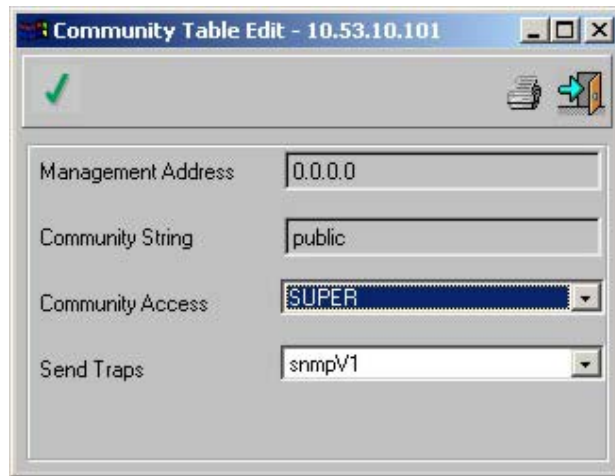
The image shows a window titled "Community Table Insert - 10.53.10.101". It contains four input fields: "Management Address" with the value "0.0.0.0", "Community String" with the value "public", "Community Access" with a dropdown menu showing "READ\_ONLY", and "Send Traps" with a dropdown menu showing "snmpv1". There is a green checkmark icon in the top left corner and a printer icon in the top right corner.

**Figure 6- 180. Community Table Insert window**



3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **Community Table Insert** window. The **Community Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

**To edit a Community Table entry:**



1. Display the **Community Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **Community Table Edit** window opens:



**Figure 6- 181. Community Table Edit window**

4. Complete the fields.
5. Click .
6. Close the **Community Table Edit** window. The **Community Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To delete a Community Table entry:***

1. Display the **Community Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## **Web User Authorization Table**

The **Web User Authorization Table** is used to provide authorization for configuring the device to run as an Embedded Web based NMS.

***To view the Web User Authorization Table:***

Select **Security > Web User Authorization Table**. The *Web User Authorization Table* is displayed.




**Figure 6- 182. Web User Authorization Table**



The **Web User Authorization Table** displays the following parameters:

- **Security User Name**—Assigned user name.
- **Security Password**—Defined user password.
- **Security Access**—Access configuration. The possible options are as follows:
  - *None*—Indicates that the user does not have access to the EWS
  - *Read Only*—Indicates that the user has read-only access to the EWS.
  - *Read Write*—Indicates that the user has read-write access to the EWS.
  - *Super*—Indicates that the user has read-write access to the EWS.


**To add a Web User Authorization Table entry:**

1. Display the **Web User Authorization Table**.
2. Click . The **Web User Authorization Table Insert** window is displayed.



**Figure 6- 183. Web User Authorization Table Insert**

3. Complete the fields.
4. Click . The **Web User Authorization Table** is displayed.
5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the entry is confirmed as inserted.



***To modify a Web User Authorization Table entry:***

1. Display the **Web User Authorization Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **Web User Authorization Table Edit** window is displayed.

**Figure 6- 184. Web User Authorization Table Window**

4. Complete the fields.
5. Click . The **Web User Authorization Table** window is displayed.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the entry is confirmed as edited.

**To delete a Web User Authorization Table entry:**

1. Display the **Web User Authorization Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the entry is confirmed as deleted.

---

## Configuring Quality of Service

---

This section describes the **QoS** menu and its options, including policies and creating, editing, and deleting rules, IP classification fields, and policy profiles.

**Quality of Service (QoS)** allows network managers to improve the flow of network traffic based on policies. Policies are comprised of profiles, classification fields, and rules.

The **QoS** menu has the following menu options

- Global Parameters
- Profile Table
- Routed IP

### **Global Parameters**

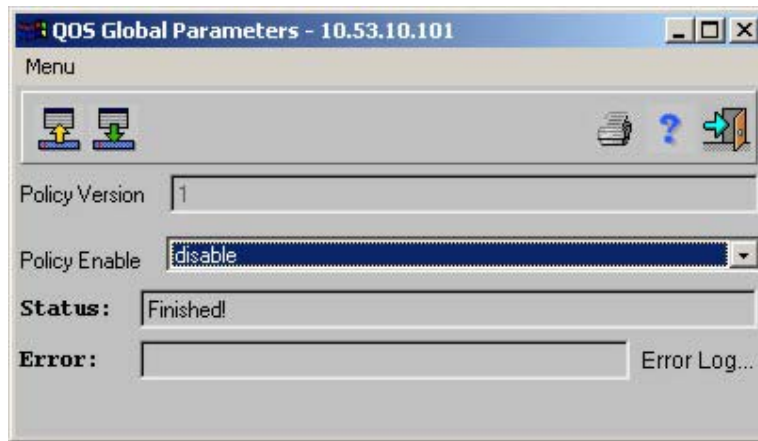
**Note:** To enable QoS, ensure that the auto-negotiation is disabled and that the output port is in full duplex mode.

The **QOS Global Parameters** window allows you to enable or disable a policy on a device. Policies are sets of profiles and rules that allow you to manage network traffic

**To display the QOS Global Parameters window:**

Select **QOS > Global Parameters**. The **QOS Global Parameters** window opens:






**Figure 6- 185. QOS Global Parameters window**

The **QOS Global Parameters** window displays the following parameters:

- **Policy Enabled** – If enabled, this policy is enabled on the device

*To enable a policy on a device:*

1. Display the **QOS Global Parameters** window.
2. Set the policy status to enabled.
3. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “Finished!”, the policy is enabled on the device.

## ***Profile Table***

Profiles determine the actions taken on a packet entering a device according to their bandwidth definitions.

*To display the Profile Table:*

Select **QoS > Profile Table**. The *QOS Profile Table* opens:

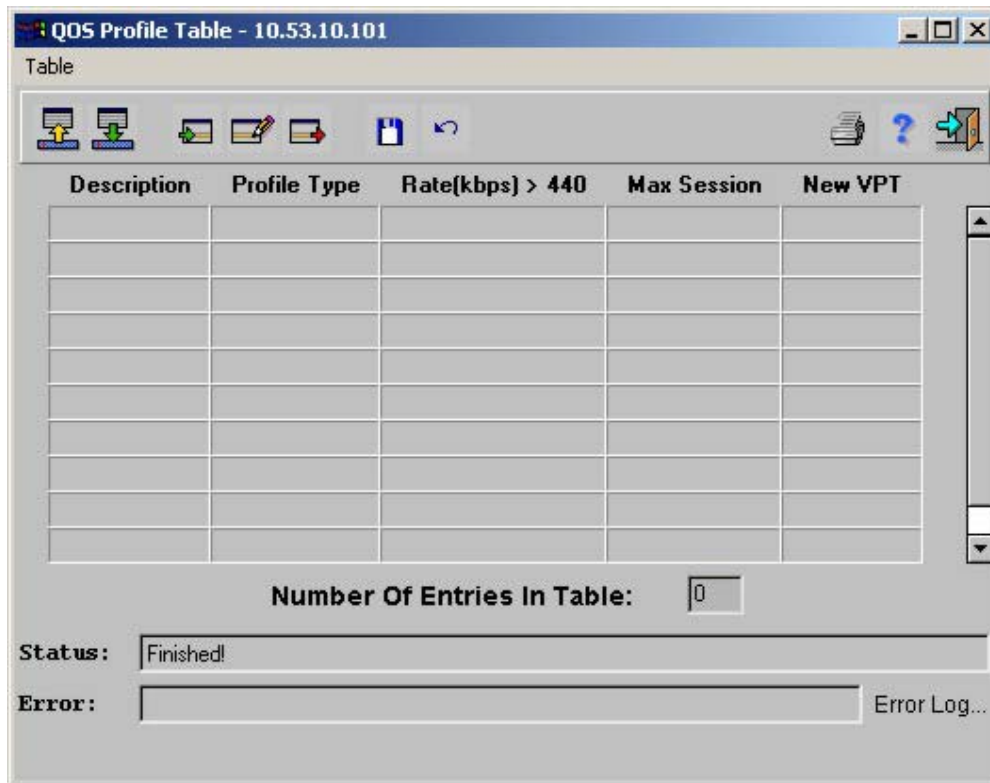





Figure 6- 186. QOS Profile Table window

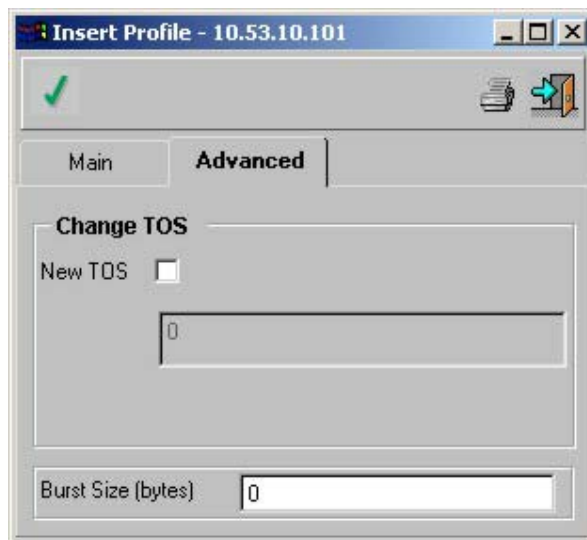
The **QOS Profile Table** displays the following parameters:

- **Description** – The user-defined description of the profile.
- **Profile Type** – The type of forwarding service to be applied to packets. The possible values are:
  - **BandwidthGuarantee** – Defines the bandwidth size for packets being forwarded. Packets must meet the bandwidth requirements to be forwarded. Packets exceeding the defined bandwidth size are dropped.
  - **minbandwidthGuarantee** – Defines the minimum bandwidth size for packets being forwarded. Packets beyond the defined bandwidth size receive a best-effort forwarding priority.
  - **minDelay** – Forwards packets with a priority of real time forwarding. Packets exceeding the assigned amount of bandwidth are dropped.
  - **minDelayPerSession** – Defines the amount of bandwidth per session for a real time forwarding priority. Sessions exceeding the defined amount of sessions are dropped.
- **Rate (kbps) > 440** – The rate in kilobits/seconds assigned to a profile for forwarding a packet. The values are 0-12 Gbps depending on the output port.
- **Max Session** – Max Session is only relevant to the *minDelayPerSession* profile type. Indicates the maximum number of sessions that can occur for a profile instance.
- **New VPT** – The VPT (VLAN Priority Tag). The possible values are 0-7. Zero is the default. The higher the Vpt tag value the higher the forwarding priority.
- **New ToS** – Type of Service. Enables you to override the ToS value. The possible values are 0-3.

- **Burst Size (bytes)** – The amount of bytes that can be forwarded back-to-back faster than normal speed. If the value is 0, the device uses a predefined value. The default size is 0. If the burst size value is 0, the value for *minDelayPerSession* and *minDelay* is 1,536 bytes. *MinbandwidthGuarantee* and *BandwidthGuarantee* are forwarded with a value of 3x 1,536 bytes.



**To add a new profile:**

1. Display the **QOS Profile Table**.
2. Double-click an empty row in the **QOS Profile Table**.  
or  
Click . The **Insert Profile** window opens. The **Insert Profile** window has two tabs:
  - **Main tab** – Displays the main options for assigning profiles including the profiles description, type, rate, maximum sessions, and new Vpt. The default tab is the **Main** tab.
  - **Advanced tab** – Displays advanced options for assigning profiles including new ToS and burst size.
3. Complete the fields. The fields are the same as the **Profile Table** as described above.
4. Click . The **Insert Profile** window closes.
5. Click  to update the device. When the Status field displays “Finished!” the profile is saved to the device.  
or  
Select the **Advanced** tab. The **Advanced** tab opens:





**Figure 6- 187. Insert Profile window - Advanced tab**


6. Complete the fields. The fields are the same as the **Profile Table** as described above.

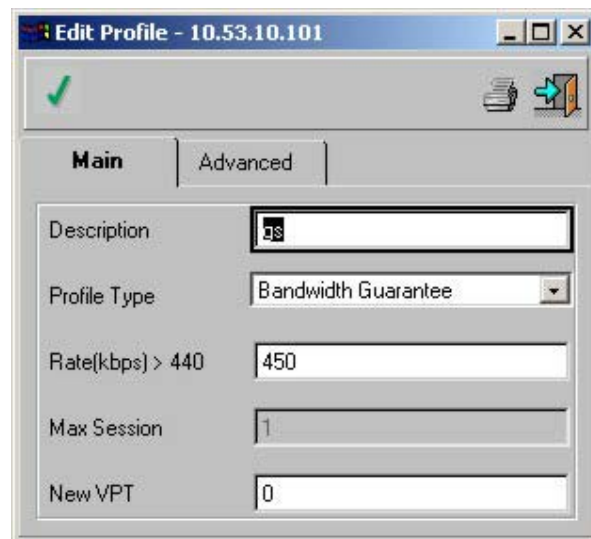
7. Click . The **Insert Profile** window closes.
8. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the profile is saved to the device.

**To edit a profile:**

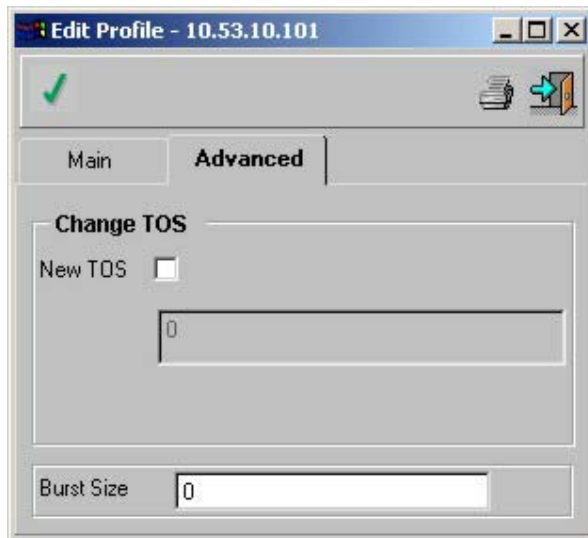
1. Display the **Profile Table**.
2. Click . The **Insert Profile** window closes.
3. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the profile is saved to the device.

**To edit a profile:**



1. Display the **Profile Table**.
2. Select an entry in the **Profile Table** and click . The **Edit Profile** window opens.  
or  
Double-click a row in the **Profile Table**. The **Edit Profile** window opens:





**Figure 6- 188. Edit Profile window - Main tab**



**Figure 6- 189. Edit Profile window - Advanced tab**

3. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **Profile Table** as described above.
4. Click . The **Edit Profile** window closes.
5. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the profile is saved to the device.

**To delete a profile:**

1. Display the **Profile Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted from the **Profile Table**.
4. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the profile is deleted from the device.

**Note:**      *Profiles attached to a rule cannot be deleted*

## **Routed IP**

The **Routed IP** menu has the following menu options:

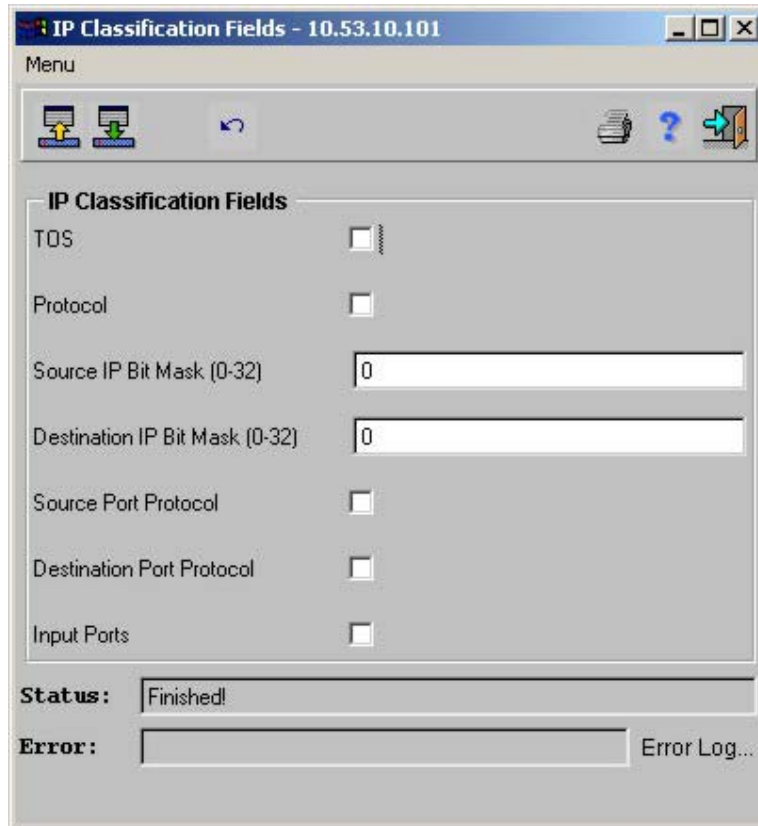
- Routed IP Classification Fields
- Routed IP Rules Table

### **IP Classification Fields**

IP Classification Fields window allows you to define the fields used to classify network traffic.

*To display the IP Classification Fields window:*

Select **QoS > Routed IP > Routed IP Classification Fields**. The *IP Classification Fields* window opens:




**Figure 6- 190. IP Classification Fields window**

The **IP Classification Fields** window displays the following parameters:

- **ToS** – Type of Service. Enables (checked) classification by the ToS tagging for forwarding packets.
- **Protocol** – Enables (checked) classification of packets by their type of protocol.
- **Source IP Bit Mask (0-32)** – Used to mask all or part of the source IP address. If selected, QoS matches packets arriving from the indicated source IP address, within the limits of the source IP mask. The values are 0-32.
- **Destination IP Bit Mask (0-32)** – Used to mask all or part of the destination IP address. If selected, QoS matches packets being sent to the indicated destination IP address, within the limits of the destination IP mask. The values are 0-32.
- **Source Port Protocol** – Enables (checked) the classification of arriving packets by their source port protocol type.
- **Destination Port Protocol** – Enables (checked) the classification of arriving packets by their destination port protocol type.
- **Input Ports** – Enables (checked) the classification of arriving packets by the physical input port.

**To Define the IP Classification Fields:**

1. Display the **IP Classification Fields** window.
2. Complete the fields. The fields are the same as the IP Classification Fields described above.
3. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the IP Classification Fields are saved to the device.

**IP Rules Table**

The **IP Rules Table** allows you to define the filters that determine which network traffic is managed. The **IP Rules Table** contains two types of filters:

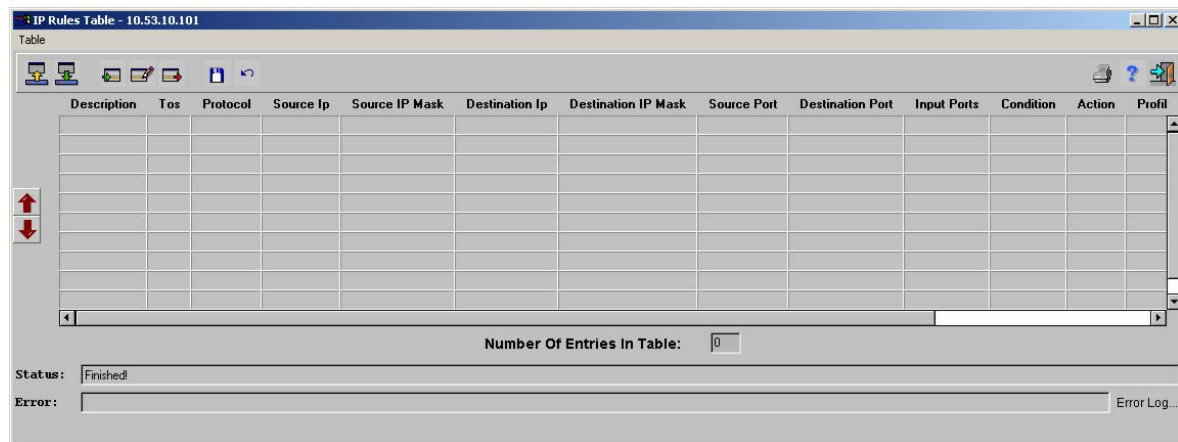
- Filters that determine how packets are matched to a rule. For example, the Protocol, ToS, Source Port, Destination Port, Input Ports, and Output Ports fields.
- Filters that determine what forwarding action is taken on packets. For example, the Condition and Actions fields.

**Note:** The fields that appear in the IP Rules Table reflect the IP Classification Fields that were selected.

**Note:** Rules cannot be added to the IP Rules Table if the IP Classification Fields have not been defined.

**To display the IP Rules Table:**

Select **QoS > IP > IP Rules Table**. The *IP Rules Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 191. IP Rules Table window**

The **IP Rules Table** contains fields that reflect the type of IP Classification Fields selected and additional parameters for forwarding packets:

- **Description** – The user-defined description of the rule.
- **ToS** – Type of Service. Indicates the predefined ToS used to classify packets. If selected, the rule applies to packets matching the ToS type. The possible values are 0-3. The default value is disabled.
- **Protocol** – The protocol type. Indicates the type of predefined protocols used to classify packets. If selected, the rule applies to packets of this indicated protocol. The possible values are TCP or UDP.
- **Source IP** – The source IP address of packets being matched to the rule. If selected, QoS matches the rule to packets arriving from the indicated source IP address.
- **Source IP Mask** – Used to mask all or part of the source IP address. If selected, QoS looks for and matches the rule to packets being sent from the indicated source IP address, within the limits of the Source IP Mask. The Source IP Mask must not exceed the limits set in the *IP Classification* fields.
- **Destination IP** – The destination address of packets being matched to the rule. If selected, QoS looks for and applies the rule to packets being sent to the indicated IP address.
- **Destination IP Mask** – Used to mask all or part of the destination IP address. If selected, QoS looks for and matches the rule to packets being sent to the indicated destination IP address, within the limits of the destination IP mask. The Destination IP Mask must not exceed the limits set in the *IP Classification* fields.
- **Source Port** – Indicates if and which source port should be used when matching the rule to packets.
- **Destination Port** – Indicates if and which destination port should be used when matching the rule to packets.
- **Condition** – Specifies whether the packets' value should be different from the rules' value. The possible values are:
  - **Bigger** – Looks for a higher value than the exact data. Indicates that the parameter values of a packet should be larger than the parameter values of the rule.
  - **Smaller** – Looks for a lower value than the exact data. Indicates that the parameter values of a packet should be smaller than the parameter values of the rule.
  - **Equal** – Looks for the exact data. Indicates that all of the parameter values of a packet should match all of the parameter values of the rule.
  - **Not Equal** – Looks for non-matching data. Indicates that none of the parameter values of a packet should match the parameter values of the rule. All values must be different.
- **Input Port** – Indicates to which ports this rule applies. Packets arriving from the defined port are forwarded according to the rule definition.
- **Action** – The action to be taken on packets when matched to the rule. The possible values are:
  - **Block** – Drops packets.
  - **Block and Trap** – Drops packets and notifies the CPU that packets were dropped.
  - **Permit** – Forwards packets. If the action is *permit*, then the output ports to which this rule applies can be selected. This is the default value.
- **Profile Pointer** – Indicates which profile is attached to the rule. This field is only active if the forwarding action of the packet is *permit*. The default value is 0. Zero is illegal if the action is *permit*.




- **Output Ports** – Indicates to which ports this rule applies. This field is only active if the forwarding condition of the packet is *permit*. The default value is all ports.
- **Error Description** – Indicates if the rule is valid. The error description can be one of the following:
  - The bandwidth specified exceeds the available specified bandwidth on the output ports – Indicates that the amount of the bandwidth specified exceeds the available amount of bandwidth as defined for the profile matching the rule.
  - The QoS lock failed – Indicates that the rule cannot be applied to a packet. The possible reasons are:
    - Auto-negotiation is enabled.
    - The port is not in full duplex mode.
- **Status** – Indicates rule's status. The rule status can be one of the following:
  - Active – The rule is legal and currently active.
  - Not in Service – The rule is currently not active.
  - Not Ready – Indicates that some of the output ports do not meet the bandwidth allocation prerequisites or QoS locking prerequisites. Auto-negotiation should be disabled and the output port should be in full duplex mode.

**Note:** *The first rule matching a packet is applied, therefore, the order of the rules in the IP Rules Table is important.*

**To add a new rule in IP Rules Table:**

1. Display the **IP Rules Table**.
2. Double-click an empty row in the **IP Rules Table**.

Or

Click . The **IP Rules Insert** window is displayed. The **IP Insert Rules** window has the following tabs:

- **General**—Displays the general options for assigning rule value including the user-defined description, error description and if the rule is currently active.
- **Classification**—Displays the *IP Classification Fields* for assigning rule value including the ToS, protocol types, source and destination IP addresses, source and destination IP address masks, source and destination ports, and conditions.
- **Input Ports**—Displays a list of input ports to choose from for assigning rule value.
- **Actions**—Displays the action options for assigning rule value, including a list of the optional output ports if the action is **permit**.
- **Profiles**—Displays the profiles to attach to a rule if the action value is **permit**. The Profile tab is grayed out if the action is **block** or **block and trap**. The **Profiles** tab displays the same fields as the **Profile Table**. For a list of the fields in the **Profile Table**.

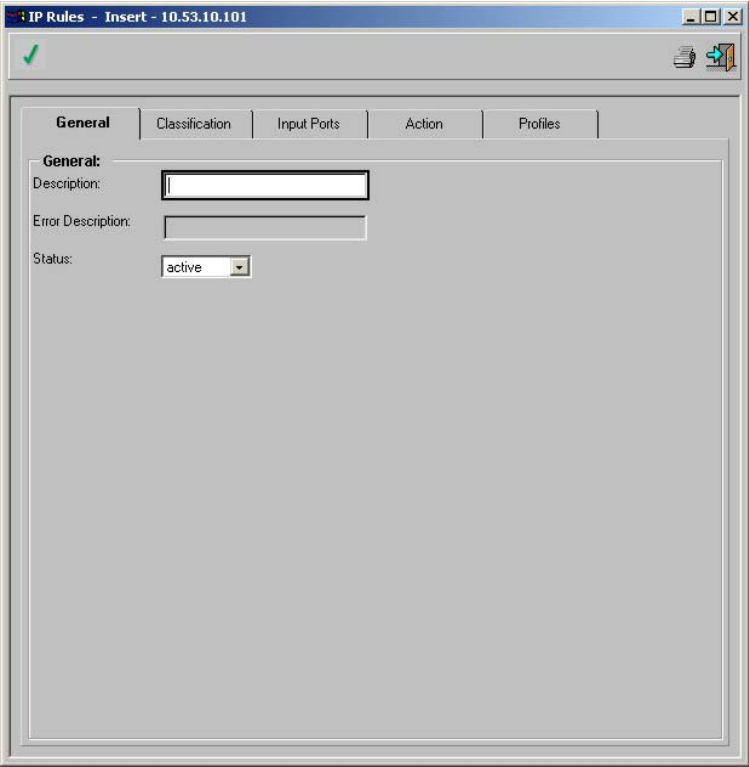


Figure 6- 192. IP Rules Insert Window

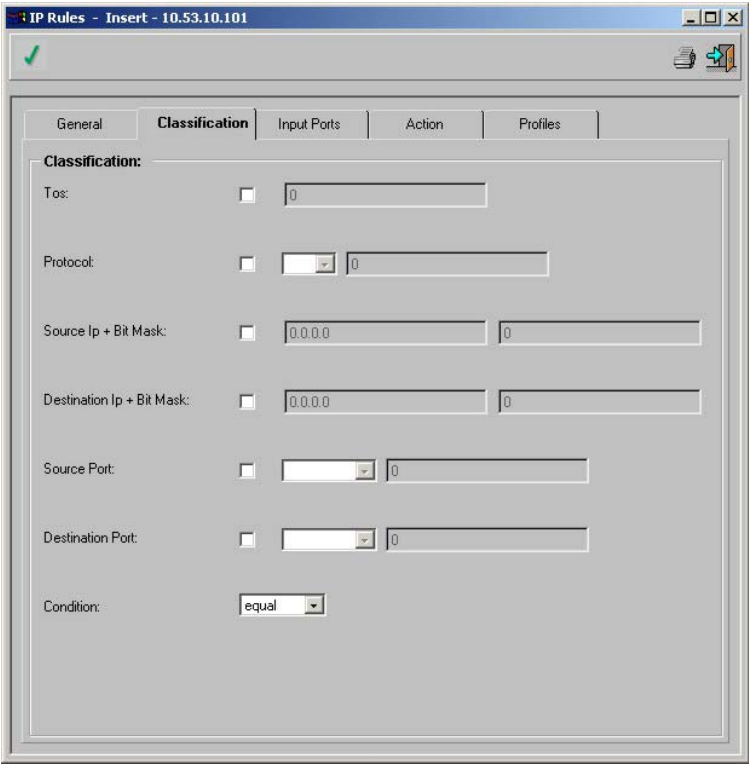


Figure 6- 193. IP Rules-Classification Tab

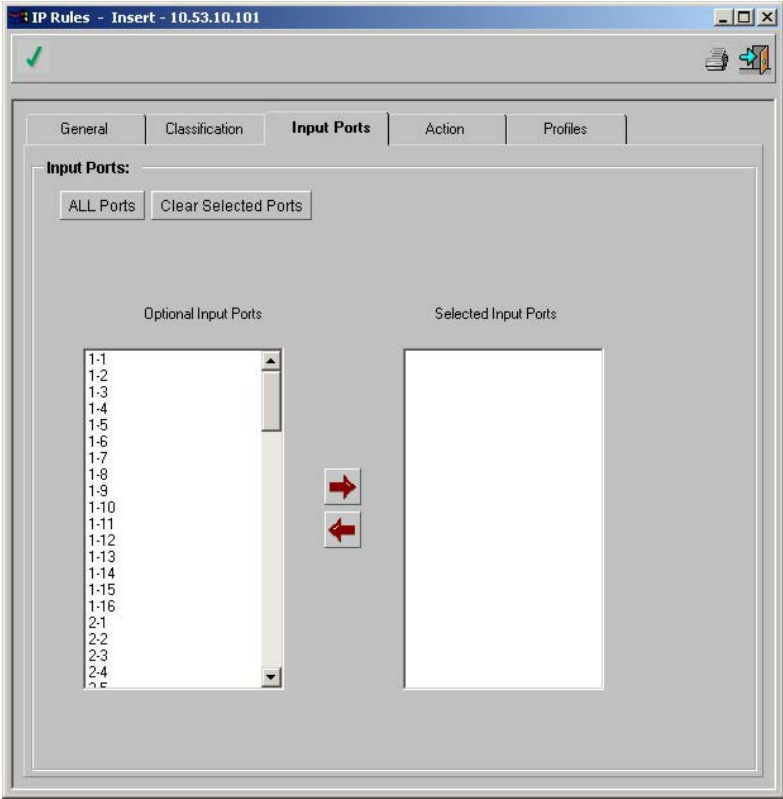


Figure 6- 194. IP Rules-Input Ports

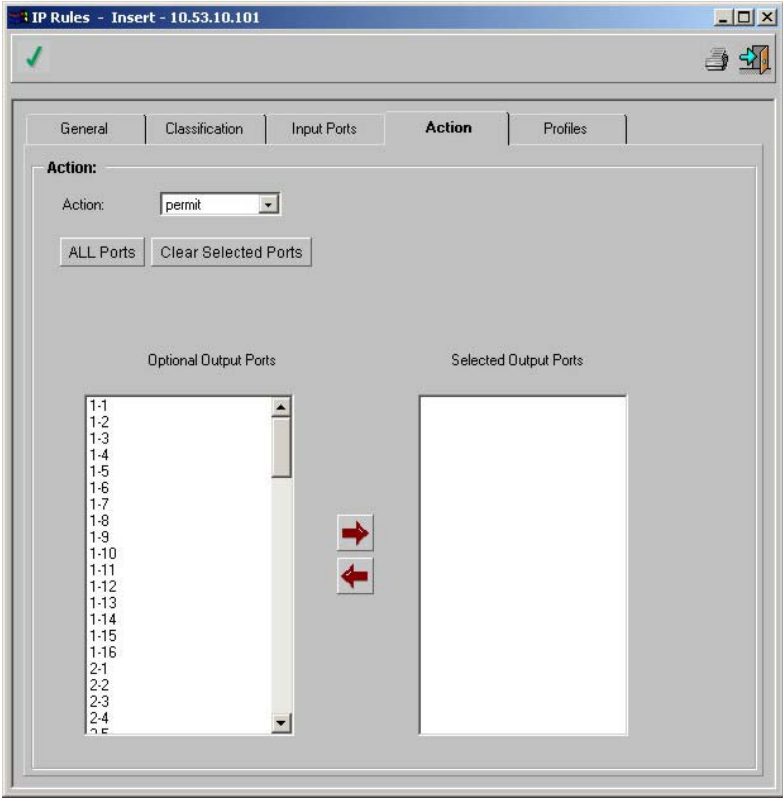
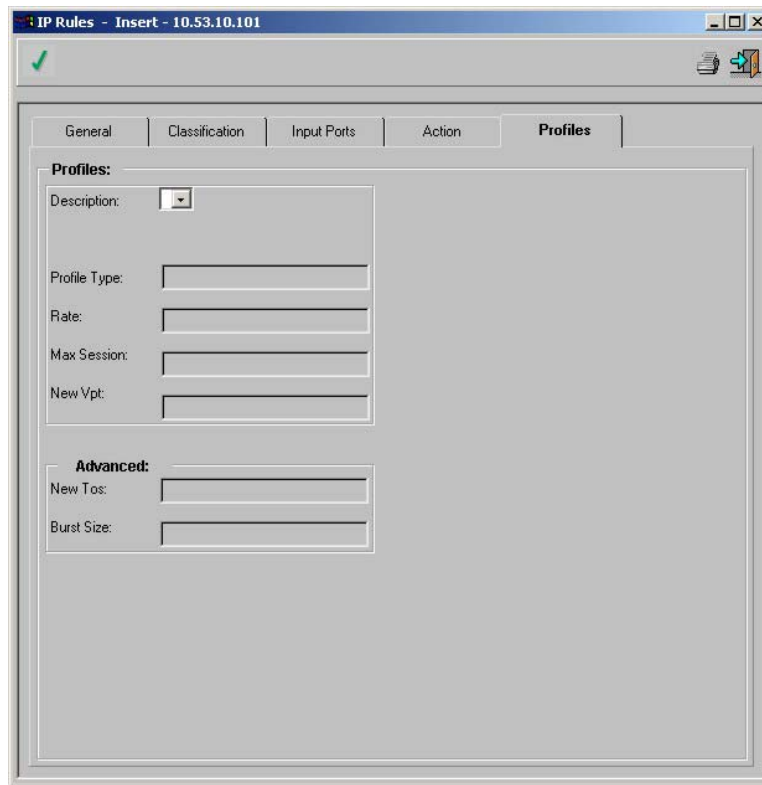





Figure 6- 195 IP Rules Insert window-Action Tab



**Figure 6- 196. IP Rules - Insert window Profiles tab**



3. Complete the fields. The fields are the same as the **IP Rules Table** as described above, except for the **Profiles** tab.
4. Click . The **IP Rules Insert** window closes.
5. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays "*Finished!*", the rule is saved to the policy. If the rules could not be set to the device, one of two errors may occur:
  - The bandwidth specified exceeds the available specified bandwidth on the output port.
  - The QoS lock failed.

***To modify a rule:***



1. Display the **IP Rules Table**.
2. Select an entry in the **IP Rules Table** and click . The **IP Rules Table-Insert window** is displayed.

Or

Double-click a row in the **IP Rules Table**. The **IP Rules Table-Insert window** is displayed.

3. Edit the fields. The fields are the same as the **IP Rules Table**, as described above, except for the Profiles tab.
4. Click . The **IP Rules Insert** window closes.
5. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the rule is saved to the device.

***To delete a rule:***

1. Display the **IP Rules Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click  to update the device. When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the rule is deleted from the policy.

---

## Working With Statistics

---

Devices supporting DECnet allow individual DECnet circuit counters to be graphed, and to reset those counters.

The BadPackets SNMP counter of certain devices is automatically monitored, and by default, provides information when an unusually high concentration of error packets occur. The relevant parameters are called the Threshold Parameters. The Threshold Parameters can be modified or disabled.


The **Statistics** menu has the following menu options:

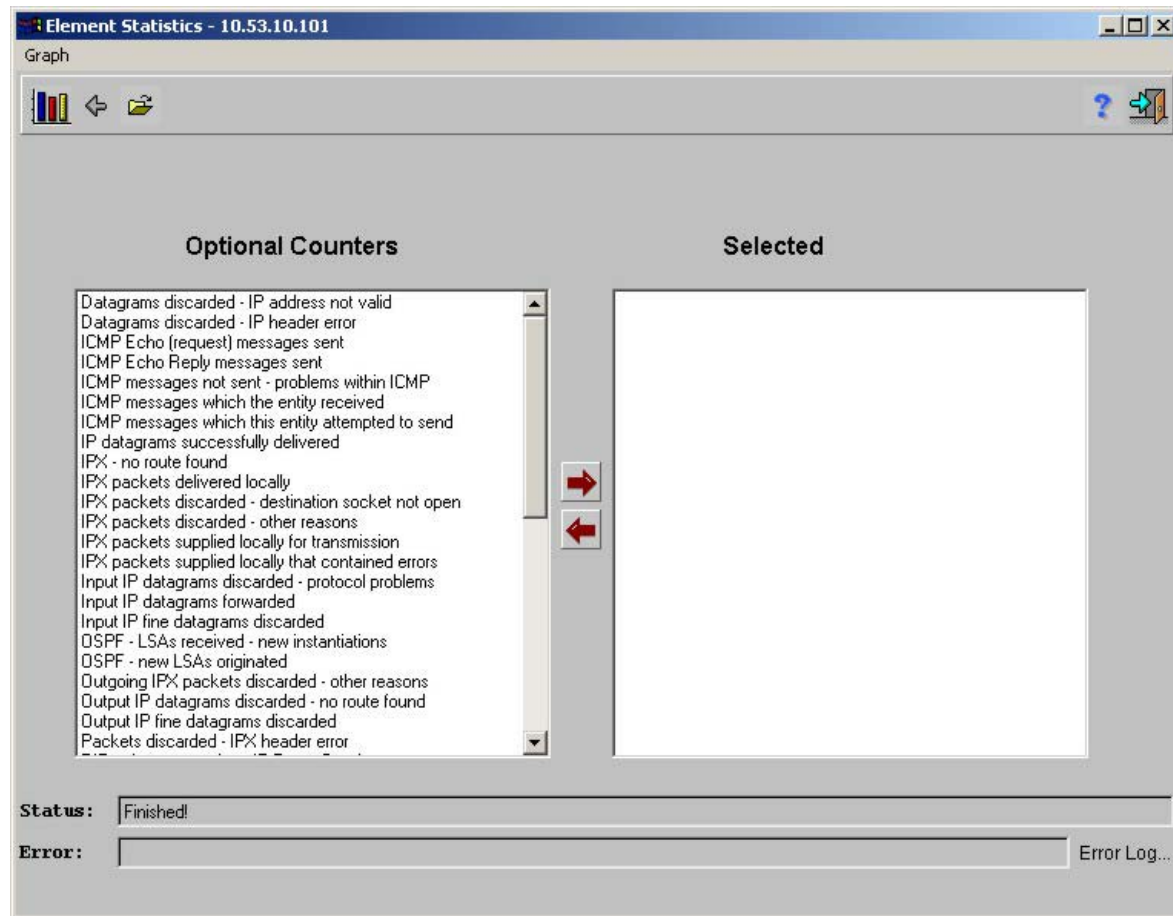
- Element Statistics
- Interface Statistics
- Port Statistics
- History
- Alarm Table
- Statistics Table
- Traps Table
- Log Table

### ***Element Statistics***

**Element Statistics** describes the device as a complete unit. The display is real-time.


***To display Element Statistics:***

Select **Statistics > Element Statistics**, or click , or press **Ctrl+P**. The *Element Statistics* window opens:




**Figure 6- 197. Element Statistics window**


Select the MIB required variables by one of the following methods:

- Double-click on the variable in the Optional Counters box. The variable is moved to the Selected box.
- or
- Select the variable in the Optional Counters box and click . The variable is moved to the Selected box.

**To remove a selected variables use one of the following methods:**

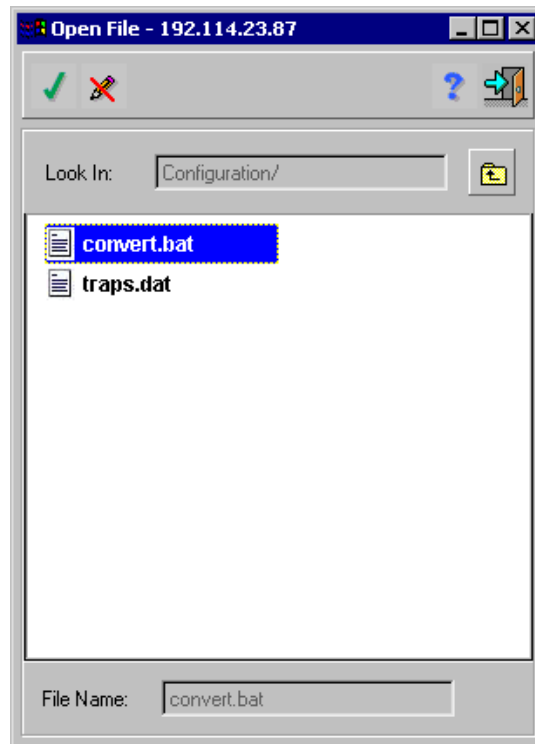
1. Double-click on the variable in the selected box.
2. Select the variable Selected box and click .

**To save a graph configuration use one of the following methods:**


Click . The configuration file can be edited with a standard editor.

*To load a previously saved graph configuration use one of the following methods:*

1. Click **Graph**, then click **Load Configuration From File**. An **Open File** window opens:



**Figure 6- 198. Open File window**

2. Select the file.
3. Click . The graph opens:

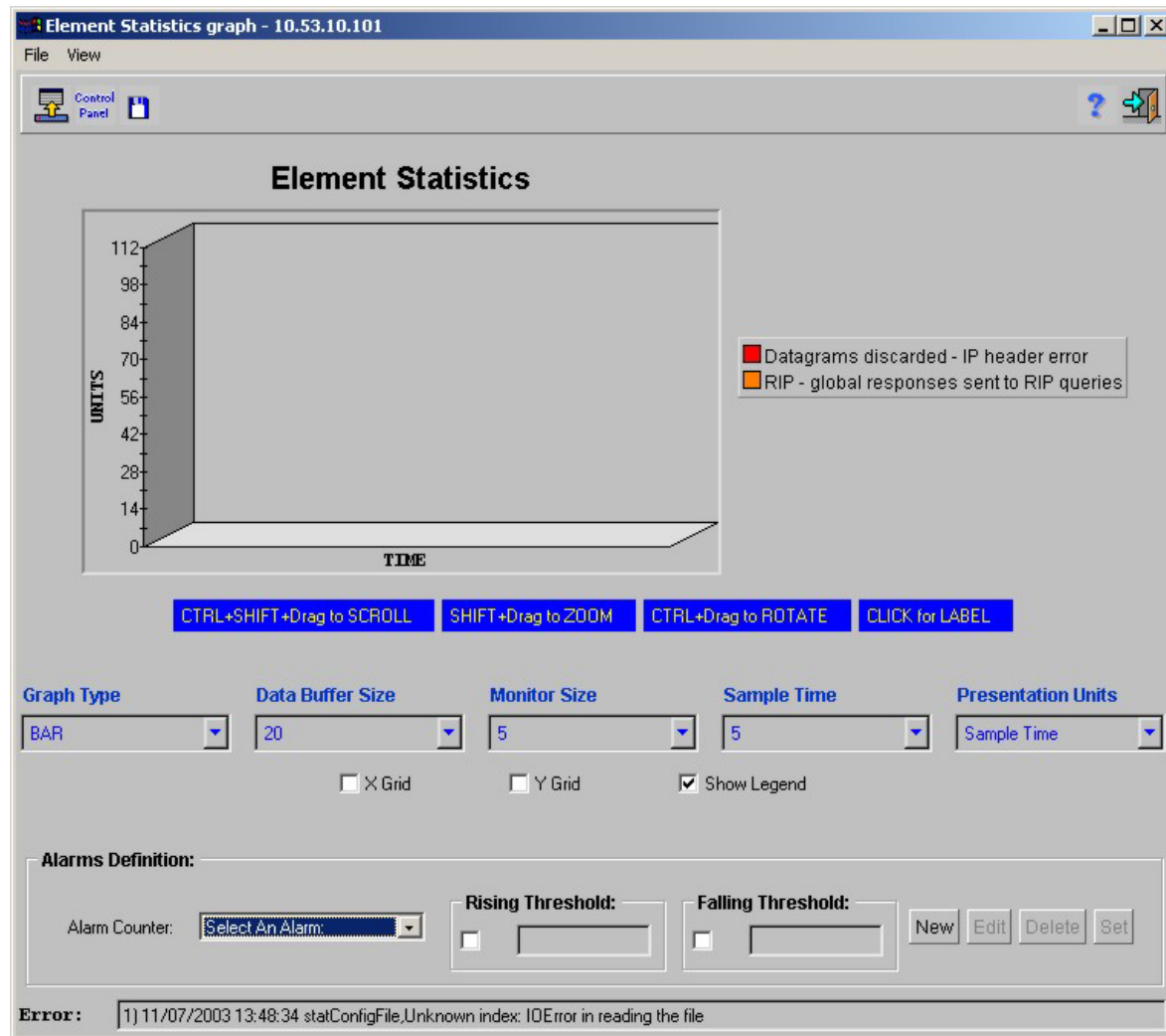


Figure 6- 199. Element Statistics Graph

The display is comprised of the following areas:

- Menu Bar
- Tool Bar
- Graph
- Legend
- Display Configuration
- Graph Controls
- Display Controls
- Alarm Definitions
- Other Controls

### Menu Bar

The Menu Bar has two commands:

- **File** – Has the following menu options:



- Save Configuration – Saves the current statistic configuration.
- Close – Closes the graph window.
- **View** – Has the following menu options:
  - Show/Hide Control Panel – Hides the Display and Graph controls.
  - Help

### ***Tool Bar***

The Tool Bar has the following icons:



Hides the Display and Graph controls.



Saves the current statistic configuration.

### ***Graph***

The graph is real-time with constant updates according to the Sample Time. The results shift as the new data is mapped on the graph. The Sample Time is displayed in the Graph Control area.

### ***Legend***

A list displaying the MIBs in the graph and their automatically assigned color-codes. Check/clear the **Show Legend** checkbox to display or hide the graph legend.

### ***Display Configuration***

The graph in the display area can be manipulated into different configurations.

### ***Graph Controls***

This area describes the parameters used in generating the data for display in the graphs. They include the following:

- **Graph Type** – Choose from various graphs types for data analysis. The available graph types are; bar, area, stacking area, plot, scatter-plot, stacking-bar and pie.
- **Data Buffer Size** – How many polling sessions will remain in memory for viewed by scrolling. Range is 5 to 100.
- **Monitor Size** – How many polling sessions are displayed without scrolling. Range is 1 to 100.
- **Sample Time** – How often the device or interface is polled (time interval, in seconds, between polling sessions). Range is 3 to 3600 seconds.
- **Presentation Units** – How often the histogram is updated.

If the Presentation Units value is set to Sample Time, the graph is updated at the polling rate specified in the Sample Time field.

If the Presentation Units is set to a value different from the Sample Time value, the histogram is updated at the Presentation Units rate displaying the estimated polling results. The graph is also updated with the true data at the Sample Time rate.

Set the Presentation Units to a value lower than the Sample Time in traffic-heavy systems (where too frequent system polling is not recommended).

For example: if the Sample Time is set to 10 seconds and the Presentation Units to 1 second, the graph is refreshed every second with extrapolated data and every 10 seconds with true data.

## ***Display Controls***

This area controls what is displayed on the screen.

## ***Alarm Definitions***

Displays the variable alarm characteristics.

## ***Other Controls***

Other controls include the following:

### ***To display graph data from earlier time periods available in the buffer:***

Press **Ctrl** and **Shift** while dragging the mouse on the graph to the right. The graph temporarily stops moving and is dragged back to an earlier period within the same session.

### ***To return to current data:***

Press **Ctrl** and **Shift** while dragging the mouse to the left.

### ***To Zoom into a particular graph area:***

Press **Shift** while dragging the mouse. When the mouse button is released, the selected area is expanded. Click the **Reset Display** button to return to normal viewing.

### ***To rotate the graph;***


Press **Ctrl** while dragging the mouse.

### ***To display actual variable values:***

Click on a graph element. A label with the following information opens:

- Variable name.
- Variable current value.

### ***To Hide the Control Panel:***

Click the **Control Panel** button to hide the control panel or display it beneath the graph .

## ***Interface Statistics***

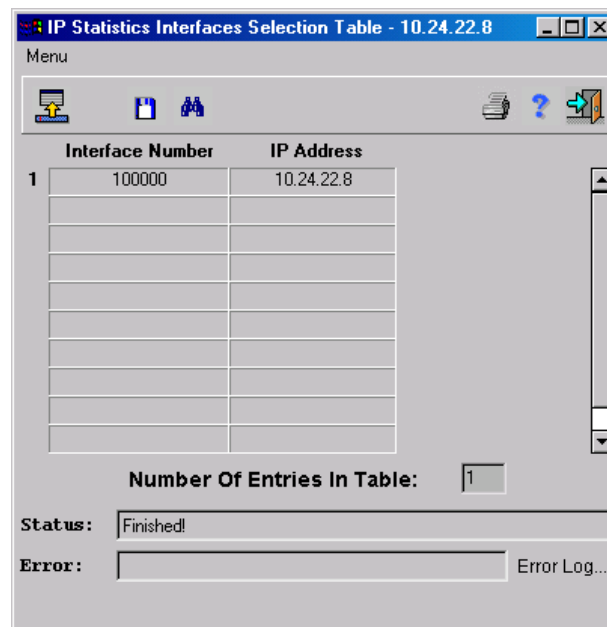
There are two types of interface statistics:

- IP Statistics
- IPX Statistics

### **IP Statistics**

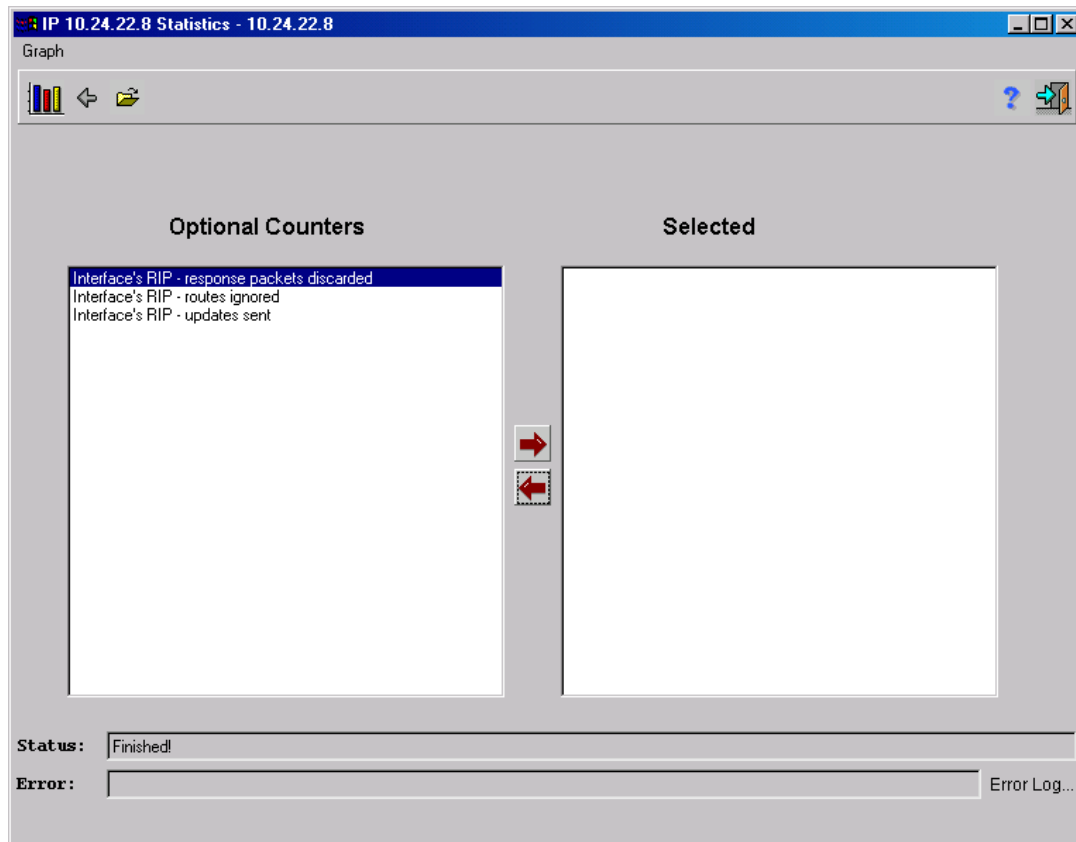
#### ***To display IP Interface Statistics:***

1. Select **Statistics > Interface Statistics > IP Statistics**. The *IP Statistics Interface Selection Table* opens:





**Figure 6- 200. IP Statistics Interface Selection Table window**

2. Select an entry and click. The **IP Statistics** window opens:



**Figure 6- 201. IP Statistics window**

3. Select the MIB required variables by one of the following methods:
  - Double-click on the variable in the Optional Counters box. The variable is moved to the Selected box.
  - or
  - Select the variable in the Optional Counters box and click . The variable is moved to the Selected box.
4. Click . The graph opens.

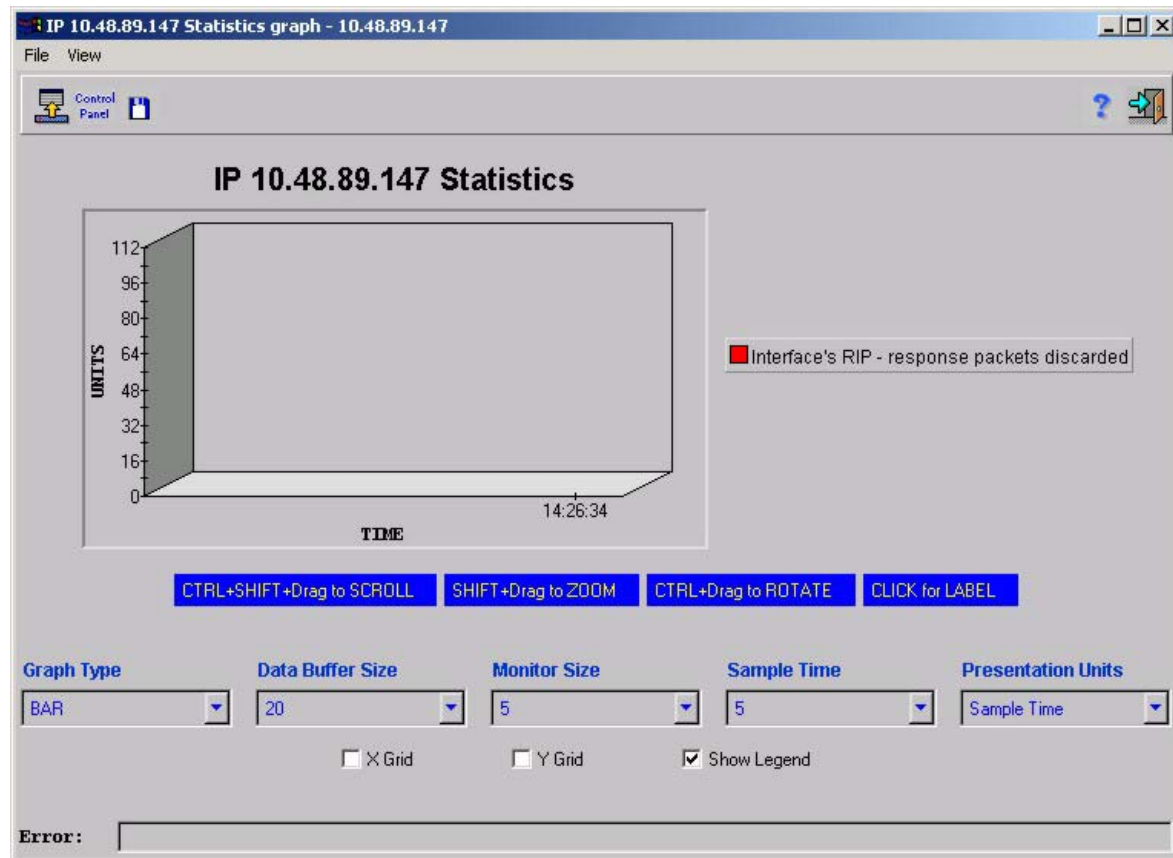
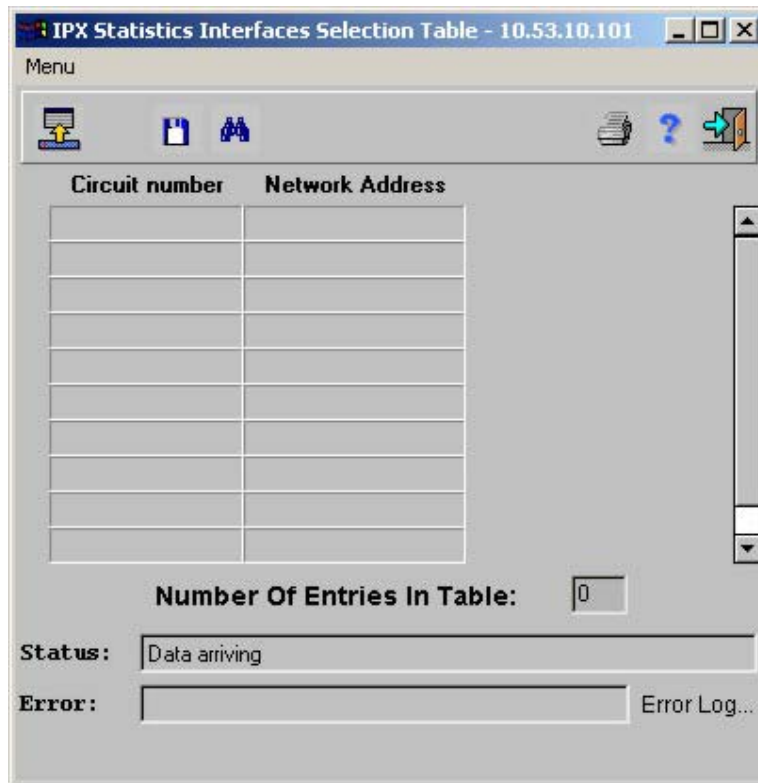


Figure 6- 202. IP Statistics Graph



## IPX Statistics

*To display IPX Interface Statistics:*

1. Select **Statistics > Interface Statistics > IPX Statistics**. The *IPX Statistics Interface Selection Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 203. IPX Statistics Interfaces Selection Table window**

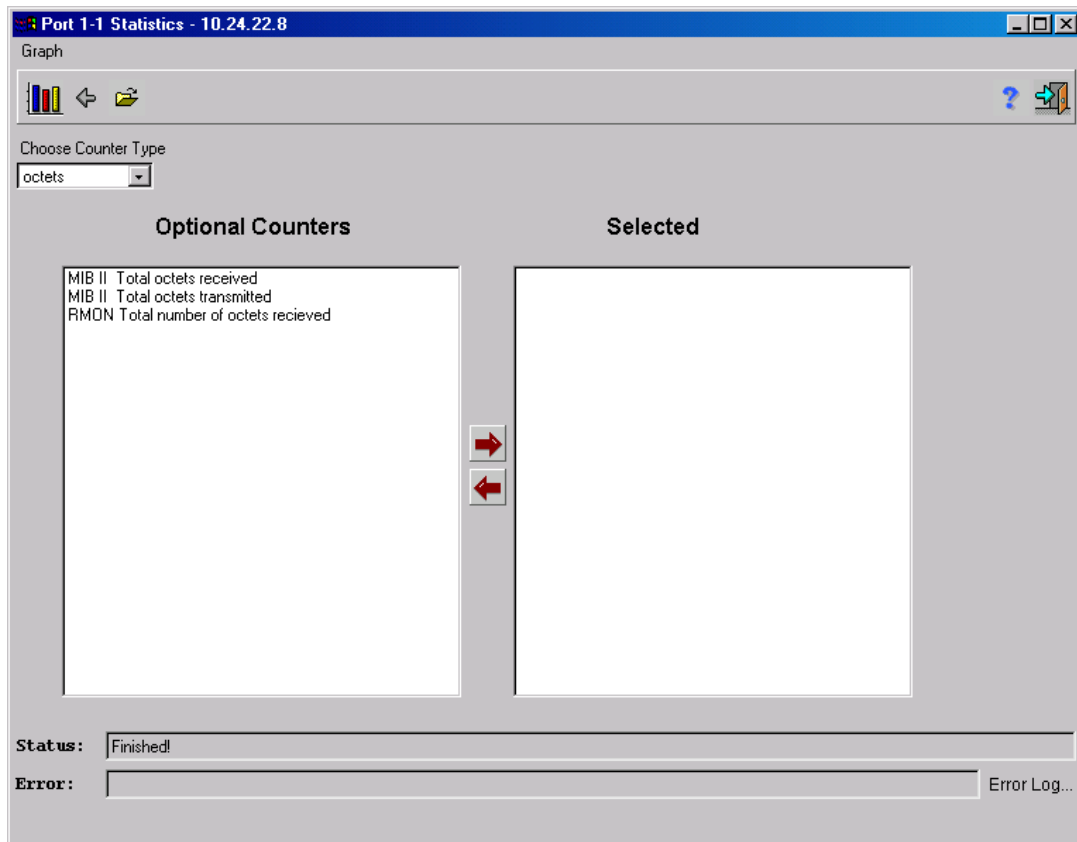
2. Select an entry and click. The **Element Statistics** window opens.
3. Select the MIB required variables by one of the following methods:
  - Double-click on the variable in the Optional Counters box. The variable is moved to the Selected box.
  - or
  - Select the variable in the Optional Counters box and click . The variable is moved to the Selected box.
4. Click . The graph opens.

## **Port Statistics**



Displays a selected port or interface statistics.

### **To display Port Statistics:**

1. Select a port by clicking on it. The port color changes to blue.
2. On the menu bar, click **Statistics**,  
or  
Select **Statistics > Port Statistics**. The **IP Statistics Interface Selection Table** opens:



**Figure 6- 204. Port Statistics window**

3. Select the MIB required variables by one of the following methods:
  - Double-click on the variable in the Optional Counters box. The variable is moved to the Selected box.
  - or
  - Select the variable in the Optional Counters box and click . The variable is moved to the Selected box.
4. Click . The graph opens.

## **History**

The **History** menu contains information about network statistics, and has the following menu options:

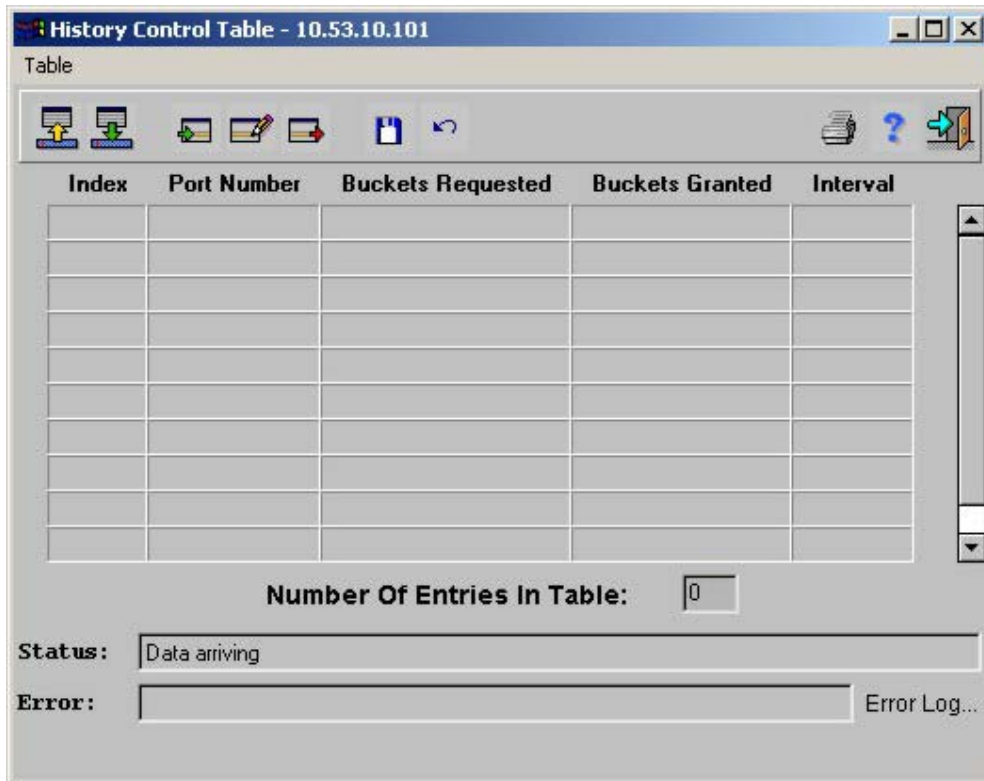
- History Control Table
- Ether History Table

## History Control Table

The **History Control Table** contains information about samples of data taken from ports. For example, the samples may include interface definitions or polling periods.

*To display the History Control Table:*

Select **Statistics > History > History Control Table**. The *History Control Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 205. History Control Table window**


The **History Control Table** displays the following fields:

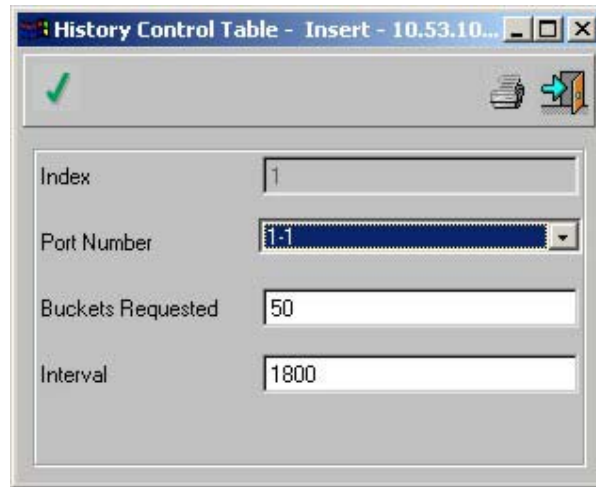
- **Index** – Specifies the History Control Table entry.
- **Port Number** – Specifies the port number from which the sample was taken.
- **Buckets Requested** – Indicates the number of times samplings are requested from the port. The default value is 50.
- **Buckets Granted** – Indicates the number of times samplings were requested from a port and the number of times the results were saved.
- **Interval** – Indicates in seconds the time that samplings are taken from the ports. The possible values are 1-3600 seconds. The default is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).

*To add an History Control Table entry:*

1. Display the **History Control Table**.




2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **History Control Table - Insert** window opens:




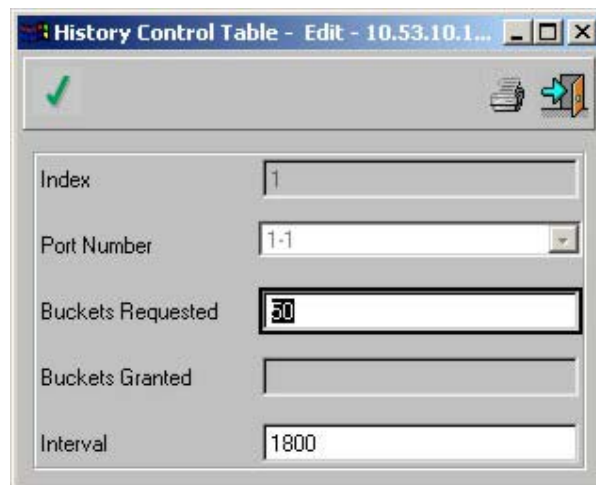
The screenshot shows the 'History Control Table - Insert' window. It has a title bar with the text 'History Control Table - Insert - 10.53.10...'. Below the title bar is a toolbar with a green checkmark icon and a blue arrow icon. The main area contains four input fields: 'Index' with the value '1', 'Port Number' with a dropdown menu showing '1-1', 'Buckets Requested' with the value '50', and 'Interval' with the value '1800'.

**Figure 6- 206. History Control Table - Insert window**

4. Complete the fields. The fields are the same as the **History Control Table** as described above.
5. Click . The **History Control Table Edit** window closes.



*To edit an History Control Table entry:*

1. Display the **History Control Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **History Control Table Edit** window opens:





The screenshot shows the 'History Control Table - Edit' window. It has a title bar with the text 'History Control Table - Edit - 10.53.10.1...'. Below the title bar is a toolbar with a green checkmark icon and a blue arrow icon. The main area contains five input fields: 'Index' with the value '1', 'Port Number' with a dropdown menu showing '1-1', 'Buckets Requested' with the value '50' (highlighted with a black border), 'Buckets Granted' (empty), and 'Interval' with the value '1800'.

**Figure 6- 207. History Control Table - Edit window**

4. The **History Control Table - Edit** window parameters are described above.
5. Complete the fields.
6. Click .
7. Close the **History Control Table - Edit** window. The **History Control Table** opens.
8. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

*To delete an History Control Table entry:*

1. Display the **History Control Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## Ether History Table

The **Ether History Table** contains statistical network samplings. Each table entry represents a single sample. Samples reflect all packets on the local network segment.

*To display the Ether History Table:*

Select **Statistics > History > Ether History Table**. The *Ether History Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 208. Ether History Table window**

The **Ether History Table** displays the following fields:

- **Index** – Specifies the *History Control Table* entry from which the sample was taken.
- **Sample Index** – Indicates the specific sample the information in the table reflects.
- **Interval Start** – Indicates the time at which the sample was taken. The Interval start time is represented in an hour, minute, and second format, for example, 5 hours, 26 minutes, and 2 seconds.
- **Drop Events** – Indicates the number of dropped packets due to lack of network resources during the sampling interval. This may not represent the exact number dropped packets, but rather the number of times dropped packets were detected.
- **Octets** – Indicates the number of data octets, including bad packets, received on the network.
- **Pkts** – Indicates the number of packets received during the sampling interval.
- **Broadcast Packets** – Indicates the number of good broadcast packets received during the sampling interval.
- **Multicast Packets** – Indicates the number of good multicast packets received during the sampling interval.
- **CRC Align Errors** – Indicates the number of packets received during the sampling session with a length 64-1,518 octets. However, the packets has a bad Frame Check Sequence (FCS) with an integral number of octets or a bad FCS with a non-integral number.
- **Undersize Packets** – Indicates the number of packets received less than 64 octets long during the sampling session.
- **Oversize Packets** – Indicates the number of packets received more than 1,518 octets long during the sampling session.
- **Fragments** – Indicates the number of packets received less than 64 octets long and had a FCS during the sampling session.
- **Jabbers** – Indicates the number of packets received more than 1,518 octets long and had a FCS during the sampling session.
- **Collisions** – Estimates the total number of packet collision that occurred during the sampling session. Collisions are detected when repeater ports detect two or more stations transmit simultaneously.
- **Utilization** – Estimates the main physical layer network usage on an interface during the session sampling. The value is reflected hundreds of percent.

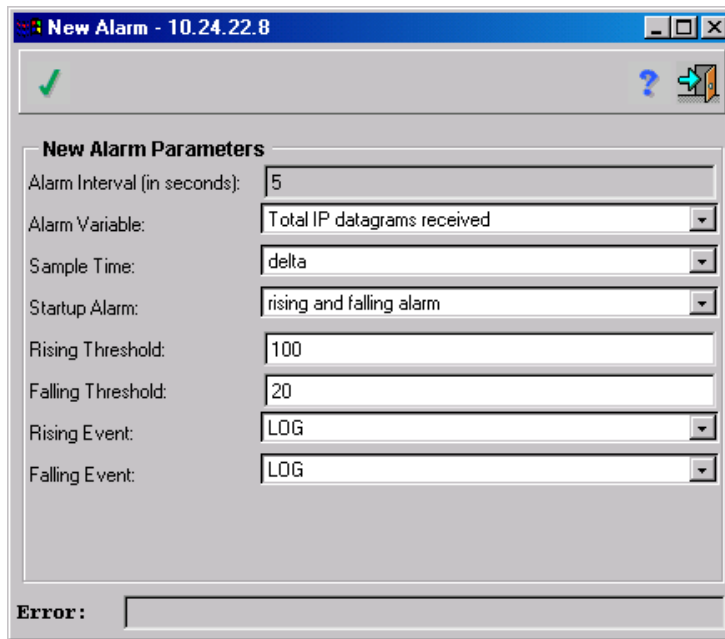
## ***Alarm Table***

Displays a list of all alarm entries, created using the Element Statistics or the Port Statistics.

To generate Alarms based on the traffic handled by the device, the alarm is first set in the graph window.

### ***To set an Alarm:***

1. Display the **Element Statistics Graph** window.
2. In the Alarm Definition area click **New**. The **New Alarm** screen opens:




**Figure 6- 209. New Alarm window**

The **New Alarm** window displays the following parameters:

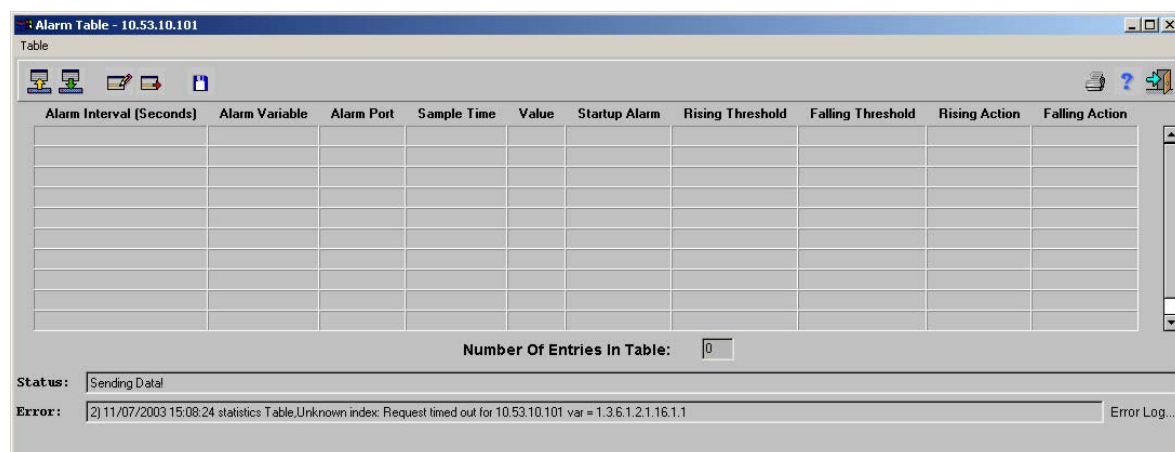
- **Alarm Interval** – The value used is Time (in seconds). The default is the value specified in the graph Sample Time parameter. Modifications are done by changing the Sample Time parameters. Sample Time settings are as follows
  - Delta – Counter is reset.
  - Absolute – ROS monitors the counter for the defined interval.
- **Alarm Variable** – The selected MIB variable.
- **Sample Time** – There are two Sample Time settings:
  - Delta – The counter is reset at the times defined by the interval. This is the default.
  - Absolute – The counter is not reset until the counter is overflowed. If the counter overflows, the threshold is set according to the aggregated counter results.
- **Startup Alarm** – The trigger that activates the alarm generation. The trigger can be a Rising alarm, Falling alarm, or a combination of both Rising and Falling. Rising is defined by crossing the threshold from low value threshold to a higher value threshold.
- **Rising Threshold** – The rising counter value that triggers the Rising Threshold alarm.
- **Falling Threshold** – The falling counter value that triggers the Falling Threshold alarm.

**Note:** The Rising and Falling threshold are graphically presented on top of the graph bars. Each monitored variable is designated a color.

- **Rising and Falling Events** – The mechanism in which the alarms will be reported. Either LOGed or TRAPed or combination of both. When LOG is selected, there is no saving mechanism either in the device or in the management
3. Complete the fields.
  4. Click .
  5. Close the **New Alarm window**. The **Element Statistics Graph** window opens.

**To display the Alarm Table:**

Select **Statistics > Alarm Table**. The *Alarm Table* opens:



| Alarm Interval (Seconds) | Alarm Variable | Alarm Port | Sample Time | Value | Startup Alarm | Rising Threshold | Falling Threshold | Rising Action | Falling Action |
|--------------------------|----------------|------------|-------------|-------|---------------|------------------|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
|                          |                |            |             |       |               |                  |                   |               |                |
|                          |                |            |             |       |               |                  |                   |               |                |
|                          |                |            |             |       |               |                  |                   |               |                |
|                          |                |            |             |       |               |                  |                   |               |                |
|                          |                |            |             |       |               |                  |                   |               |                |
|                          |                |            |             |       |               |                  |                   |               |                |
|                          |                |            |             |       |               |                  |                   |               |                |
|                          |                |            |             |       |               |                  |                   |               |                |
|                          |                |            |             |       |               |                  |                   |               |                |
|                          |                |            |             |       |               |                  |                   |               |                |


Number Of Entries In Table: 0

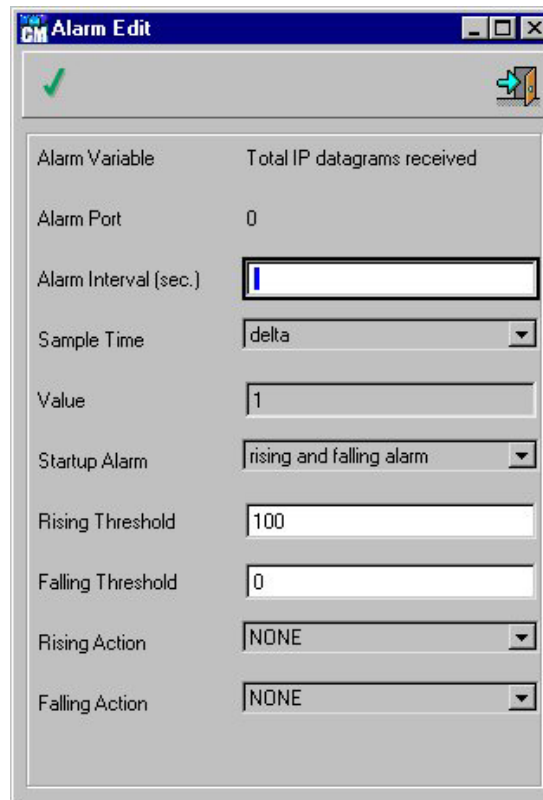
Status: Sending Data

Error: 2) 11/07/2003 15:08:24 statistics Table,Unknown index: Request timed out for 10.53.10.101 var = 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.1.1 Error Log...



**Figure 6- 210. Alarm Table window**

**To edit an Alarm Table entry:**



1. Display the **Alarm Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **Alarm Edit** window opens:

The image shows a software window titled "Alarm Edit". At the top left is a green checkmark icon, and at the top right are standard window control buttons (minimize, maximize, close) and a small icon of a switch. The window contains a form with the following fields: "Alarm Variable" with the text "Total IP datagrams received"; "Alarm Port" with the value "0"; "Alarm Interval (sec.)" with an empty text box; "Sample Time" with a dropdown menu showing "delta"; "Value" with a text box containing "1"; "Startup Alarm" with a dropdown menu showing "rising and falling alarm"; "Rising Threshold" with a text box containing "100"; "Falling Threshold" with a text box containing "0"; "Rising Action" with a dropdown menu showing "NONE"; and "Falling Action" with a dropdown menu showing "NONE".

**Figure 6- 211. Alarm Edit window**

4. The **Alarm Edit** window parameters are described above.
5. Complete the fields.
6. Click .
7. Close the **Alarm Edit** window. The **Alarm Table** opens.
8. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To delete an Alarm Table entry:***

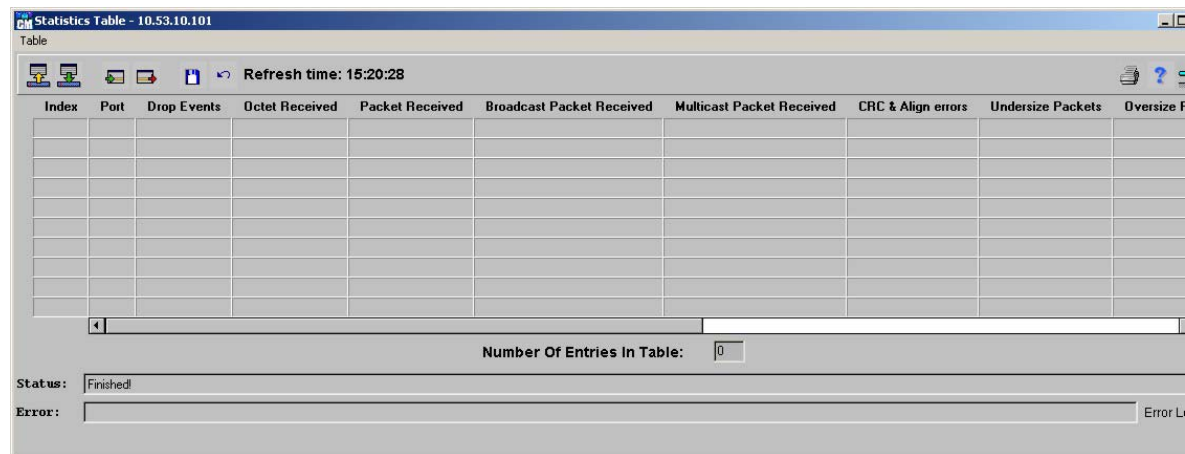
1. Display the **Alarm Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## Statistics Table

The **Statistics Table** consists of list of 17 RMON counters on selected ports.


*To display the Statistics Table:*

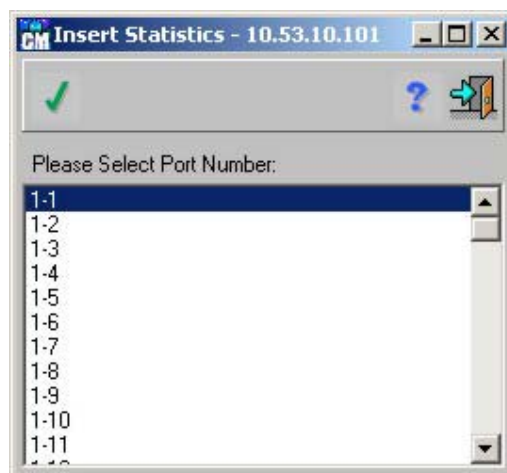
Select **Statistics > Statistics Table**. The *Statistics Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 212. Statistics Table window**



*To add a Statistics Table entry:*

1. Display the **Statistics Table**.
2. Click  The **Insert Statistics** window opens:





**Figure 6- 213. Insert Statistics window**

3. Select a Port from the list displayed in the **Insert Statistics** window.

4. Click .
5. Close the **Alarm Table Edit** window. The **Alarm Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

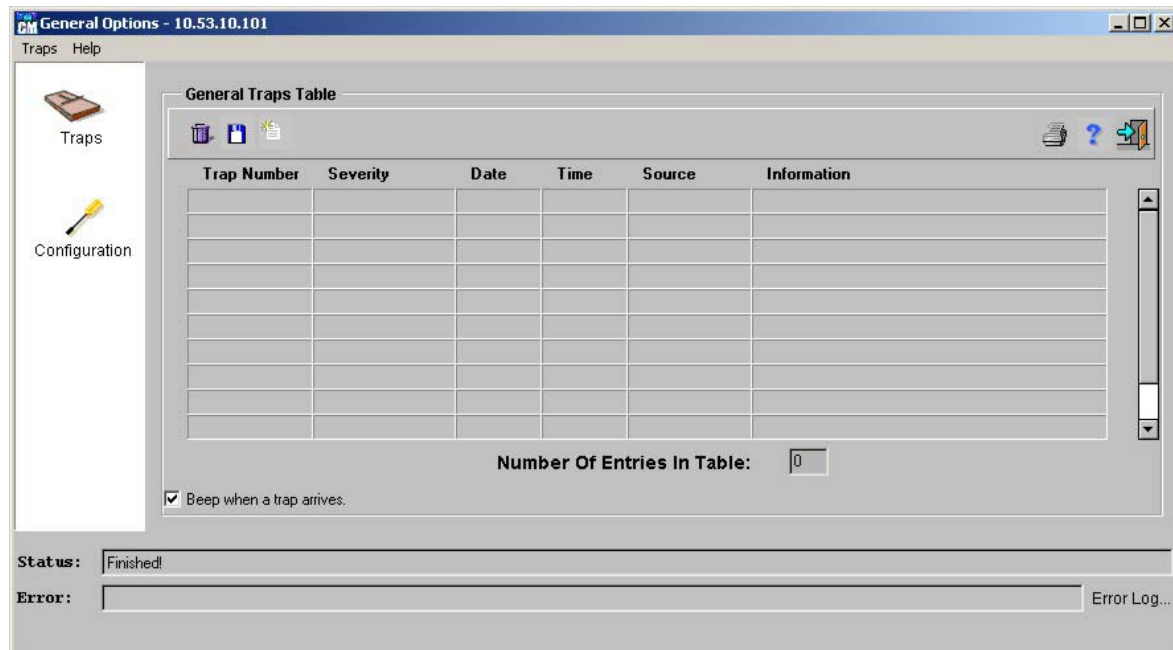
**To delete a Statistics Table entry:**

1. Display the **Statistics Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## Traps Table

The **General Traps Table** contains information about traps, their severity, when they occurred, and the source.

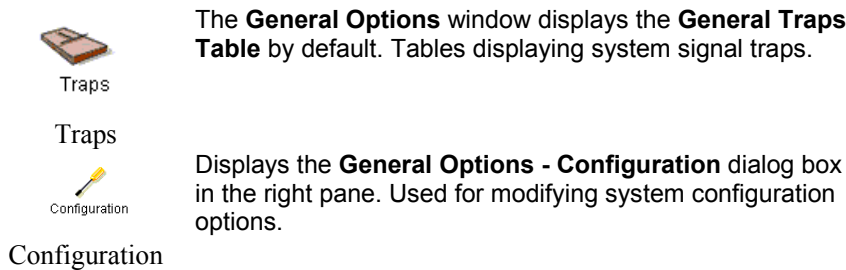
Select **Statistics > Traps Table**. The *General Traps Table* opens:



**Figure 6- 214. General Options - General Traps Table window**



The **General Options** window is divided into two panes, the left pane contains the screen functions, and the right pane contains corresponding function screen. The left pane always remains constant. Clicking on the function icons in the left pane toggles the right pane. In the **General Options** window left-hand pane, the following two icons are displayed:






The **General Traps Table** window displays the following information:

- **Trap Number** – A consecutive number given to each event to make information retrieval more efficient.
- **Severity** – The event level, which can be one of the following:
  - Informational
  - Warning
  - Error
  - Fatal
- **Date** – Date the trap occurred.
- **Time** – Time the trap occurred.
- **Source** – The device IP address sending the trap
- **Information** – An event description. For example, Link Up.

The **Traps Table** window has the following icons on the toolbar.

*Traps Table Icons on the Toolbar*

| Icon  | Function  |
|---|---|
|  | Delete Traps Table entries.   |
|  | Save the Traps Table. The Status bar displays the file path to which the trap has been saved: <ConfigMaster>/Nms/Configuration/traps.dat. |
|  | Show Trap files.  |

**Table 6- 2. Trap Table Icons table**

*To view the General Traps Table:*

1. There are two methods of displaying the **General Options** window is as follows:
  - From the **Main** window click **Options**.

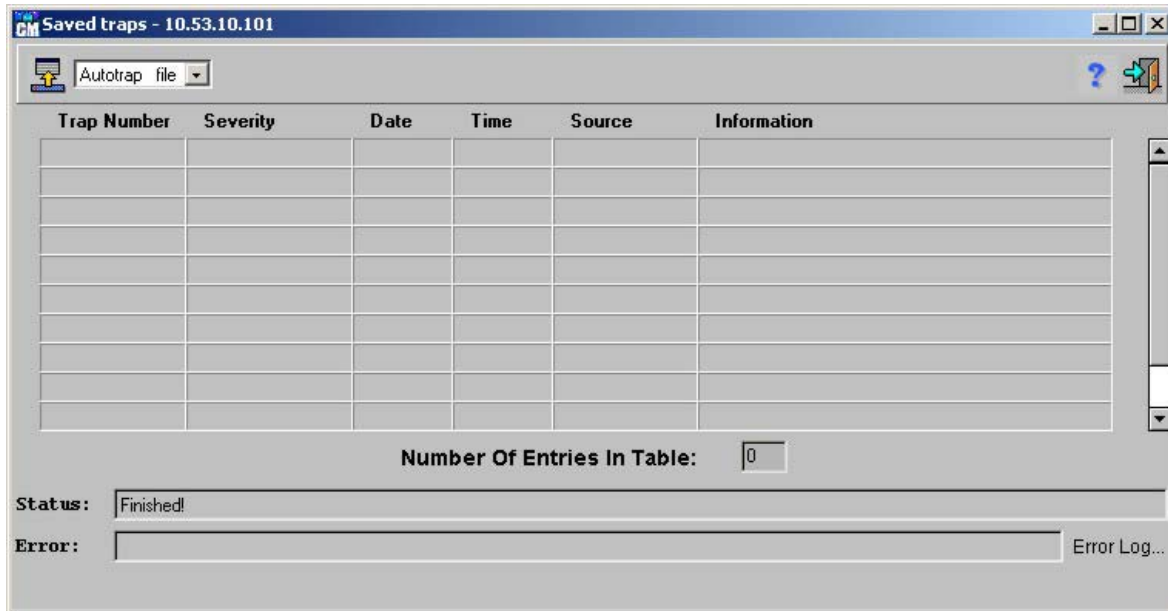
- On the Menu Bar, click **Statistics**. On the **Statistics** menu, click **Traps Table**. The **General Options** window opens. The default tab is **General Traps Table**.

2. If the **Configuration** tab is open, click the traps icon in the left pane.

The **General Traps Table** opens in the right panel.

*To view the Trap Files:*

On the **General Options - General Traps Table** window click. The *Saved traps* window opens:



**Figure 6- 215. Saved traps window**

The columns displayed in the **Saved traps** window are the same as displayed in the **General Options - Traps Table**.

There are two types of **Saved traps** tables:

- Autotrap File
- Trap File

*To view the device front panel from the trap source:*

Double-click a trap in the Traps Table to open the device front panel view that sent the trap.

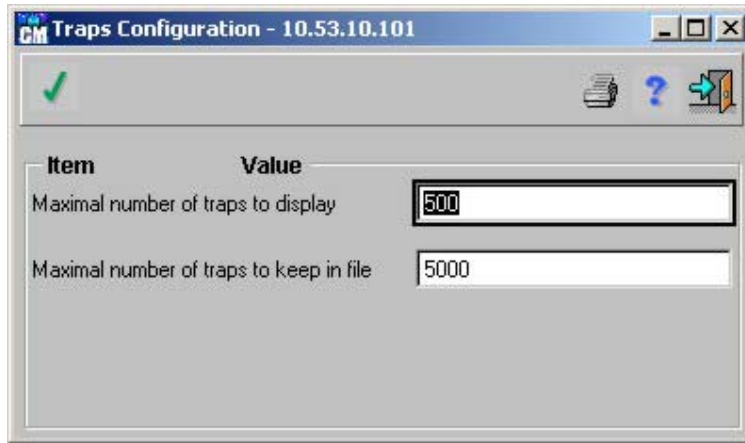
*To set an alarm when receiving traps:*

Click the “Beep when a trap arrived” checkbox to hear the beep every time a new trap arrives.

## Configuring Trap Parameters

*To configure the number of traps displayed in the Traps Table and how many traps stored in a file:*

From the **General Options** window Menu Bar, click **Traps** and then select **Traps Configuration**. The following *Traps Configuration* window opens:



**Figure 6- 216. Traps Configuration window**

The following parameters are displayed in the **Traps Configuration** window:

- **Maximal number of traps to display** – How many traps are displayed in the Traps Table. By default, 500 traps can be displayed.
- **Maximal number of traps to keep in file** – How many traps to store in a file. The default value is 5000, i.e. 5000 traps are stored by the system in the file called `autotraps.dat`.

The maximal number of traps to keep on file must be greater than the maximal number of traps to display. For example, with maximal number of traps to display set to 100 and maximal number of traps to keep in file is set to more than 100.

If 150 new traps arrive, the most recent 100 traps are displayed in the Traps Table and the rest of the new traps (50 traps) are stored in the `autotraps.dat` file.

Enter the two parameters and press. The configuration is saved and the Traps Table opens.

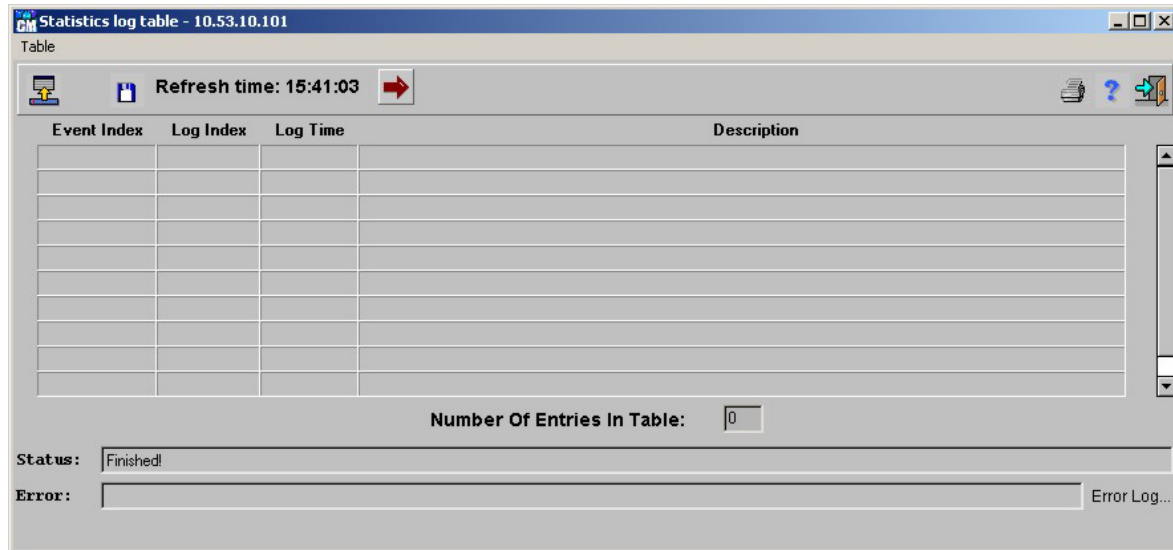
## Log Table

The **Statistics log table** consists of entries generated by a device when triggering events. Those events are triggered once the traffic crosses a threshold, by either Falling or Rising actions, set to LOG or LOG and TRAP.

This table is read only, therefore only the logged entries can be viewed. The logged entries are cleared once the device is reset. To save these entries, use the TRAPS function.

***To generate the Statistics Log Table:***

Select **Statistics > Log Table**. The *Statistics log table* opens:



**Figure 6- 217. Statistics log table window**

---

## Working With Services

---

The **Services** command has the following menu options:

- Device Tuning
- Event Log
- Refresh
- Polling Configuration
- Community Change
- Ping
- Refresh Device Version

### ***Device Tuning***

Device Tuning is used to determine the maximum amount of entries allowed in the various tables listed. The changes are implemented only after reset.

***To display the Device Tuning window:***

Select **Services > Device Tuning**. The *Device Tuning* window is displayed. There are four tabs on the **Device Tuning Window**.

- **General** – Defines the maximum number of entries for the Bridge Forwarding table, RMON Log table, and the Error Report table.
- **IP** – Defines the maximum number of entries for RIPs, ARP Forwarding table, FFT table, DHCP connections, and the FFT upper and lower limits.
- **IPX** – Defines the maximum number of entries for RIP, SAP, and FFT upper and lower limits.
- **IPM** – Defines the maximum number of entries for FFT, PIM, and IGMP entries both before and after the device is reset.

*To display the Device Tuning window General tab:*

Select **Services > Device Tuning**. The *Device Tuning* window opens. The default screen is the **General** tab.

The **General** tab displays the following columns:

- **Current Value** – The current maximum number of entries.
- **After Reset** – The future (after reset) maximum number of entries. By entering a value in the After Reset column, memory is allocated to the field table.

| Max Entries In                             | Current Value | After Reset |
|--|---------------|-------------|
| Bridge Forwarding Table                    | 32767         | 32767       |
| RMON Log Table                             | 100           | 100         |
| Max GVRP VLANs                             | 256           | 256         |
| Max Policy Simple MIB Max Rules Entries    | 512           | 512         |
| Max Policy Simple MIB Max Profiles Entries | 256           | 256         |
| Max VLANs Entries                          | 4000          | 4000        |
| Error Report Level                         | 0             |             |

**Status:** Finished!

**Error:**  Error Log...

**Figure 6- 218. Device Tuning window General tab**

The **Device Tuning window General** tab displays the following parameters:

- **Bridge Forwarding Table** – Maximum number of entries (MAC addresses) possible for this table.
- **RMON Log Table** – The number of log entries the device keeps in the table before overwriting the first entry. It is kept until the device is reset.
- **Max GVRP VLANs** – Indicates the maximum number of VLANs that can currently participate in GVRP.

**Note:** *If the maximum number of VLANs is decreased, the number should still be greater than the number of MAX GVRP VLANs.*

- **MAX Policy Simple MIB Max Rules Entries** – Indicates the maximum number of policy entries.
- **MAX Policy Simple MIB Max Profile Entries** – Indicates the maximum number of profile entries.
- **Max VLANs Entries** – Indicates the maximum number of VLANs entries.
- **Error Report Level** – (0 to 255) Determines the amount of errors sent to the terminal. 0 sends the least amount of errors and 255 sends the most.

*To display the Device Tuning window IP tab:*

1. Display the **Device Tuning** window's **General** tab.
2. Select the **IP** tab. The **IP** tab opens:

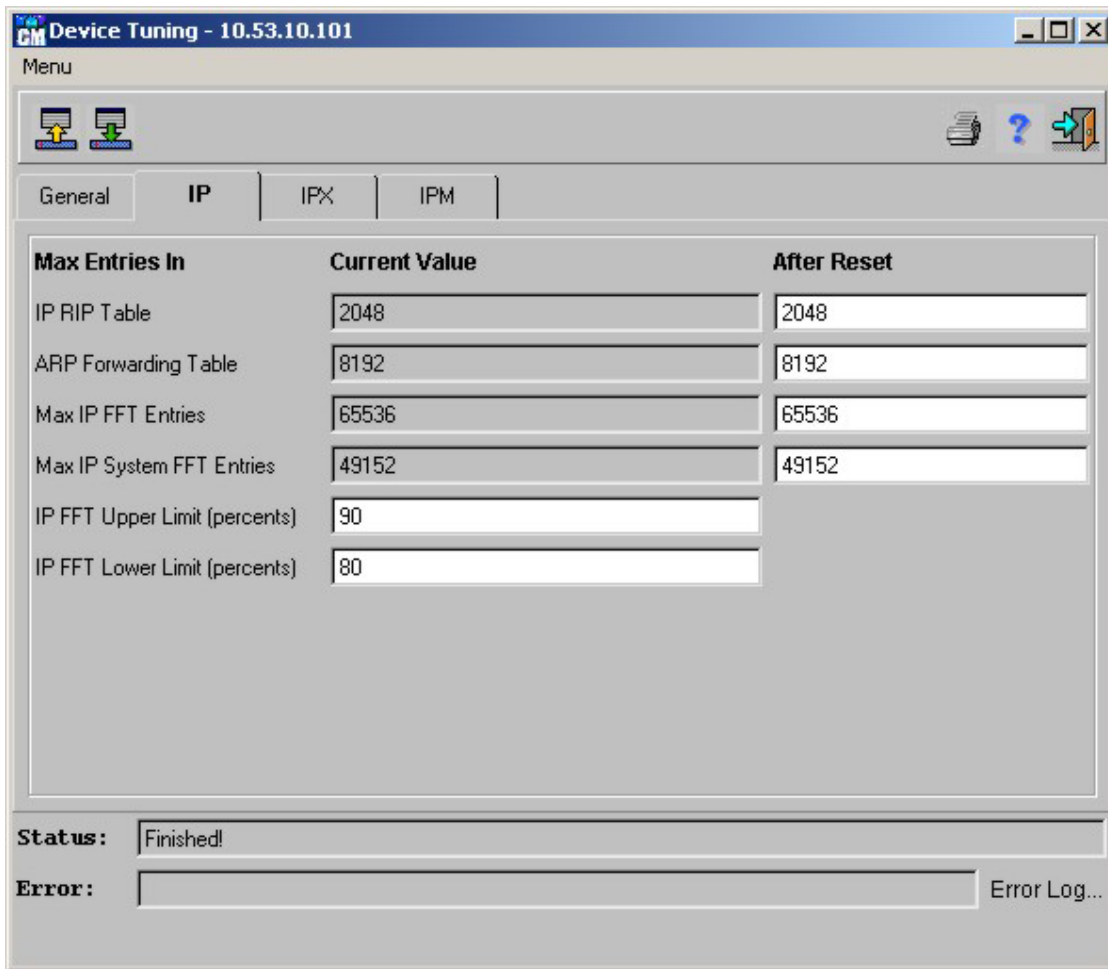


Figure 6- 219. Device Tuning window IP tab

The **IP** tab displays the following parameters:

- **IP RIP table** – Maximum number of routing table entries allowed for this table.
- **ARP Forwarding table** – Maximum number of entries allowed for this table.
- **Max IP FFT Entries** – Maximum number of IP Fast Forwarding table entries allowed.
- **Max IP System Entries** – Maximum number of IP entries that can be entered into the system.
- **IP FFT Upper Limit (percents)** – Maximum percentage of entries that the device can hold in FFT without overflowing.
- **IP FFT Lower Limit (percents)** – Minimum percentage of entries in which the device would stop the overflowing process.

*To display the Device Tuning window IPX tab:*

1. Display the **General** tab.
2. Select the **IPX** tab. The **IPX** tab opens:

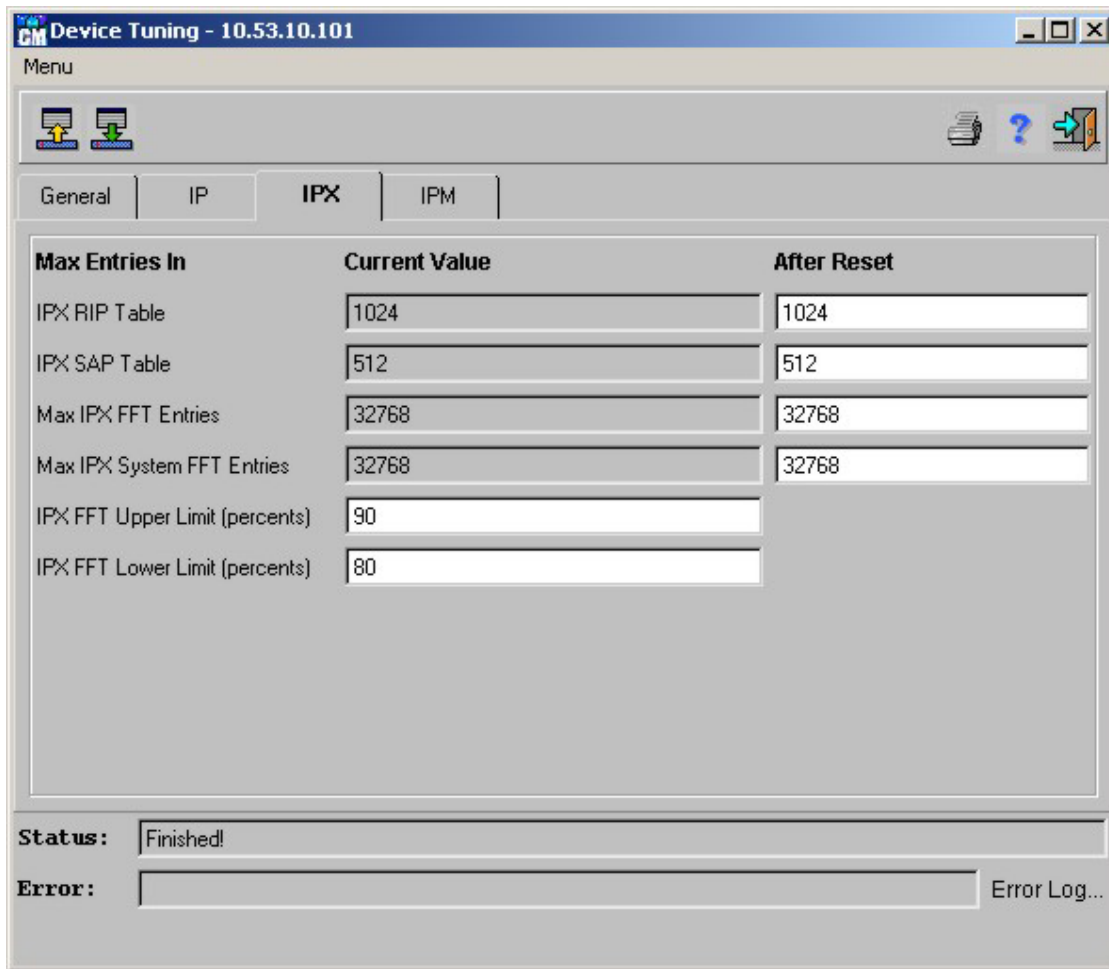


Figure 6- 220. Device Tuning window IPX tab

The **IPX** tab displays the following parameters:

- **IPX RIP Table** – Maximum number of routing table entries allowed for this table.
- **IPX SAP Table** – Maximum number of server entries allowed.
- **Max IPX FFT Entries** – Maximum number of IPX Fast Forwarding table entries allowed.
- **Max IPX System FFT Entries** – Maximum number of IPX entries that can be entered into the system.
- **IPX FFT Upper Limit (percents)** – Maximum percentage of entries the device can hold in FFT whiteout flowing.
- **IPX FFT Lower Limit (percents)** – Minimum percentage in which the device would stop the overflowing process.

*To display the Device Tuning window IPM tab:*

1. Display the **General** tab.
2. Select the **IPM** tab. The **IPM** tab opens:



**Device Tuning - 10.53.10.101**

Menu

General | IP | IPX | **IPM**

|                           | Current Value | After Reset |
|---------------------------|---------------|-------------|
| <b>IPM</b>                |               |             |
| Max IPM FFT Entries       | 512           | 512         |
| <b>PIM</b>                |               |             |
| Max PIM Neighbor Entries  | 1024          | 1024        |
| Max PIM Route Entries     | 100           | 100         |
| Max PIM Interface Entries | 64            | 64          |
| <b>IGMP</b>               |               |             |
| Max IGMP Cache Entries    | 128           | 128         |

**Status:** Finished!

**Error:**  Error Log...

**Figure 6- 221. Device Tuning window IPM tab**

The **IPM** tab displays the following parameters:

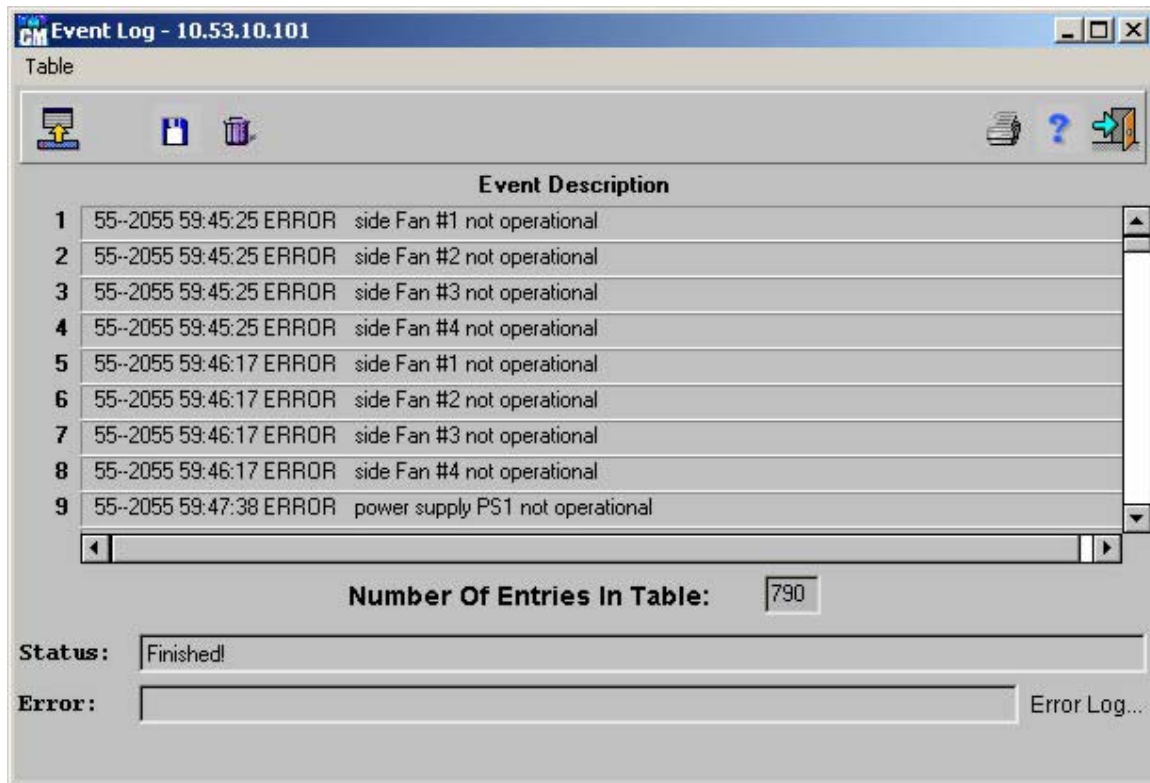
- **Max IPM FFT Entries** – Maximum number of Fast Forwarding Table entries allowed both currently and after reset.
- **Max PIM Neighbor Entries** – Maximum number of PIM Neighbor entries allowed both currently and after reset.
- **Max PIM Route Entries** – Maximum number of PIM Route entries allowed both currently and after reset.
- **Max PIM Interface Entries** – Maximum number of PIM Interface entries allowed both currently and after reset.
- **Max IGMP Cache Entries** – Maximum number of IGMP Cache entries allowed both currently and after reset.

## Event Log

The **Event Log** window records all device internal errors, including the date and time of occurrence, and a brief error description.

***To display the Event Log:***


Select **Services > Event Log**. The *Event Log* window opens:



**Figure 6- 222. Event Log window**

***Refresh***

*To refresh the front panel view:*

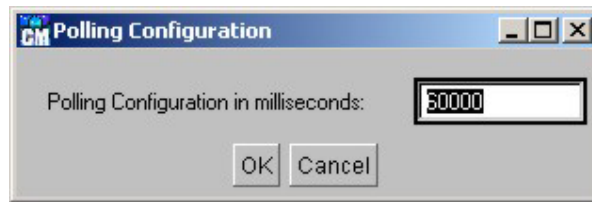
- Select **Services > Refresh**.
- Or
- Press **Ctrl+R**.
- Or
- Click . The front panel view is refreshed.

***Polling Configuration***

Use this window to define how often (in milliseconds) the device is polled via SNMP protocol.

***To define the SNMP polling frequency:***

1. Select **Services > Polling Configuration**. The *Polling Configuration* window opens:



**Figure 6- 223. Polling Configuration window**

2. Enter the required polling configuration.
3. Press **OK**.

## ***Community Change***

The system administrator manages access rights (read and write, read only, etc.) by making communities in the device, in the Community table. When the community name is changed, the access rights are changed.

***To change a device community name:***


1. Select **Services > Community Change**. The *Community Change* window opens:



**Figure 6- 224. Community Change window**

2. Type in the new community name.

**Note:** Type in the new community name exactly as it appears in the system administrator Community Table or the station with Super access. Any incorrect community name is accepted by the Community Change window, but access to read or write data is unavailable.

3. Click . The status bar displays the message: “Community was changed!”. The system has the appearance of exiting and re-starting.

## ***Ping***

The **Ping Table** displays a list of addresses of devices that were pinged by the system.

***To display the device Ping Table:***

Select **Services > Ping**. The *Ping Table* opens:

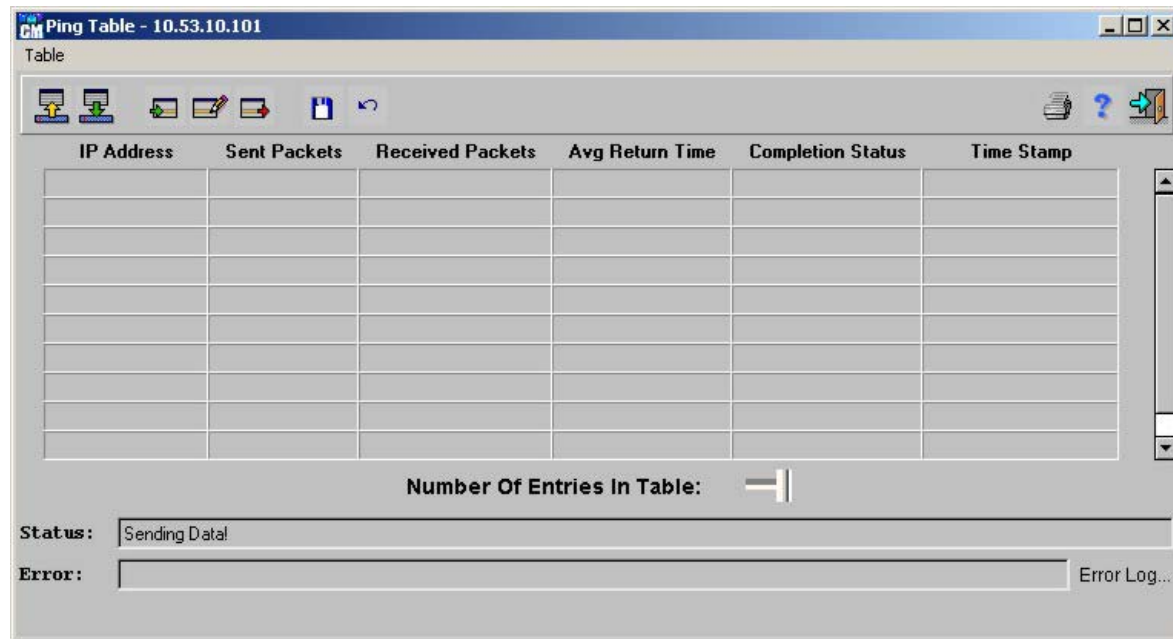



Figure 6- 225. Ping Table window

The **Ping Table** displays the following parameters:

- **IP Address** – The device address pinged.
- **Sent Packets** – The number of packets sent to the device.
- **Received Packets** – The number of packets received from the device.
- **Avg Return Time** – The average amount of time it took for data to return from the device.
- **Completion Status** – The ping operation status, such as OK for a successful ping, or Timeout for a ping operation that resulted in a timeout.
- **Time Stamp** – Indicates the time and date the ping operation was requested or changed.

*To add an entry in the Ping Table:*



1. Display the **Ping Table**.
2. Click . The **Ping Table Insert** window opens:



**Figure 6- 226. Ping Table Insert window**


The **Ping Table Insert** window displays the following parameters:

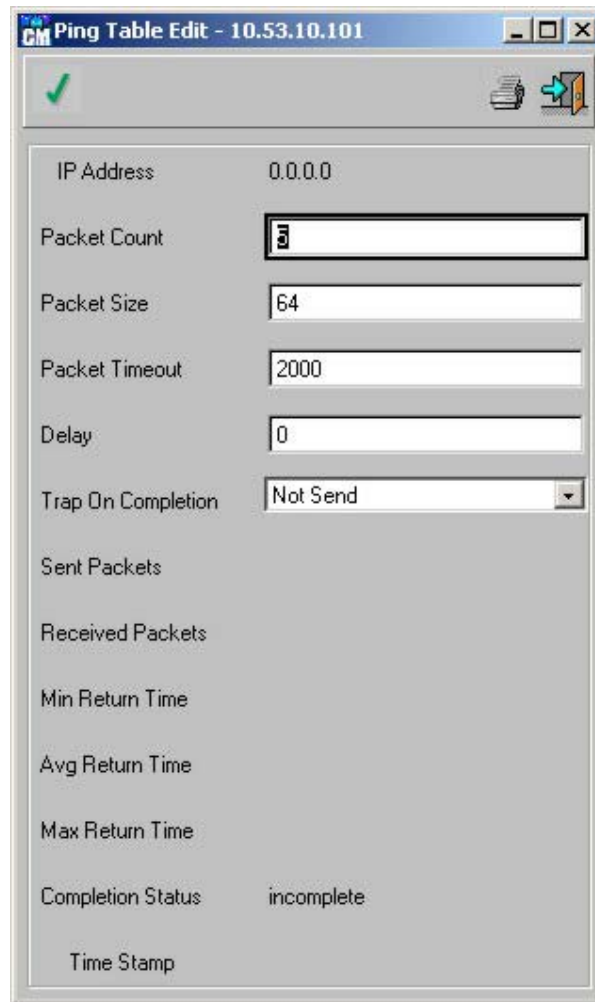
- **IP Address** – The device address to be pinged.
- **Packet Count** – The number of packets delivered in the ping operation.
- **Packet Size** – The size of each packet delivered to the device.
- **Packet Timeout** – The amount of time the system waits until it stops sending the packet.
- **Delay** – The amount of time the system waits between the last packet it sent, and the next packet to be sent in the sequence.
- **Trap on Completion** – Whether or not to send traps to the management station after ping is completed.

3. Complete the fields.
4. Click .
5. Close the **Ping Table Insert** window. The **Ping Table** opens.
6. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To edit a line in the Ping Table:***



Display the **Ping Table**.

1. Display the **Ping Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The **Ping Table Edit** window opens:





The image shows a window titled "Ping Table Edit - 10.53.10.101". At the top left is a green checkmark icon, and at the top right are icons for a printer and a right-pointing arrow. The main area contains several fields: "IP Address" is set to "0.0.0.0"; "Packet Count" is a text box with "3"; "Packet Size" is a text box with "64"; "Packet Timeout" is a text box with "2000"; "Delay" is a text box with "0"; "Trap On Completion" is a dropdown menu showing "Not Send"; "Sent Packets", "Received Packets", "Min Return Time", "Avg Return Time", and "Max Return Time" are all empty text boxes; "Completion Status" is set to "incomplete"; and "Time Stamp" is an empty text box at the bottom.

**Figure 6- 227. Ping Table Edit window**

4. Complete the fields as required.
5. Click .
6. Close the **Ping Table Edit** window. The **Ping Table** opens.
7. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

***To delete edit a line in the Ping Table:***

1. Display the **Ping Table**.
2. Select an entry in the table.
3. Click . The entry is deleted.
4. Click . When the *Status* field displays “*Finished!*”, the fields are confirmed as modified.

## ***Refresh The Device***

This command is used to verify that the device front panel view is updated according to the current software version.

***To refresh the device:***

Select **Services > Refresh Device Version**. The *Check Version for* window opens:



**Figure 6- 228. Check Version for window**

If a later device software version is installed since the last time the system was initiated, the system closes the current front panel view and all open windows, and re-opens a refreshed front panel view.

# TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

| General                   |  |                    |
|---------------------------|--|--------------------|
| <b>Standards</b>          | IEEE 802.3 10BASE-T Ethernet<br>IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-TX Fast Ethernet<br>IEEE 802.3z 1000BASE-SX/LX Gigabit Ethernet<br>IEEE 802.1ab 1000BASE-T Gigabit Ethernet<br>IEEE 802.1P/Q<br>IEEE 802.3x<br>RFC 1123, RFC 2236<br>RFC 1493, RFC 951<br>RFC 2131, RFC 1058<br>RFC 1723, RFC 1389<br>RFC 1253, RFC 1583<br>RFC 2178, RFC 1850<br>RFC 1112, RFC 2236 |                    |
| <b>Management</b>         | MIB II, RMON, SNMP   |                    |
| <b>Protocol</b>           | CSMA/CD  |                    |
| <b>Data Transfer Rate</b> | <b>Half-duplex</b>   | <b>Full-Duplex</b> |
| Ethernet                  | 10 Mbps  | 20 Mbps            |
| Fast Ethernet:            | 100 Mbps   | 200 Mbps           |
| Gigabit Ethernet:         | n/a  | 2000 Mbps          |
| <b>Topology</b>           | Star   |                    |
| <b>Network Cables</b>     | 2-pair Category 3/4/5 UTP (max. 100 m)<br>EIA/TIA-568 100-ohm STP (max. 100 m)   |                    |
| 10BASE-T:                 |  |                    |
| 100BASE-TX:               | 2-pair Category 5 UTP (max. 100 m)<br>EIA/TIA-568 100-ohm STP (max. 100 m)   |                    |
| 1000BASE-T                | 2-pair Category 5 UTP (max. 100 m)<br>EIA/TIA-568 100-ohm STP (max. 100 m)   |                    |



| Physical and Environmental |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <b>AC Input</b>            | 90 to 264 VAC, 47-63 Hz (auto-adjusting internal power supply)   |
| <b>AC Output</b>           | 3.3V, 80A  |
| <b>DC Fans</b>             | Two built-in 60 x 60 mm fans per power supply unit   |
| <b>Temperature</b>         | Operating: 0° to 40° C (32° to 104° F)<br>Storage: -25° to 55° C (-13° to 131° F)  |
| <b>Relative Humidity</b>   | Operating: 5% to 95% (non-condensing)<br>Storage: 0% to 95% (non-condensing)   |
| <b>Dimensions</b>          | H: 35.6 cm (14.01 in.)<br>W: 44.0 cm (17.32 in.)<br>D: 29.4 cm (11.57 in.)   |
| <b>Weight</b>              | 12.68 kg (case + power + DES-6301 + DES-6302 w/ bracket)<br>power 2.25 kg<br>empty slot bracket 110g<br>DES-6303 0.98 kg<br>DES-6304 1.03 kg<br>DES-6305 1.02 kg<br>DES-6306 0.98 kg<br>DES-6307 0.98 kg<br>DES-6308 0.98 kg<br>DES-6309 (w/ GBIC Fiber Transceiver) 1.05 kg |
| <b>EMI</b>                 | FCC Class A, CE Class A, VCCI Class A, BSMI Class A, C-Tick Class A  |
| <b>Safety</b>              | UL/CUL, TUV, CE  |

# B

## RJ-45 PIN SPECIFICATION

When connecting the Switch to another switch, a bridge or a hub, a modified crossover cable is necessary. Please review these products for matching cable pin assignment.

The following diagram and table show the standard RJ-45 receptacle/connector and their pin assignments for the switch-to-network adapter card connection, and the straight/crossover cable for the Switch-to-switch/hub/bridge connection.

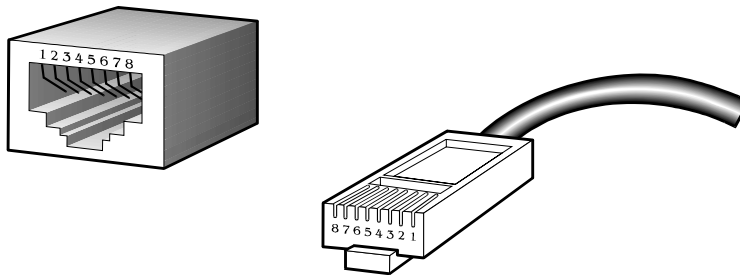
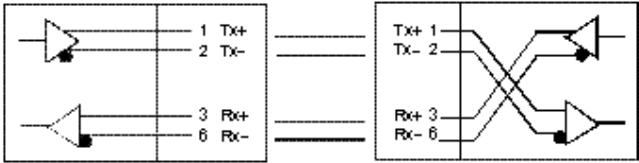


Figure B- 1. The standard RJ-45 receptacle/connector

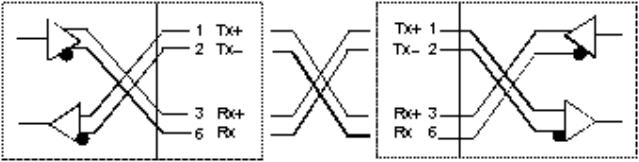
| RJ-45 Connector pin assignment |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Contact                        | Media Direct Interface Signal |
| 1                              | Tx + (transmit)               |
| 2                              | Tx - (transmit)               |
| 3                              | Rx + (receive)                |
| 4                              | Not used                      |
| 5                              | Not used                      |
| 6                              | Rx - (receive)                |
| 7                              | Not used                      |
| 8                              | Not used                      |

Table B- 1. The standard Category 3 cable, RJ-45 pin assignment

The following shows straight cable and crossover cable connection:



**Figure B-2. Straight cable for Switch (uplink MDI-II port) to switch/Hub or other devices connection**



**Figure B-3. Crossover cable for Switch (MDI-X port) to switch/hub or other network devices (MDI-X port) connection.**

---

# INDEX

## I

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 100BASE-TX networks .....   | 3 |
| 100Mbps Fast Ethernet ..... | 2 |

## A

|  |    |
|--|----|
| AC power cord .....  | 7  |
| Accessory pack .....   | 7  |
| Aging Time   |    |
| very long .....  | 23 |
| very short .....   | 23 |
| Aging Time, definition of .....                                  | 23 |
| Aging Time, range of .....                                       | 23 |
| Alleviating network loop problems .....                          | 26 |
| ASCII format .....   | 51 |
| Attaching the mounting brackets ... <i>See</i> Rack Installation |    |
| Automatic learning .....   | 23 |
| Automatic topology re-configuration                              |    |
| Spanning Tree Algorithm .....                                    | 24 |

## B

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| BadPackets SNMP .....             | 243 |
| BER format .....                  | 51  |
| Bridge                            |     |
| Rapid Spanning Tree .....         | 118 |
| Spanning Tree .....               | 111 |
| Unicast .....                     | 107 |
| Bridge Level, STA Operation Level |     |
| Bridge Identifier .....           | 24  |
| Bridge Priority .....             | 24  |
| Designated Bridge .....           | 24  |
| Root Bridge .....                 | 24  |
| Root Path Cost .....              | 24  |
| Bridge Priority .....             | 27  |

## C

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| ConfigMaster Introduction .....  | 35  |
| Configuration File Name .....  | 50  |
| Connecting The Switch.. <b>Error! Not a valid bookmark in entry on page 18</b> |     |
| Converting files from BER to ASCII .....                                       | 51  |
| Copy Port .....  | 85  |
| Crossover cable .....  | 281 |

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| CSMA/CD Ethernet protocol ..... | 2 |
|---------------------------------|---|

## D

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| DECNet .....                   | 243 |
| Device Global Parameters ..... | 57  |
| <b>Dynamic filtering</b> ..... | 23  |

## E

|                      |    |
|----------------------|----|
| Egress port .....    | 31 |
| Erasing Tables ..... | 48 |
| Error Bar .....      | 41 |

## F

|                                |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| Fast Ethernet Technology ..... | 2  |
| Forward Delay .....            | 27 |
| Front Panel .....              | 12 |

## G

|                                  |        |
|----------------------------------|--------|
| Global Parameters                |        |
| Contact Person .....             | 58     |
| Hardware Software version .....  | 60     |
| Identification .....             | 58     |
| Name .....                       | 58     |
| Software version .....           | 60     |
| Time .....                       | 59     |
| Global Parameters                |        |
| Location .....                   | 58     |
| GUI .....                        | 35, 40 |
| <b>GVRP Information</b> .....    | 95     |
| <i>GVRP Parameters</i> .....     | 91     |
| <b>GVRP Timers Control</b> ..... | 89, 93 |

## H

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Hardware requirements ..... | 36 |
| heat dissipation .....      | 7  |
| Hello Time .....            | 27 |

## I

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| Identifying External Components .....           | <b>Error!</b> |
| <b>Not a valid bookmark in entry on page 12</b> |               |
| IGMP .....                                      | 182           |
| <b>Cache Table</b> .....                        | 185           |
| <b>Interface Table</b> .....                    | 182           |
| Illustration of STA .....                       | 26            |

|   |        |  |     |
|---|--------|--|-----|
| Ingress port.....                                 | 31     | System Date .....                              | 59  |
| Installation.....                                 | 36     | System Time .....                              | 59  |
| IP Addresses and SNMP Community Names .....       | 21     | Ping table .....                               | 273 |
| IP Interface Parameters                           |        | Port Context menu .....                        | 44  |
| Broadcast Type .....                              | 128    | Port Level, STA Operation Level                |     |
| Forward Broadcast .....                           | 128    | Designated Port.....                           | 25  |
| If Number.....                                    | 128    | Path Cost.....                                 | 25  |
| Network Mask.....                                 | 128    | Port Priority.....                             | 25  |
| IP Parameters                                     |        | Root Bridge.....                               | 25  |
| ARP Proxy .....                                   | 127    | Port Priority.....                             | 27  |
| ICMP error messages .....                         | 127    | Power Failure .....                            | 11  |
| Inactive ARP Time Out .....                       | 127    | Power LEDs .....                               | 44  |
| Redundancy Admin Status.....                      | 127    | <b>Q</b>                                       |     |
| IP RIP Filter .....                               | 137    | QoS .....                                      | 230 |
| IPM   |        | <b>R</b>                                       |     |
| PIM .....   | 190    | Rapid Spanning Tree.....                       | 118 |
| PIM Parameters.....                               | 190    | <b>Rapid STP Port Table</b> .....              | 118 |
| Routing Parameters.....                           | 181    | <b>RSTP Force Software version Table</b> ..... | 120 |
| <b>Routing Table</b> .....                        | 198    | Read-only MIBs, Definition of.....             | 22  |
| <b>J</b>  |        | Read-write MIBs, Definition of.....            | 22  |
| <b>Join Time</b> .....                            | 90, 94 | Routers .....                                  | 3   |
| <b>L</b>  |        | <b>S</b>                                       |     |
| <b>Leave All Time</b> .....                       | 90, 94 | Segments, Network.....                         | 3   |
| <b>Leave Time</b> .....                           | 90, 94 | Services Community Change.....                 | 273 |
| LED Indicators.....                               | 16     | Software requirements .....                    | 36  |
| Legend.....                                       | 247    | <b>Spanning Tree</b>                           |     |
| Lower Bridge Identifier .....                     | 24     | <b>Spanning Tree Parameters</b> .....          | 111 |
| <b>M</b>  |        | <b>Spanning Tree Port Table</b> .....          | 115 |
| Management Information Base (MIB).....            | 22     | Spanning Tree Algorithm (STA) .....            | 24  |
| Max. Age Time .....                               | 27     | STA Operation Levels .....                     | 24  |
| Menu Bar .....                                    | 40     | On the Bridge Level.....                       | 24  |
| MIB's Object-Identity (OID).....                  | 22     | Standard MIB-II.....                           | 22  |
| Mirrored Port .....                               | 85     | Status Bar .....                               | 41  |
| <b>N</b>  |        | straight cable .....                           | 281 |
| Network loop detection and prevention             |        | Switch to 10 Base-T hub, connecting the .      | 18  |
| Spanning Tree Algorithm .....                     | 24     | Switch to 100Base-TX hub, connecting the       | 19  |
| <b>O</b>  |        | .....  | 19  |
| <b>OSPF Interface Parameters table Edit</b> ..... | 147    | Switching Technology .....                     | 3   |
| Overview of this User's Guide .....               | 1      | <b>T</b>                                       |     |
| <b>P</b>  |        | Tagging .....                                  | 31  |
| Packet Forwarding .....                           | 23     | Third-party vendors' SNMP software .....       | 22  |
| Parameters  |        | Toolbar Icons .....                            | 41  |
| Bridge Type .....                                 | 107    | Trap Date and Time .....                       | 263 |
| Software Type.....                                | 53     | Trap Information.....                          | 263 |
|   |        | Trap Number.....                               | 263 |
|   |        | Trap Severity.....                             | 263 |
|   |        | Trap Source.....                               | 263 |

|   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|----|
| Trap Type                                 |   | Port Priority.....                        | 25 |
| Authentication Failure .....              | 22  | User-Changeblel Parameters.....           | 25 |
| Cold Start .....                          | 22  | <b>V</b>                                  |    |
| Link Change Event .....                   | 22  | ventilation .....                         | 7  |
| Traps displayed .....                     | 265   | Version Check.....                        | 45 |
| Traps stored.....                         | 265   | VLAN Autoconfig .....                     | 28 |
| Traps, definition of.....                 | 21  | VLAN Bridging .....                       | 28 |
| <b>U</b>                                  |   | VLAN Features.....                        | 28 |
| Unicast .....                             | 107   | VLAN Scalability .....                    | 28 |
| <i><b>Global Forwarding</b></i> .....     | 108   | VLAN Structures .....                     | 27 |
| <i><b>Unicast Forward Table</b></i> ..... | 110   | <b>W</b>                                  |    |
| Unpacking .....                           | 7   | Web-based installation requirements ..... | 37 |
| Unpacking and Setup .....                 | <b>Error! Not a valid bookmark in entry on page 7</b> | Web-based management .....                | 37 |
| Untagging .....                           | 31  | Web-based management module .....         | 37 |
| User-Changeblel Parameters                |   | <b>Z</b>                                  |    |
| Bridge Forward Delay.....                 | 25  | Zoom View .....                           | 35 |
| Bridge Hello Time .....                   | 25  | Zoom View LEDs.....                       | 43 |
| Bridge Max Age.....                       | 25  | Zoom View Refreshing.....                 | 45 |
| Bridge Priority .....                     | 25  |   |    |

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| <b>Australia</b> | <b>D-Link Australasia</b><br>1 Giffnock Avenue, North Ryde, NSW 2113, Sydney, Australia<br>TEL: 61-2-8899-1800 FAX: 61-2-8899-1868<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.com.au">www.dlink.com.au</a>  |
| <b>Belgium</b>   | <b>D-Link Belgium</b><br>Rue des Colonies 11, B-1000 Brussels, Belgium<br>TEL: 32 (0)2 517 7111 FAX: 32 (0)2 517 6500<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink-benelux.com">www.dlink-benelux.com</a>   |
| <b>Brazil</b>    | <b>D-Link Brasil Ltda.</b><br>Av das Nações Unidas, 11857, cj 132 – Brooklin Novo, São Paulo, Brasil 04578-000<br>TEL: (55 11) 5503-9320 FAX: (55 11) 5503-9321<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.com.br">www.dlink.com.br</a>   |
| <b>Canada</b>    | <b>D-Link Canada</b><br>2180 Winston Park Drive, Oakville, Ontario, L6H 5W1 Canada<br>TEL: 1-905-829-5033 FAX: 1-905-829-5223<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.ca">www.dlink.ca</a>   |
| <b>Chile</b>     | <b>D-Link South America (Sudamérica)</b><br>Isidora Goyenechea 2934 Oficina 702<br>Las Condes Fono 2323185, Santiago, Chile<br>TEL: 56-2-232-3185 FAX: 56-2-232-0923<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.cl">www.dlink.cl</a>  |
| <b>China</b>     | <b>D-Link China</b><br>Room 507/508, Tower W1, The Towers, Oriental Plaza No. 1<br>East Chang An Ave., Dong Cheng District, Beijing, 100738, China<br>TEL: (86-010) 85182533 FAX: (86-010) 85182250<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.com.cn">www.dlink.com.cn</a>   |
| <b>Denmark</b>   | <b>D-Link Denmark</b><br>Naverland 2, DK-2600 Glostrup, Denmark<br>TEL: 45-43-96-90-40 FAX: 45-43-42-43-47<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.dk">www.dlink.dk</a>  |
| <b>Egypt</b>     | <b>D-Link Egypt</b><br>19 El-Shahed Helmy, El Masry, Al-Maza, Heliopolis, Cairo, Egypt<br>TEL: 202-41-44-295 FAX: 202-41-56-704<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink-me.com">www.dlink-me.com</a>   |
| <b>Finland</b>   | <b>D-Link Finland</b><br>Pakkalankuja 7A, 3 <sup>rd</sup> floor, 01510 Vantaa, Finland<br>TEL: 358-9-2707-5080 FAX: 358-9-2707-5081<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.fi">www.dlink.fi</a>   |
| <b>France</b>    | <b>D-Link France</b><br>Le Florilege, No. 2, Allée de la Fresnerie, 78330 Fontenay le Fleury, France<br>TEL: 33-1-3023-8688 FAX: 33-1-3023-8689<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink-france.fr">www.dlink-france.fr</a>   |
| <b>Germany</b>   | <b>D-Link Central Europe (D-Link Deutschland GmbH)</b><br>Schwalbacher Strasse 74, D-65760 Eschborn, Germany<br>TEL: 49-6196-77990 FAX: 49-6196-7799300<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.de">www.dlink.de</a>   |
| <b>India</b>     | <b>D-Link India</b><br>D-Link House, Kurla-Bandra Complex Rd., Off Cst Rd.,<br>Santacruz (East), Mumbai, 400 098 India<br>TEL: 91-022-652-6696/6578/6623 FAX: 91-022-652-8914/8476<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.co.in">www.dlink.co.in</a> & <a href="http://www.dlink-india.com">www.dlink-india.com</a> |
| <b>Israel</b>    | <b>D-Link Israel</b><br>11 Hamanofim Street, Ackerstein Towers, Regus Business Center<br>P.O.B. 2148, Hertzelia-Pituach 46120, Israel<br>TEL: 972-9-9715700 FAX: 972-9-9715601<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.co.il">www.dlink.co.il</a>  |

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>Italy</b>        | <b>D-Link Mediterraneo Srl/D-Link Italia</b><br>Via Nino Bonnet n. 6/B, 20154, Milano, Italy<br>TEL: 39-02-2900-0676 FAX: 39-02-2900-1723<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.it">www.dlink.it</a>   |
| <b>Netherlands</b>  | <b>D-Link Netherlands</b><br>Weena 290, 3012 NJ Rotterdam, The Netherlands<br>TEL: 31 (0)10 282 1445 FAX: 31 (0)10 282 1331<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink-benelux.com">www.dlink-benelux.com</a>   |
| <b>Norway</b>       | <b>D-Link Norway</b><br>Karihaugveien 89, N-1086 Oslo<br>TEL: 47-23-89-71-89 FAX: 47-22-30-90-85<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.no">www.dlink.no</a>  |
| <b>Russia</b>       | <b>D-Link Russia</b><br>Grafsky per., 14, floor 6, Moscow 129626 Russia<br>TEL: 7 (095) 744-0099 FAX: 7 (095) 744-0099 #350<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.ru">www.dlink.ru</a>   |
| <b>Singapore</b>    | <b>D-Link International</b><br>1 International Business Park, #03-12 The Synergy, Singapore 609917<br>TEL: 65-6774-6233 FAX: 65-6774-6322<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink-intl.com">www.dlink-intl.com</a>   |
| <b>South Africa</b> | <b>D-Link South Africa</b><br>Einstein Park II, Block B, 102-106 Witch-Hazel Avenue<br>Highveld Technopark, Centurion, Gauteng, Republic of South Africa<br>TEL: 27-12-665-2165 FAX: 27-12-665-2186<br>URL: <a href="http://www.d-link.co.za">www.d-link.co.za</a> |
| <b>Spain</b>        | <b>D-Link Iberia</b><br>C/Sabino de Arana, 56 Bajos, 08028 Barcelona, Spain<br>TEL: 34 93 409 0770 FAX: 34 93 491 0795<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.es">www.dlink.es</a>  |
| <b>Sweden</b>       | <b>D-Link Sweden</b><br>P. O. Box 15036, S-167 15 Bromma, Sweden<br>TEL: 46-(0)8564-61900 FAX: 46-(0)8564-61901<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.se">www.dlink.se</a>   |
| <b>Taiwan</b>       | <b>D-Link Taiwan</b><br>2F, No. 119, Pao-chung Road, Hsin-tien, Taipei, Taiwan<br>TEL: 886-2-2910-2626 FAX: 886-2-2910-1515<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlinktw.com.tw">www.dlinktw.com.tw</a>   |
| <b>Turkey</b>       | <b>D-Link Turkey</b><br>Regus Offices Beybi Giz Plaza, Ayazaga Mah. Meydan Sok. No. 28<br>Maslak 34396, Istanbul-Turkiye<br>TEL: 90-212-335-2553 FAX: 90-212-335-2500<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.com.tr">www.dlink.com.tr</a>                               |
| <b>U.A.E.</b>       | <b>D-Link Middle East</b><br>P.O. Box 500376, Office No. 103, Building 3<br>Dubai Internet City, Dubai, United Arab Emirates<br>TEL: 971-4-3916480 FAX: 971-4-3908881<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink-me.com">www.dlink-me.com</a>                               |
| <b>U.K.</b>         | <b>D-Link Europe (United Kingdom)</b><br>4 <sup>th</sup> Floor, Merit House, Edgware Road, Colindale, London<br>NW9 5AB United Kingdom<br>TEL: 44-020-8731-5555 FAX: 44-020-8731-5511<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.co.uk">www.dlink.co.uk</a>                 |
| <b>U.S.A.</b>       | <b>D-Link Systems, Inc.</b><br>17595 Mt. Herrmann, Fountain Valley, CA 92708, USA<br>TEL: 1-714-885-6000 FAX: 1-866-743-4905<br>URL: <a href="http://www.dlink.com">www.dlink.com</a>  |



# Warranty and Registration for all Countries and Regions Except USA

## Wichtige Sicherheitshinweise

Bitte lesen Sie sich diese Hinweise sorgfältig durch.

Heben Sie diese Anleitung für den spätern Gebrauch auf.

Vor jedem Reinigen ist das Gerät vom Stromnetz zu trennen. Verwenden Sie keine Flüssig- oder Aerosolreiniger. Am besten dient ein angefeuchtetes Tuch zur Reinigung.

Um eine Beschädigung des Gerätes zu vermeiden sollten Sie nur Zubehörteile verwenden, die vom Hersteller zugelassen sind.

Das Gerät ist vor Feuchtigkeit zu schützen.

Bei der Aufstellung des Gerätes ist auf sichern Stand zu achten. Ein Kippen oder Fallen könnte Verletzungen hervorrufen. Verwenden Sie nur sichere Standorte und beachten Sie die Aufstellhinweise des Herstellers.

Die Belüftungsöffnungen dienen zur Luftzirkulation die das Gerät vor Überhitzung schützt. Sorgen Sie dafür, daß diese Öffnungen nicht abgedeckt werden.

Beachten Sie beim Anschluß an das Stromnetz die Anschlußwerte.

Die Netzanschlußsteckdose muß aus Gründen der elektrischen Sicherheit einen Schutzleiterkontakt haben.

Verlegen Sie die Netzanschlußleitung so, daß niemand darüber fallen kann. Es sollte auch nichts auf der Leitung abgestellt werden.

Alle Hinweise und Warnungen die sich am Geräten befinden sind zu beachten.

Wird das Gerät über einen längeren Zeitraum nicht benutzt, sollten Sie es vom Stromnetz trennen. Somit wird im Falle einer Überspannung eine Beschädigung vermieden.

Durch die Lüftungsöffnungen dürfen niemals Gegenstände oder Flüssigkeiten in das Gerät gelangen. Dies könnte einen Brand bzw. Elektrischen Schlag auslösen.

Öffnen Sie niemals das Gerät. Das Gerät darf aus Gründen der elektrischen Sicherheit nur von autorisiertem Servicepersonal geöffnet werden.

Wenn folgende Situationen auftreten ist das Gerät vom Stromnetz zu trennen und von einer qualifizierten Servicestelle zu überprüfen:

Netzkabel oder Netzstecker sind beschädigt.

Flüssigkeit ist in das Gerät eingedrungen.

Das Gerät war Feuchtigkeit ausgesetzt.

Wenn das Gerät nicht der Bedienungsanleitung entsprechend funktioniert oder Sie mit Hilfe dieser Anleitung keine Verbesserung erzielen.

Das Gerät ist gefallen und/oder das Gehäuse ist beschädigt.

Wenn das Gerät deutliche Anzeichen eines Defektes aufweist.

Bei Reparaturen dürfen nur Originalersatzteile bzw. den Originalteilen entsprechende Teile verwendet werden. Der Einsatz von ungeeigneten Ersatzteilen kann eine weitere Beschädigung hervorrufen.

Wenden Sie sich mit allen Fragen die Service und Reparatur betreffen an Ihren Servicepartner. Somit stellen Sie die Betriebssicherheit des Gerätes sicher.

Zum Netzanschluß dieses Gerätes ist eine geprüfte Leitung zu verwenden, Für einen Nennstrom bis 6A und einem Gerätegewicht größer 3kg ist eine Leitung nicht leichter als H05VV-F, 3G, 0.75mm<sup>2</sup> einzusetzen.

## WARRANTIES EXCLUSIVE

IF THE D-LINK PRODUCT DOES NOT OPERATE AS WARRANTED ABOVE, THE CUSTOMER'S SOLE REMEDY SHALL BE, AT D-LINK'S OPTION, REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT. THE FOREGOING WARRANTIES AND REMEDIES ARE EXCLUSIVE AND ARE IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, EITHER IN FACT OR BY OPERATION OF LAW, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. D-LINK NEITHER ASSUMES NOR AUTHORIZES ANY OTHER PERSON TO ASSUME FOR IT ANY OTHER LIABILITY IN CONNECTION WITH THE SALE, INSTALLATION MAINTENANCE OR USE OF D-LINK'S PRODUCTS.

D-LINK SHALL NOT BE LIABLE UNDER THIS WARRANTY IF ITS TESTING AND EXAMINATION DISCLOSE THAT THE ALLEGED DEFECT IN THE PRODUCT DOES NOT EXIST OR WAS CAUSED BY THE CUSTOMER'S OR ANY THIRD PERSON'S MISUSE, NEGLIGENCE, IMPROPER INSTALLATION OR TESTING, UNAUTHORIZED ATTEMPTS TO REPAIR, OR ANY OTHER CAUSE BEYOND THE RANGE OF THE INTENDED USE, OR BY ACCIDENT, FIRE, LIGHTNING OR OTHER HAZARD.

## LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

IN NO EVENT WILL D-LINK BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES, INCLUDING LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF PROFITS, COST OF COVER OR OTHER INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INDIRECT DAMAGES ARISING OUT THE INSTALLATION, MAINTENANCE, USE, PERFORMANCE, FAILURE OR INTERRUPTION OF A D-LINK PRODUCT, HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY. THIS LIMITATION WILL APPLY EVEN IF D-LINK HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

IF YOU PURCHASED A D-LINK PRODUCT IN THE UNITED STATES, SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION OF LIABILITY FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## Limited Warranty

### Hardware:

D-Link warrants each of its hardware products to be free from defects in workmanship and materials under normal use and service for a period commencing on the date of purchase from D-Link or its Authorized Reseller and extending for the length of time stipulated by the Authorized Reseller or D-Link Branch Office nearest to the place of purchase.

This Warranty applies on the condition that the product Registration Card is filled out and returned to a D-Link office within ninety (90) days of purchase. A list of D-Link offices is provided at the back of this manual, together with a copy of the Registration Card.

If the product proves defective within the applicable warranty period, D-Link will provide repair or replacement of the product. D-Link shall have the sole discretion whether to repair or replace, and replacement product may be new or reconditioned. Replacement product shall be of equivalent or better specifications, relative to the defective product, but need not be identical. Any product or part repaired by D-Link pursuant to this warranty shall have a warranty period of not less than 90 days, from date of such repair, irrespective of any earlier expiration of original warranty period. When D-Link provides replacement, then the defective product becomes the property of D-Link.

Warranty service may be obtained by contacting a D-Link office within the applicable warranty period, and requesting a Return Material Authorization (RMA) number. If a Registration Card for the product in question has not been returned to D-Link, then a proof of purchase (such as a copy of the dated purchase invoice) must be provided. If Purchaser's circumstances require special handling of warranty correction, then at the time of requesting RMA number, Purchaser may also propose special procedure as may be suitable to the case.

After an RMA number is issued, the defective product must be packaged securely in the original or other suitable shipping package to ensure that it will not be damaged in transit, and the RMA number must be prominently marked on the outside of the package. The package must be mailed or otherwise shipped to D-Link with all costs of mailing/shipping/insurance prepaid. D-Link shall never be responsible for any software, firmware, information, or memory data of Purchaser contained in, stored on, or integrated with any product returned to D-Link pursuant to this warranty.

Any package returned to D-Link without an RMA number will be rejected and shipped back to Purchaser at Purchaser's expense, and D-Link reserves the right in such a case to levy a reasonable handling charge in addition mailing or shipping costs.

## Software:

Warranty service for software products may be obtained by contacting a D-Link office within the applicable warranty period. A list of D-Link offices is provided at the back of this manual, together with a copy of the Registration Card. If a Registration Card for the product in question has not been returned to a D-Link office, then a proof of purchase (such as a copy of the dated purchase invoice) must be provided when requesting warranty service. The term "purchase" in this software warranty refers to the purchase transaction and resulting license to use such software.

D-Link warrants that its software products will perform in substantial conformance with the applicable product documentation provided by D-Link with such software product, for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of purchase from D-Link or its Authorized Reseller. D-Link warrants the magnetic media, on which D-Link provides its software product, against failure during the same warranty period. This warranty applies to purchased software, and to replacement software provided by D-Link pursuant to this warranty, but shall not apply to any update or replacement which may be provided for download via the Internet, or to any update which may otherwise be provided free of charge.

D-Link's sole obligation under this software warranty shall be to replace any defective software product with product which substantially conforms to D-Link's applicable product documentation. Purchaser assumes responsibility for the selection of appropriate application and system/platform software and associated reference materials. D-Link makes no warranty that its software products will work in combination with any hardware, or any application or system/platform software product provided by any third party, excepting only such products as are expressly represented, in D-Link's applicable product documentation as being compatible. D-Link's obligation under this warranty shall be a reasonable effort to provide compatibility, but D-Link shall have no obligation to provide compatibility when there is fault in the third-party hardware or software. D-Link makes no warranty that operation of its software products will be uninterrupted or absolutely error-free, and no warranty that all defects in the software product, within or without the scope of D-Link's applicable product documentation, will be corrected.

# Warranty and Registration Information for USA Only

Subject to the terms and conditions set forth herein, D-Link Systems, Inc. ("D-Link") provides this Limited warranty for its product only to the person or entity that originally purchased the product from:

D-Link or its authorized reseller or distributor and

Products purchased and delivered within the fifty states of the United States, the District of Columbia, U.S. Possessions or Protectorates, and U.S. Military Installations, addresses with an APO or FPO.

**Limited Warranty:** D-Link warrants that the hardware portion of the D-Link products described below will be free from material defects in workmanship and materials from the date of original retail purchase of the product, for the period set forth below applicable to the product type ("Warranty Period"), except as otherwise stated herein.

5-Year Limited Warranty for the Product(s) is defined as follows:

Hardware (excluding power supplies and fans) Five (5) Years  
Power Supplies and Fans Three (3) Year  
Spare parts and spare kits Ninety (90) days

D-Link's sole obligation shall be to repair or replace the defective Hardware during the Warranty Period at no charge to the original owner or to refund at D-Link's sole discretion. Such repair or replacement will be rendered by D-Link at an Authorized D-Link Service Office. The replacement Hardware need not be new or have an identical make, model or part. D-Link may in its sole discretion replace the defective Hardware (or any part thereof) with any reconditioned product that D-Link reasonably determines is substantially equivalent (or superior) in all material respects to the defective Hardware. Repaired or replacement Hardware will be warranted for the remainder of the original Warranty Period from the date of original retail purchase. If a material defect is incapable of correction, or if D-Link determines in its sole discretion that it is not practical to repair or replace the defective Hardware, the price paid by the original purchaser for the defective Hardware will be refunded by D-Link upon return to D-Link of the defective Hardware. All Hardware (or part thereof) that is replaced by D-Link, or for which the purchase price is refunded, shall become the property of D-Link upon replacement or refund.

**Limited Software Warranty:** D-Link warrants that the software portion of the product ("Software") will substantially conform to D-Link's then current functional specifications for the Software, as set forth in the applicable documentation, from the date of original retail purchase of the Software for a period of ninety (90) days ("Warranty Period"), provided that the Software is properly installed on approved hardware and operated as contemplated in its documentation. D-Link further warrants that, during the Warranty Period, the magnetic media on which D-Link delivers the Software will be free of physical defects. D-Link's sole obligation shall be to replace the non-conforming Software (or defective media) with software that substantially conforms to D-Link's functional specifications for the Software or to refund at D-Link's sole discretion. Except as otherwise agreed by D-Link in writing, the replacement Software is provided only to the original licensee, and is subject to the terms and conditions of the license granted by D-Link for the Software. Software will be warranted for the remainder of the original Warranty Period from the date or original retail purchase. If a material non-conformance is incapable of correction, or if D-Link determines in its sole discretion that it is not practical to replace the non-conforming Software, the price paid by the original licensee for the non-conforming Software will be refunded by D-Link; provided that the non-conforming Software (and all copies thereof) is first returned to D-Link. The license granted respecting any Software for which a refund is given automatically terminates.

**Non-Applicability of Warranty:** The Limited Warranty provided hereunder for hardware and software of D-Link's products, will not be applied to and does not cover any product purchased through the inventory clearance or liquidation sale or other sales in which D-Link, the sellers, or the liquidators expressly disclaim their warranty obligation pertaining to the product and in that case, the product is being sold "As-Is" without any warranty whatsoever including, without limitation, the Limited Warranty as described herein, notwithstanding anything stated herein to the contrary.

**Submitting A Claim:** Any claim under this limited warranty must be submitted in writing before the end of the Warranty Period to an Authorized D-Link Service Office.

The customer must submit as part of the claim a written description of the Hardware defect or Software nonconformance in sufficient detail to allow D-Link to confirm the same.

The original product owner must obtain a Return Material Authorization ("RMA") number from the Authorized D-Link Service Office and, if requested, provide written proof of purchase of the product (such as a copy of the dated purchase invoice for the product) before the warranty service is provided.

After an RMA number is issued, the defective product must be packaged securely in the original or other suitable shipping package to ensure that it will not be damaged in transit, and the RMA number must be prominently marked on the outside of the package.

Do not include any manuals or accessories in the shipping package. D-Link will only replace the defective portion of the Product and will not ship back any accessories.

The customer is responsible for all shipping charges to D-Link. No Charge on Delivery ("COD") is allowed. Products sent COD will either be rejected by D-Link or become the property of D-Link. Products should be fully insured by the customer and shipped to D-Link Systems, Inc., 53 Discovery Drive, Irvine, CA 92618. D-Link will not be held responsible for any packages that are lost in transit to D-Link. The repaired or replaced packages will be shipped via UPS Ground or any common carrier selected by D-Link, with shipping charges prepaid. Expedited shipping is available if shipping charges are prepaid by the customer.

D-Link may reject or return any product that is not packaged and shipped in strict compliance with the foregoing requirements, or for which an RMA number is not visible from the outside of the package. The product owner agrees to pay D-Link's reasonable handling and return shipping charges for any product that is not packaged and shipped in accordance with the foregoing requirements, or that is determined by D-Link not to be defective or non-conforming.

**What Is Not Covered:** This limited warranty provided by D-Link does not cover: Products, if in D-Link's judgment, have been subjected to abuse, accident, alteration, modification, tampering, negligence, misuse, faulty installation, lack of reasonable care, repair or service in any way that is not contemplated in the documentation for the product, or if the model or serial number has been altered, tampered with, defaced or removed; Initial installation, installation and removal of the product for repair, and shipping costs; Operational adjustments covered in the operating manual for the product, and normal maintenance; Damage that occurs in shipment, due to act of God, failures due to power surge, and cosmetic damage; Any hardware, software, firmware or other products or services provided by anyone other than D-Link; Products that have been purchased from inventory clearance or liquidation sales or other sales in which D-Link, the sellers, or the liquidators expressly disclaim their warranty obligation pertaining to the product. Repair by anyone other than D-Link or an Authorized D-Link Service Office will void this Warranty.

**Disclaimer of Other Warranties:** EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SPECIFIED HEREIN, THE PRODUCT IS PROVIDED "AS-IS" WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IF ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY CANNOT BE DISCLAIMED IN ANY TERRITORY WHERE A PRODUCT IS SOLD, THE DURATION OF SUCH IMPLIED WARRANTY SHALL BE LIMITED TO NINETY (90) DAYS. EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY COVERED UNDER THE LIMITED WARRANTY PROVIDED HEREIN, THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY, SELECTION AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCT IS WITH THE PURCHASER OF THE PRODUCT.

**Limitation of Liability:** TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, D-LINK IS NOT LIABLE UNDER ANY CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY OR OTHER LEGAL OR EQUITABLE THEORY FOR ANY LOSS OF USE OF THE PRODUCT, INCONVENIENCE OR DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER, WHETHER DIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, LOSS OF REVENUE OR PROFIT, WORK STOPPAGE, COMPUTER FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, FAILURE OF OTHER EQUIPMENT OR COMPUTER PROGRAMS TO WHICH D-LINK'S PRODUCT IS CONNECTED WITH, LOSS OF INFORMATION OR DATA CONTAINED IN, STORED ON, OR INTEGRATED WITH ANY PRODUCT RETURNED TO D-LINK FOR WARRANTY SERVICE) RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THE PRODUCT, RELATING TO WARRANTY SERVICE, OR ARISING OUT OF ANY BREACH OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, EVEN IF D-LINK HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. THE SOLE REMEDY FOR A BREACH OF THE FOREGOING LIMITED WARRANTY IS REPAIR, REPLACEMENT OR REFUND OF THE DEFECTIVE OR NON-CONFORMING PRODUCT. THE MAXIMUM LIABILITY OF D-LINK UNDER THIS WARRANTY IS LIMITED TO THE PURCHASE PRICE OF THE PRODUCT COVERED BY THE WARRANTY. THE FOREGOING EXPRESS WRITTEN WARRANTIES AND REMEDIES ARE EXCLUSIVE AND ARE IN LIEU OF ANY OTHER WARRANTIES OR REMEDIES, EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY.

**Governing Law:** This Limited Warranty shall be governed by the laws of the state of California. Some states do not allow exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, or limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the foregoing limitations and exclusions may not apply. This limited warranty provides specific legal rights and the product owner may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

**FCC Warning:**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

**ICES-003 Warning:**

The Class A digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulation.

**CE Warning:**

This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

## Registration Card

**Print, type or use block letters.**

Your name: Mr./Ms \_\_\_\_\_  
 Organization: \_\_\_\_\_ Dept. \_\_\_\_\_  
 Your title at organization: \_\_\_\_\_ Telephone: \_\_\_\_\_ Fax: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Organization's full address: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Country: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Date of purchase (Month/Day/Year): \_\_\_\_\_

| Product Model | Product Serial No. | * Product installed in type of computer (e.g., Compaq 486) | * Product installed in computer serial No. |
|---------------|--------------------|--|--|
|               |                    |  |  |
|               |                    |  |  |
|               |                    |  |  |
|               |                    |  |  |
|               |                    |  |  |

(\* Applies to adapters only)

*Product was purchased from:*

Reseller's name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Telephone: \_\_\_\_\_ Fax: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Reseller's full address: \_\_\_\_\_

**Answers to the following questions help us to support your product:**

**1. Where and how will the product primarily be used?**

☐ Home ☐ Office ☐ Travel ☐ Company Business ☐ Home Business ☐ Personal Use

**2. How many employees work at installation site?**

☐ 1 employee ☐ 2-9 ☐ 10-49 ☐ 50-99 ☐ 100-499 ☐ 500-999 ☐ 1000 or more

**3. What network protocol(s) does your organization use ?**

☐ XNS/IPX ☐ TCP/IP ☐ DECnet ☐ Others \_\_\_\_\_

**4. What network operating system(s) does your organization use ?**

☐ D-Link LANsmart ☐ Novell NetWare ☐ NetWare Lite ☐ SCO Unix/Xenix ☐ PC NFS ☐ 3Com 3+Open  
☐ Banyan Vines ☐ DECnet Pathwork ☐ Windows NT ☐ Windows NTAS ☐ Windows '95  
☐ Others \_\_\_\_\_

**5. What network management program does your organization use ?**

☐ D-View ☐ HP OpenView/Windows ☐ HP OpenView/Unix ☐ SunNet Manager ☐ Novell NMS  
☐ NetView 6000 ☐ Others \_\_\_\_\_

**6. What network medium/media does your organization use ?**

☐ Fiber-optics ☐ Thick coax Ethernet ☐ Thin coax Ethernet ☐ 10BASE-T UTP/STP  
☐ 100BASE-TX ☐ 100BASE-T4 ☐ 100VGAnyLAN ☐ Others \_\_\_\_\_

**7. What applications are used on your network?**

☐ Desktop publishing ☐ Spreadsheet ☐ Word processing ☐ CAD/CAM ☐ Database management ☐ Accounting  
☐ Others \_\_\_\_\_

**8. What category best describes your company?**

☐ Aerospace ☐ Engineering ☐ Education ☐ Finance ☐ Hospital ☐ Legal ☐ Insurance/Real Estate ☐ Manufacturing  
☐ Retail/Chainstore/Wholesale ☐ Government ☐ Transportation/Utilities/Communication ☐ VAR ☐ System  
 house/company ☐ Other \_\_\_\_\_

**9. Would you recommend your D-Link product to a friend?**

☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ Don't know yet

**10. Your comments on this product?** \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---



**TO:**

Three vertical lines for an address.

**D-Link®**